An Encyclopedia of Shamanism
An Encyclopedia of Shamanism

Christina Pratt

The Rosen Publishing Group, Inc.
New York
Nadle

The gender-variant individuals among the Dineh, or Navajo, of the North American southwest. Nadle means “changing one” or “one who is transformed” and refers to the androgynous or hermaphroditic nature of these individuals. The Dineh believe that the nadle, as part of natural beauty in the order of the universe, has a special contribution to make to the people.

Traditionally, the nadle in his or her role as mediator keeps the men and women together in a unit that supports healthy child rearing and cultural continuity. Ceremonially, the nadle performs a special role in the night dances before the winter solstice.

Navajo shamans and nades are distinguished in Dineh culture by their direct relationships with spirit. Shamans are not necessarily nades; however some nades became powerful shamans. More often nades specialized in some aspect of curing. For example, the nadle healers were considered excellent chanterers. They had special chants for curing illness and insanity and for aiding in childbirth.

The wisdom that supports the Dineh value for and respect of the nadle was laid down in their mythology. In the Third World there lived twins, Turquoise Boy and White Shell Girl, each androgynous boy/girl beings. They were the first nades. Only with this help from the twins did the First People began to farm, make pottery, weave baskets, and shape tools from stone and bone. The people were thankful for the inventiveness of the nades for it improved the quality of their lives.

Over time White Shell Girl entered the moon and became Moon Bearer. Turquoise Boy stayed with the people, teaching them to grind corn, cook food, and weave cloth. Then a great flood came and threatened to kill them all. Just in time Turquoise Boy found a large hollow reed, through which the people climbed into the Fourth World and were saved from the great flood.

Moon Bearer brought them another reed in time for the people to climb to the Fifth World, the present world of the Dineh. The Dineh perspective is apparent from this creation story; the very survival of the people was and is dependent on the inventiveness of the nadle and his or her ability to see old things in new ways. See also transformed shaman.


Nagual

Nagual refers to both the helping animal spirit of the shaman and to shamans who have the ability to shape-shift into the animal form of their helping spirit. Nagual, used by the native peoples of Mexico and Guatemala, is derived from the Aztec word, nahualli, which refers to the quality of being disguised or masked. See also helping spirits; power animals; shapeshifting.


Nagualism

An anthropological term derived from nagual, a helping spirit of a shaman in Central America. A person or people who practice nagualism work with guardian spirits, helping spirits, or spirit familiares as a source of guidance, protection, and personal power.
Naming

Naming, or the acquisition of a new name, is used to mark the completion of an existential transformation. In shamanism, naming ceremonies are performed to mark the initiation from child to adult, for professional initiations later in life, and as an aspect of some healing processes.

Naming at initiation signifies the wholly different orientation to the world that is created. It marks the death of the child/novice self and the successful birth of the new, re-oriented self. The gift of a new name signifies the existential nature of this transformation, that it is more than a change that could change back. Initiation is a transformation from which there is no return.

Similarly, in cases of mental or a nearly fatal illness, giving the patient a new name connects the patient to an identity that is not associated with illness. The naming ceremony takes place after the successful removal of the spirits or energies that caused the illness. For example, Tserin-zaarin, a Mongol shaman, uses naming as a part of his healing process with mentally ill patients. The new name signifies the transformation of the patient through the healing process. The identity the patient knew as mentally ill and the vessel the troublesome spirits might try to return to is gone with the old name. Tserin-zaarin is reputed to be especially good at healing mental illness in this way.

Nanabush

The founder of the Midewiwin Society. Nanabush is a cultural hero of the central Algonquian, who was given the task of founding the medicine society by the Creator Spirit.


Nande’rú

A nande’rú is a shaman of the Avá-Chiripá, an indigenous people of what is now Paraguay, Argentina, and Brazil in South America. Nande’rú meaning “our fathers” is more formal. A common term pai and the master shamans are referred to as pai guazu.

Natema

See ayahuasca.

Native American Church

The Native American Church was established in the United States in 1922 with 13,300 members. The membership has now grown to more than a quarter million member. The religious practices of the church center around the sacramental use of the entheogen peyote in a vision-questing ritual that combines Christianity, Native American beliefs, and high moral principles. These practices have helped to unify more than forty nations of Native Americans in the United States and Canada.

Through the Kiowa and Comanche peoples, peyote use spread into North America from Mexico. This became particularly important in the last half of the nineteenth century when the Native Americans were confined to reservations and forced into missionary schools, causing the disintegration of their cultural and spiritual heritage.

Faced with potential genocide, a number of leaders from various nations saw the peyote practice as a way to unify the people with each other and the spirit world of their Ancestors. A new kind of peyote-based spiritual practice emerged and was adapted to the particular needs of the contemporary Native Americans. In an attempt to protect their rights to free religious activity in the face of opposition from missionaries and local governments, Native Americans organized these peyote practices into the legally recognized the Native American Church.
The role of the peyote sacrament within the church is two-fold. First, peyote induces physical and psychological well-being and alters consciousness so that the individual experiences his or her Oneness with God. Secondly, peyote acts as the divine messenger, enabling the individual to come into direct communication with God, without the mediation of the priest. See also vision quest.


Nature Spirits
Nature spirits are one of several kinds of helping spirits (energies of the invisible world) that the shaman works with while in an altered state of consciousness. A nature spirit is the spiritual aspect of any form found in nature, e.g., trees, water, sun, moon, sky, wind, mountain, stones, etc. Shamans recognize that all things throughout the Kosmos are connected as a whole. They experience that whole as the creative lifeforce of the Kosmos. All aspects of that whole are imbued with that spirit or lifeforce. Thus, animate or inanimate, all aspects of nature are believed to contain spirit.

Generally, the spirits of nature are believed to dwell in the physical form, for example, the Shuar of the Amazon believe that Inti, the spirit of the sun, is the physical sun and lives in the physical sun. When a spirit of nature leaves its physical form to work with the shaman, it may be seen in human form or its nature form. Examples of cultures who look to the nature spirits as helpers, teachers, and the source of healing powers are the Shinto of Japan, the Huichols of Mexico, and most of the peoples of Southeast Asia.

All shamans draw the energy they use for healing from Nature, regardless of the specific helping spirits they work with. In many cultures this is reflected in the belief that Nature itself is a helping spirit. For example, the Dagara of West Africa recognize Dawera, the Nature spirit, as one of the five elements, each of which has a shrine and a priest(ess) tending the shrine. Dawera is all things, the animals, plants, and the geography. Dawera is called on to bring magic, major changes, and a connection to the Great Mystery. See also Africa.


Navajo
See Dineh.

Neirika
The portal that unifies the spirit of all things and all worlds. All life came into being through the neirika. The neirika is the portal through which everyone passes at their death.

The Huichol believe that access to the neirika is located physically in the human head. The neirika is both a pas sageway and a barrier between the physical world and the world of spirit. Neirika is also translated to mean “mirror” and “face of the deity.”

The neirika is represented as a stone disk (power object) and as a disk shape in Huichol art. This disk may resemble the peyote cactus, the sacred plant entheogen of the Huichol. The disk
shape *neirika* also represents the center of the four directions, emphasizing its orientation and place in the center of all things.


**Neo-Shamanism**

The definition of neo-shamanism is in flux. Neo-shamanism refers most often to the blending by contemporary Westerners of elements from different shamanic traditions with elements from other belief systems to create a new complex of beliefs, rituals, and practices. These beliefs, rituals, and practices are not necessarily directly related to shamanism. They are drawn from a wide range of shamanistic and non-shamanic spiritual forms in which the shaman is usually an idealized metaphor, not a practicing shaman in the literal sense.

Neo-shamanistic practices are eclectic and amorphous. Practitioners do not try to avoid the appropriation and mixing of rituals and practices from existing shamanic cultures. In this sense, neo-shamanism is not an aspect of contemporary shamanism, primarily because it does not involve a shaman.

Some scholars use neo-shamanism to refer to the revival of shamanism in traditionally shamanic cultures where the new practices of these shamans take non-traditional forms. In this sense neo-shamanism is an aspect of contemporary shamanism. It is the inherent nature of shamanic practices to transform over time. The revival of shamanism in indigenous shamanic cultures is a natural aspect of shamanism. See also core shamanism.

**Nepal**

Nepal is located on the southern slopes of the Himalayas, landlocked to the north by Tibet (now part of China), to the south and west by India, and to the east by Sikkim. Peoples of many ethnic groups live in Nepal, primarily speaking three languages: Munda (Austro-Asiatic), the language of the oldest inhabitants; Tibeto-Burmese, the language of the descendants of peoples from Tibet; and Indo-European.

In Nepal *bompos* (shamans) and *lamas* (priests) exist side by side and share similar rank and privilege, which is a unique situation in contemporary societies. The *bompo* and the *lama* both function professionally on a part-time basis, each representing different societal interests.

The *bompos* primarily use embodiment trance states during their healing rituals. They are conscious of their experiences and have complete recall of what the gods, spirits, and ancestors say during the trance. The *bompo’s soul* is said to observe the trance state experience, standing back and watching him/herself perform. The *bompos* describe this state as “staying in the heart” while the gods speak through you. See also *Lamaism; ritual; Tamang*.


**Nerfalasoq**

*Nerfalasoq* is a West Greenland Eskimo term for a divining *angakok* (shaman). The *nerfalasoq* finds hidden or lost objects in a divination ceremony in which he or she does not use a drum. The *nerfalasoq* lies on his or her back to enter trance and discover the location of the object in question. See also divination and Greenland.
Netdim Maidū
The netdim maidū is a dreamer or seer of the Northern Maidu who is able to communicate with the spirits of nature and of the dead. A yomuse (shaman) was also a netdim maidū, however a netdim maidū was not necessarily a yomuse.

Ngaju Dyak
A Dyak people of southern Borneo. The balian and basir are the shamans of the Ngaju Dyak. The balian is female and the basir is a gender-variant male transformed shaman. Both the balian and basir embody the sangiang, deities, while in trance. Masters of trance, these shamans use embodiment trance states to allow the sangiang to speak through them directly and journeying trance states to travel to the Upperworld to visit the “village of the gods.”

Neither the balian nor the basir embody the souls of the dead. These spirits are embodied by another class of practitioner called the tukang tawur. The balian and basir are “chosen” spontaneously by the sangiang and acquire their shamanic powers through this spiritual event. Traditionally, neither can serve as a shaman among the Ngaju without forging a sacred relationship with the divine in this way.

The Ngaju Dyak worship Mahatala-Jata, an androgynous deity. Mahatala is the male aspect, a hornbill who lives on a mountaintop and rules the Upperworld. Jata is the female aspect, a water snake who lives in the sea and rules the Lowerworld. The two aspects are joined by a jeweled bridge, the rainbow, and so joined become the total Ngaju godhead, Mahatala-Jata. Both the balian and basir embody Mahatala-Jata while in trance and allow the Ngaju to access their godhead.

The balian and basir served the temple as hierodules, one who functions as a sacred sex partner for those who worship at the temple. During this sacred sexual activity, balian and basir were seen as the embodiment of Mahatala-Jata, the androgynous deity. Through sexual union with the balian or basir, a Ngaju man was brought into the presence of his god. See also journey.

Ngungi, the Crippled Smith
Ngungi, the Zulu God of Iron and blacksmith of the gods, has one lame leg and only one eye, both sacrificed in his efforts to gain knowledge. He is a great creator, artist, and symbol of the sacrifice demanded on any path of knowledge.

The story of Ngungi begins with the boy, then stupid, being raised by hippopotamuses. His father took pity on the boy and sent him to look for knowledge. The boy traveled far and wide, had many adventures, and many teachers. Ngungi gained great wisdom and knowledge because he learned from his adventures and from the sacrifices he was forced to make along the way.

Non-ordinary Reality
Non-ordinary reality is ordinary reality as it is perceived from an altered state of consciousness. Non-ordinary reality is the aspect of life and the world that is normally invisible, which is perceived by the shaman while in trance. Also called...
the spirit world, invisible world, spirit realm, Dreamtime, and Otherworld.

Accessing non-ordinary reality through an altered state of consciousness is basic to shamanism. An altered state of consciousness is a state of consciousness experienced as different from the baseline for that individual. The reality perceived from this cognitive state is non-ordinary reality.

Consciousness, in this sense, refers to an individual’s total pattern of thinking and feeling at any given time. Ordinary consciousness is an individual’s day-to-day experience of thinking, feeling, and wakefulness versus sleeping or dreaming. This ordinary consciousness serves as a baseline for that individual.

In an altered state of consciousness the individual feels a clear qualitative shift in his or her consciousness and a difference in the quality (or qualities) of how his or her mind is processing information and experiences. Mental functions are able to operate that do not operate at all in ordinary consciousness, and perceptual qualities are spontaneously accessed that have no ordinary counterpart.

The capacity to experience altered states is a basic, psychobiological human potential. All normal human beings have this ability, just as humans have the ability to sing, dance, and create art. Altered states arise from the manipulation of universal neurophysiological structures of the human body. Therefore access to non-ordinary reality is also universal.

Michael Harner, founding director of the Foundation for Shamanic Studies, explains that non-ordinary reality is part person and culture specific. The information and the experience of obtaining it in non-ordinary reality is tailor-made to the individual in the altered state. Other people may not perceive the same personal and cultural symbols.

However, behind these culturally diversified interpretations of non-ordinary reality a number of common features do emerge. For example, the shamans of many cultures experience the Land of the Dead or the Tree of Life in non-ordinary reality. There are no objective structures in non-ordinary reality, in the sense that several observers will have identical experiences there. However, it is possible to find constant patterns in non-ordinary reality as it is experienced through altered states of consciousness.

When the shamans talk of non-ordinary reality, they do not mean to imply that it is disconnected from this world. They see non-ordinary reality as the “why” of this world. For the shaman, non-ordinary reality represents the true nature of things and the true causes of events in the world. The power of a shaman is directly proportional to his or her insight into non-ordinary reality. See also journey and shamanic altered states of consciousness.


Nonosi

The nonosi were a special class of Southern Paiute shamans whose hunting magic enabled them to control the movements of game, thus aiding the hunters in successful hunts.


North

The north is a directional energy used by shamans in their ritual work and the creation of sacred space within ordinary space. The north is one of six directional energies (east, south, west, north, above, and below) which together
define the location of the seventh point, the center. Shamans must remain aware of their center at all times to keep from becoming lost while traveling in the boundless and ever-changing realms of non-ordinary reality.

Each of the directions is associated with an element, season, time of day, color, animal, deity, etc. These associations show both consistency and variation across cultures. The energy of the north is steady and rhythmic, like the heartbeat of Mother Earth. For many cultures, though not all, the element associated with the north is earth, the season is winter, the time is night, the life cycle passage is the child, the power is power, and the journey is one of wisdom and the discovery of essence.

North America

North America was home to a vast diversity of indigenous societies, ranging from small bands of hunter-gatherers in some areas to advanced civilizations of farming peoples in others. Ancient North American earthworks, five times as large as Stonehenge, reveal the remains of cities that existed at the time Rome was still a village in Italy. The histories of these varied peoples are found in their literature, oral traditions, dances, rituals, and ceremonies. Their stories, songs, and legends are living things, sources of power referred to in the first person.

Hundreds of different languages, economies, spiritual practices, and social patterns covered the continent. Any generalization about a cultural tradition is but a loose pattern that may not apply to a neighboring people while it does describe the practices of people farther away. The distinctions among native communities are many and the differences are vast. At the same time there are similarities, particularly related to shamanism and healing practices. Shamans everywhere are guided by the spirits who are in no small part defined by the land and geography of a region. The shaman also plays a role in the guidance of the people. People of similar geographic regions will be guided in similar ways through their shamans who are working with similar spirits. Variations in form will arise because of locale, language, and history, while the functions and practices of the rituals and ceremonies will be similar.

The spiritual attitudes that arise, which are the root of psychological and cultural attitudes, also develop in similar patterns. In indigenous North America, these patterns are two-way communication with spirit beings who grant power, knowledge of the planet, and the complex interrelatedness of the planet's ecosystems, and the profound understanding that all of these components are alive. These patterns led to a practice of mutual respect and interchange among spirits, humans, animals, and mythical beings, kinship, and an expectation and acceptance of the hand of spirit in all things.

As the Europeans embarked on a continent-wide effort to control and assimilate the indigenous peoples of North America, the shamans were systematically targeted and killed and their practices outlawed. This effectively stopped the innovative and generative aspect of shamanism. Until that time shamans across North America received direct intervention from helping spirits in their healing rituals and received new dances and songs to be used as tools for curing.

In some regions the practices and ceremonies that worked were kept and preserved as medicine for the present and future, often through the formation of medicine societies. The number, complexity, and importance of these ceremonies varied, though most were highly organized and elaborate among the more sedentary tribes who lived in permanent dwellings.

Even in the cultures with these powerful medicine societies, the individual shaman continued to practice. The individual shaman's unique contribution was the ability to communicate with the spirit world and receive new
rituals, songs, and other “medicines.” A shaman’s status was based on how effective his or her healing rituals were and the extent to which they refrained from practicing sorcery.

**Illness in North America**

The indigenous people of North America believed illness was caused by an individual or community falling out of harmony with the spirit world in some way. To avoid this, many tribes practiced an array of social taboos directing human interactions with Nature, the animals, and spirit power. Typical violations that could lead to illness were expressing jealousy, possessiveness, or greed; neglecting rituals and prayers of gratitude and honor to Nature and the spirit world; and inappropriate contact with supernatural power.

In California and the neighboring southwestern regions, illness was caused by energy intrusions translated as “pains” that were also the source of the shaman’s power. Witchcraft and sorcery were also common causes of illness and misfortune.

When illness or misfortune did arise, the people turned to the shaman to communicate with the spirit world to diagnose the cause and the remedy needed to restore health and harmony. The prescription could be a healing ritual with the shaman or a ceremony performed by a particular medicine society. Once harmony was restored to the spiritual aspect of the situation, shamans and often other healers attended to the physical aspects. Practicing with shamans were medicine men with herbal and plant remedies, bone setters, and healers who worked with a form of massage.

**Many Shamans**

In North America shamans of many genders were recognized: female, male, and transformed shamans, as well as the gender-variant berdache who was often a specialist in a type of curing. There are very few North American cultures that did not use the unique powers of the transformed shaman. For the cultures that did, generally the transformed shamans are believed to be the strongest spiritually, the women are considered the next strongest, and the male shamans the least strong spiritually.

**Berdache**

The role of the berdache (berdach) is not unique to North America, however its manifestation and acceptance is widespread there. In North America, women also were persons of consequence; they were not a gender of second status to men. The rare exceptions to this generalization existed in the areas where the majority of food was supplied by men through hunting or fishing.

Indigenous women had high status as leaders and shamans, and there was no shame in a male taking on a women’s role and characteristics. A man was not giving up male privilege; he was showing his ability to transcend the limits of masculinity. The ability to master the realms of masculine and feminine greatly enhanced his status. More important, the “choice” to become a berdache is made by spirit. It is a recognition and expression of the true nature of that individual’s soul.

The berdache was often the one to oversee funeral rites. This involved preparing the bodies of the dead physically and spiritually, preparing the funeral rites, leading the singing and dancing rites, and often preparing and cooking for the wake. In some cultures like the Yokuts, the berdache alone prepared the bodies for burial and conducted the ceremonial dancing and singing rites.

The role of the berdache as an honored person of high order was found in cultures from the Pacific Northwest to the southeast and from the Great Lakes across the Plains and into the southwest. The word for berdache in each language, like badé of the Crow or ayekkwew of the Cree, meant simply “neither man nor woman.”
The taboo systems of the indigenous people rarely involved sexual behavior other than restrictions against incest and regulation of marriage relative to clan lines. Sexuality was not seen as solely for the purpose of reproduction nor was it restricted by the institution of marriage. There was a range of gender variation and related sexuality across North American cultures.

The indigenous peoples saw no opposition between matters of the spirit and of the body. Everything was held to be sacred. Sexuality was a gift from spirit, to be enjoyed and appreciated. The expression of sexuality was an expression of one's original medicine. There was a lighthearted ease of sexual experimentation among the sexes; every act of intercourse implied by definition the involvement of the souls of the partners and of spirit.

Art as Medicine

Across North America, song and dance were medicine; they were tools the shaman used to cure. The most elaborate ceremonies are still commonly known as "sings" and "dances." There are dances to mark, celebrate, empower, mourn, entertain, and heal. Dances and songs are handed down through the generations, a currency of the shamans and the Medicine Societies.

Music, then, played an important role in North American shamanic rituals and ceremonies. Wind and percussion were the two most common types of musical instruments. With the exception of the Apache, one had to travel south to find stringed instruments. The wind instruments are comprised of flutes and whistles; the whistles being used primarily by shamans giving power displays and treating illness and by warriors during war society and other ceremonials. The percussion included drums of several designs and various sorts of rattles designed to call on different spirit powers.

Masks were widely used throughout North America, particularly among the cultures of the Pacific Northwest coast, northeastern, and the southwestern regions. Masks can be receptacles for spirit, and, when used in this way, they are power objects. The creation of the mask brings the spirit of the vision into the physical world for the whole community to see, to witness, and to experience the power. See also death and dying; False Face Society; illness in North America; mask dances; medicine man; midewiwin; Shaking Tent Ceremony.


Nti-si-tho

*Nti-si-tho* is the Mazatec name for *Teonanácatl*, which is several species of hallucinogenic mushrooms that have been employed as plant entheogens since ancient times in Mexico and Guatemala. *Si-tho* means "that which springs forth" and *Nti* is used to show reverence and endearment. Together *Nti-si-tho* means "the little mushroom (that) comes of itself, no one knows whence, like the wind that comes we know not whence nor why."

*Nti-si-tho* is associated with water and the rainy season because the mushrooms tend to sprout after the rains and, symbolically, because the mushroom-induced trance enables the shaman to travel the river of death to speak with the spirits.

Num (Also: n|om) The spiritual energy that pervades and strengthens the lives of the Ju|'hoansi, also known as !Kung and San. When the Ju|'hoansi dance in ritual the num power rises out of the earth and travels up the spines of the dancers as it “boils.” Those who have mastered the boiling num can direct it through their hands for healing. The Ju|'hoansi shaman derives his power from within himself, from the num, not through the control or utilization of helping spirits.

Oak

The oak tree is the Celtic Tree of Life and a central part of the Celtic cosmology and culture. The mighty oak serves this role because it is believed that only good energies can pass through it. Therefore, the Celtic shaman must stay on very good terms with the oak and pay it tremendous tribute to be allowed to use it for moving between the worlds.

The Celtic shaman draws strength from the Great Oak, connected through it to all things and able to travel to all places between the worlds. The shaman stands in the center of the Celtic universe when he or she stands in the center of the Great Tree.

Celtic mythology is filled with heroes who draw strength from the Tree of Life in its many forms. Irish hero Cuchulainn strapped himself to a stone monolith when his last battle was going badly. Connected in this way to the Tree of Life, he drew the strength needed for battle from it.


Odin

The great Norse shaman who hung himself from the Tree of Life Yggdrasil, the Ash, for nine days and nine nights to obtain wisdom and shamanic powers. The understanding Odin received from the spirit world while hanging in trance enabled him to unravel the secrets of the runes, a divinatory alphabet. After this event Odin was able to master the arts of the seidr, a Norse divination ritual performed only by female volbas to access the secret of wisdom from the spirit world. See also ritual.


Offering

An offering is a symbolic manifestation of a prayer, or gratitude, extended to the spirits. Traditional offerings usually take time to create. During that time, the individual concentrates on the message of the prayer so that the offering embodies that message and extends it into the spirit world. The primary purpose of an offering is to increase the efficacy of whatever prayer, ritual, or other sacred activity the individual is engaged in.

The purpose of an offering is fairly consistent cross-culturally. However, the form of the offering varies culture to culture. For example, typical offerings would be flowers, rice, and rice wine in Southeast Asia, prayer flags in Tibet, Coca leaves in South America, the best portions of the harvest or a feast in Africa, or prayer sticks or tobacco ties in...
different regions of North America. In some situations a ritual or ritual celebration may function as a communal offering. Song is one form of offering that transcends the differences of cultures and times. See also embodiment.


Offerings, Hallucinogenic
The shaman’s use of sacred plant hallucinogens should not be confused with offerings brought for the shaman’s helping spirit. Mind-altering substances, like alcohol and opium, may be consumed by the shaman while in trance. In such cases the helping spirit is in full possession of the shaman’s body and the spirit is “consuming” the substance.

The substances are brought and consumed as offerings for the spirit to entice the spirit to help the patient. The shaman is not affected physically by the often heroic amounts consumed by the spirit through the shaman’s body in such sessions. When the spirit leaves the shaman’s body, all potential chemical effects of the offerings leave with the spirit.


Ogham
The ancient alphabet of Ireland and the western parts of ancient Britain. Ogham letters are used in magic and divination. They are believed to have been a tool for the Celtic shamans, the Druids (keepers of the folk wisdom), and the bards (poet-singers whose role it was to keep the tribal history, traditions, genealogy, spiritual laws, and to honor the deeds of great leaders in verse). The use of the ogham symbols was passed on through these oral traditions as part of the training in each of these callings.

Ogham is known as the secret language of poets or the tree alphabet, since each of the letters is called by a Gaelic tree name. It is an alphabet of twenty original letters plus five more, probably added at a later date; together they are considered eochra exsi, the keys of knowledge.

The creation of the ogham is attributed to Ogma Sun-Face, the god of inspiration and poetry. The original order has also been changed over time and from use. There are many different lists of letters that ascribe different meanings to them and, in so doing, imply different systems of knowledge that can be accessed through the letters. There are lists that relate the ogham letters to systems such as desirable human qualities, body parts, trees, riddles, and elements of the shamanic experience. There are probably many more lists that are lost or were never recorded.

The complexity of this simple alphabet of slash marks and shapes comes from the vast and multilayered range of symbolic reference required to be able to not only read the letters and words, but to actually derive the intended meaning. The translations of ogham writings are full of magical nuances that tie the alphabet to the magic of the shamans, bards, and wizards of the time.

Divination
The ogham was used in divination by inscribing the ogham letters on billets of wood, drawing or casting the billets, and interpreting the resulting symbols. There are specific records of it being used to determine the sex of an unborn child and guilt or innocence in crimes with no witnesses.

The ogham is unique in that instead of having separate characters, the symbols of ogham are arranged along a line known as the druim. The characters are all in contact with this line, either above, below, or through it. Conventionally the ogham is written vertically from bottom to top. If written horizontally, as on an artifact for example, the
upper side of the *druim* is considered the left and the lower side considered the right. The ogham script is written and read from bottom to top or left to right.

One very important esoteric aspect of ogham is the use of certain objects, like *birds* and *colors*, or places, like pools of *water*, to expand the meaning of the letters. Each letter also corresponds with a weapon or other military equipment, sciences, cosmology, spiritual states of being, times of the day, herbs, etc. In former times, individuals initiated into Bardic or Druidic practices could communicate with one another simply by mentioning the animals, birds, or weapons that corresponded with the letters. Unsuspecting listeners could not understand what was being said. An example of esoteric ingenuity was the creation of an ogham sign language known only to those initiated in its use.

The mystical basis of the oghams is in the trees that correspond with each symbol of the alphabet. The names are based on archaic Gaelic tree names. Like all the magical alphabets (Greek, Hebrew of the Kabbalah, Nordic *runes*, etc.), each individual ogham has not only a name and *sound*, but represents a specific object or quality. A summary of the meanings of the twenty original ogham letters follows.

The first letter is Beth, named for the birch tree, which is associated with *purification* and the color white. Beth is one of the month oghams, of which there are thirteen (a relic of the old way of reckoning *time* according to the phases of the *moon*). Magically, Beth is used to protect against all harm, physical and spiritual. It allows the bad to be dealt with and cleared away so that a new beginning can take place, unhindered by leftovers and unfinished business.

Luis is named for the rowan or quickbeam tree, traditionally considered a magical plant, the *Tree of Life*, and a tree of ‘quickening.’ The bird associated with Luis is the duck; the color gray, and the festival Imbolc, celebrated on February 1. This time is the quickening of the year when the days are noticeably longer after the darkness of winter.

Fearn is named for the alder tree, which symbolically bridges the space between the *Lowerworld* in the *earth* and the *Upperworld* in the air. The tree is also connected with *sword*-making and prized by smiths for giving the best charcoal for *metal*-smelting. The color is blood-red and the bird the seagull. The gull’s calls were imitated to summon the wind and the alder was used for making whistles also used to call up the wind.

Saille is named for the Sally tree or white willow, which is associated with the growth of lunar *power* and rooting in water. Saille is the ogham of linking, a watery symbolism which brings itself into harmony with the flow of events, most notably the phases of the moon. In divination its power is great at night, except when the moon is visible during the day. Esoterically this eminent flexibility demonstrates a harmonious amenability to the conditions to which it is subjected. The bird is the hawk.

Nuin (Nion) is named for the gray and the black *ash*, which are associated with rebirth and the passage between the inner and outer worlds. In the Norse traditions the ash is the *World Tree*, Yggdrassil, the cosmic axis that links the Upper, Middle, and Lower worlds. The bird is the snipe and the color is clear.

Huath (Uath) is named for the whitethorn or hawthorn, the Goddess's tree of sexuality. The name means ‘terrible’ and refers to the destroying aspect of the Threefold Goddess. Huath is the ogham of protection against all ills, invoking the power of the Otherworld. The bird is the night-crow and the color is purple.

Duir, is named for the common *oak*, considered the most powerful tree in many European spiritual traditions due to its connection with the *sky* gods. For the Druids, every part of the oak is *sacred*. The color is black and the bird
the wren, also sacred to the Druids. Magically, this important ogham signifies strength. Traditionally, it is the ogham that enables one to see the invisible and to become invisible; to allow entry of those who should enter and to exclude those who should not. In a magical way, it can also refer to things of great strength that are hidden from view at present.

Tinne is named for the holly tree, the cypress, or the rowan. Magically, the character Tinne brings strength and power, but in a balanced manner. It has a strong male element, more specifically connected with fatherhood and the consequent ability for souls to be reborn. The bird is the starling and the color gray-green.

Coll is named for the hazel tree, which is associated with knowledge and gaining information. The hazel is also associated with the shaman, the crane, and the color nut-brown.

Quert is named for the crabapple, which is associated with the celebration of the eternity of life. The color is mouse-brown or apple-green and the bird is the hen.

Muin (Min) is named for the thorny thicket and the bird is the titmouse, a bird of thickets. The color is variegated. Magically, it signifies the ability to range over a wide area and gather together those things that might be needed. Once gathered together, these things are assimilated, leading to inner development.

Gort is named for the native ivy, most particularly in its flowering season. The color is blue and the bird the mute swan. Symbolically and magically, Gort represents the changes that are necessary for growth and the requirement that all things be related to the earth.

Ngetal is named for the reed used by the scribes of ancient Ireland to make pens. Ngetal is the ogham of Sashimi, the festival of the land and the beginning of the new year in the Celtic calendar. The greatest power of Ngetal is as the preserver. As the pen that preserves memory and knowledge, it also signifies conscious precision and the maintenance of order in chaos. The bird is the goose and the color is yellowish green.

Straif is named for the blackthorn or sloe tree, a tree of major magical powers connected with punishment and strife. Straif signifies power in both the visible and invisible worlds. It provides the strength one needs to resist and defeat adversity and to control or ward off supernatural and paranormal powers. Straif is perhaps the most powerful ogham for overthrowing all resistance to one's will. The color is purple-black and the bird the thrush.

Ruis is named for the elder or bourtree, another tree of great power in divination. The bark and flowers were also used for their healing properties. The elder is held sacred for its connection with the dark aspect of the Mother Goddess, the Hag. Symbolically, Ruis signifies the three aspects of time present in the Threefold Goddess. It is an ogham of the unity of all time. The color is red and the bird is the rook.

Ailm is named for the elm tree. Ailm represents the god-like strength that one needs to rise above adversity, like the elm tree, to create a viewpoint from a higher level: the god-like capabilities of healing and perception of future trends. The color is blue and the bird the lapwing.

On (Ohn) is named for the gorse of furze, which can be found in flower in almost every month of the year. Thus it is an ogham of continuous fertility. It represents the carrying on of one's activities despite the surrounding conditions. Magically it represents the collecting together and retaining of one's strength through adversity. The color is saffron yellow and the bird the cormorant.

Ur is named for the heather, which means fresh, new, and moist. Magically Ur brings this luck and freshness to any venture to which it is applied. It becomes the entrance point to the inner worlds. The color is purple and the bird the skylark.
Eadha is named for the aspen or white poplar, known to be hardy and able to live in a wide range of habitats. The oghams speak of this quality of hardy resistance to variety of seemingly inhospitable conditions. Magically it is seen as a preventer of death. It is a facilitator of the individual’s curative powers, providing access to the real essence that underlies the sometimes misleading outer form. The color is silvery white and the bird the whistling swan.

Ioho (Idho, Iubhar) is named for the yew tree which is green throughout the year. It is considered the tree of eternal life, sacred to various divinities and saint of death and regeneration. The ogham has the meaning of the unity of death and life, the rebirth which comes, figuratively or physically, as a result of death. The color is greenish brown and the bird is the eaglet.

Like other alphabets, the oghams are arranged in a specific character order. Originally the twenty characters appear to have been arranged in four divisions of five. Today twenty-five characters are used and arranged in five groups of five. The last five characters: Koad—the sacred grove; Oir—the gooseberry, Ul—the honeysuckle, Pethbol—the guelder rose; and Péine (also Amancholl, Xi, Mór)—the witch hazel, are diphthongs. Their magical components are less well established than those of the first twenty characters.


Ogichidanimidiwin
The *ogichidanimidiwin*, or Ojibwa Chief Dance, is performed to enlist the aid of manitous, who are the protectors of the particular group of people, in the healing of a sick person or in warding off impending sickness. The *ogichidanimidiwin* is performed when someone dreams that sickness was about to invade the community, which was a common and devastating occurrence after the Europeans came to North America. It was also performed when the spirits prescribed the ritual as a cure for a patient’s illness. See also dance and dreaming.


**Oglala**
See Lakota.

**Ohgiwe**
The Feast of the Dead or Ghost Dance of the Iroquois, one of three major rites of the diehooon or Tutelo. Traditional Iroquois believe that an aspect of the soul can remain in the earthly realm as a ghost after death. The *ohgiwe* is performed the day after the burial, which is the fourth day after death, to appease this spirit and release it from the earthly plane. Otherwise the ghost wanders among the living, possessing them and causing illness. If this is the case, then the *ohgiwe* is performed as a cure.

The *ohgiwe* is performed twice a year in the spring and fall as a form of preventative medicine. Through the ritual acts that comprise the night-long *ohgiwe*, the ancestral spirits are appeased and any ghosts are cleared from the earthly realm. The *ohgiwe* also functions as a private healing ritual for those afflicted with ghost sickness. In this case part of the ritual is held in the lodge of the patient.


**Ojibwa**
(Also Ojibway, Chippewa, Chippeway, Anishinabeg) The Ojibwa, an Algonquian
people of the northern and western Great Lakes region of North America, were one of the largest nations of First Peoples north of Mexico. Some Ojibwa (the last syllable is pronounced ‘way’) prefer their more ancient name for themselves, Anishinabe, meaning “we people.” The Ojibwa joined with the Ottawa and the Potawatomi in a loose confederacy known to white traders as the Three Fires. In the histories of each of these tribes they were originally one tribe.

In traditional Ojibwa culture every person acquires a guardian manitou, or helping spirit, through personal vision quests. The powers of these manitou are drawn on for protection, identity within the clan, and success in hunting, beadwork, pottery, childbirth, etc. Thus, each person maintained a relationship with spirit and the sacred without normally consulting shamans for guidance. The Ojibwa shaman was a specialist, distinguished by the amount of power obtained from a number of manitou and his or her ability to direct that power into healing, conjuring, or divination.

In North America the shaman and the priest have distinct and sometimes antagonistic functions. Among the Ojibwa, this distinction is sharply drawn. The priest can be considered a keeper of ceremony and the priest’s position is secured through knowledge. The shaman can be considered a creator of ritual. The shaman’s position is secured through the ability to enter trance states and bring the powers of the supernatural to the aid of humans.

The shamans of the Ojibwa evolved over time, beginning with the archaic meda, or family shaman. Each isolated Ojibwa band often depended on their family shaman to cure the sick, divine for the hunt, and generally meet all the pressing needs of the group. The meda created a drum to use for inducing trance. The drum also represented the mythic cedar tree that is the cosmic axis that connects the mysterious realms, providing a path for the meda and the healing power of the manitou (spirits).

The tcisaki, or djessakid, evolved as a specialist in performing divination and the Shaking Tent Ceremony. The tcisaki constructed the conjuring lodge of tree poles as instructed by his or her manitou. One tree, with its branches remaining, extends higher than the others, suggesting again the mythic cedar tree, the path for the manitou the tcisaki calls on in the divining ritual.

Later the Midewiwin Society evolved from the training and practices of Ojibwa shamans. The Midewiwin Society coexisted with the practices of the tcisaki and other specialists. The Midewiwin Society is one of the oldest healing societies of the Ojibwa. It is known for performing the midewiwin, the great healing ritual. This ceremony is not found among the northern Ojibwa or the Ojibwa who migrated to the southeast.

Mide, which means “mystic” or “mystically powerful,” is one of three classes of Ojibwa shamans. These shamans are the healers who call on helping spirits to effect cures during the midewiwin ritual. They also administer herbal remedies, which are always empowered with a medicine song. These songs are given to the shaman in visions and journeys by the manitou. In some areas the Ojibwa had an uneasy relationship with the mide who were seen as a potential threat because their power enabled them to overcome those who lacked magical skills.

Primarily the midewiwin (shamans) were called on for healing. The Ojibwa looked to five possible causes for illness: sorcery, spirit intrusion, energy intrusions, breach of taboo, or soul loss.

Midewiwin Paraphernalia
The Ojibwa shaman did not have a common costume, though some societies wore costumes while others wore nothing. Records of ceremonial songs were kept in pictographs on birch bark scrolls for teaching. Round hand drums
with straight strikers, various rattles, and a large drum carved from a log and partially filled with water were used. The water drum was played with a curved striker primarily during midewiwin rituals and ceremonies.

There is a persistent notion that is difficult to trace in the literature that the midewiwin had four higher, secret levels and that the chief midewiwin practitioners and teachers were women. The midewiwin teaching is the path of the mysteries, and service to that path required a willingness to earn the power of the manitou by doing them favors, the ability to fast, to dream, to trust the supernatural workings of luck, the possession of a powerful sense of the absurd, and an unswerving self-discipline that often meant a lifetime of abstinence from certain foods and activities enjoyed by others.

The a-go-kwa, the gender-variant shaman of the Ojibwa, was called to the role in dreams, like other Ojibwa shamans. After a boy dreamed the a-go-kwa dream, he would forsake all male customs and adopt the dress and mannerisms of women. This transformation of gender would continue throughout his training and his lifetime.

**Soul**
The Ojibwa believe that the development of the soul is a central duty in the life of every man and woman. They experience the soul as an immortal substance that must grow while residing in the finite and perishable physical body. The growth of the soul is inspired by the harmony of heart and spirit achieved in life.

**Death**
At death, the Ojibwa believe that the shaman's help is necessary for the soul. The souls of the newly deceased need guidance to rise to the challenges of reconciling their life and to overcome the dangers along their journey to the Otherworld. The shaman is central in the rituals performed to entice the soul out of the routines of their old life and to appease them so that, upon accepting their death, they do not continue to demand attention from their relatives, take revenge on the living, or torment their enemies in their sleep. It was the shaman's role to enter into the spirit realms, to accompany soul on its journey, and to assure the successful completion of that journey. See also death and dying.


**Ojuna**
The masculine form of shaman in the Yakut language. Udoyan is the feminine. See also Yakut.

**Ololiuqui**
*Ololiuqui*, made from the seeds of *Turbina corymbosa*, is a principal plant hallucinogen for the Chinatec, Mazatec, and other peoples of the Oaxacan region of Mexico. Its use can be traced back to the sacred ceremonies of the Aztecs, who call it *coaxihuitl*, meaning green snake or snake plant. *Turbina corymbosa*, or *Rivea corymbosa* as it is also known, is found in the warm, tropical zones of the Americas.

*Turbina corymbosa* is a large, woody vine with heart-shaped leaves and many bell-shaped flowers. The flowers, three-quarters to one-and-a-half inches long, are white with greenish stripes. The round, brown seeds are hallucinogenic and analgesic.

The Spanish invaders of Mexico found the ritual use of *Ololiuqui*
offensive. The ecclesiastics were particularly intolerant of the practice and proceeded to suppress and eradicate it. The people took the sacred rituals into the hills, saving the essence of the rituals and merging other elements of their spiritual practice with the Christianity imposed on them.

Use
The Chinatec name for Ololiuqui is A-mu-kia, meaning “medicine for divination.” Ololiuqui is used in a ritual to communicate with the spirit world for divination and diagnosis. When an individual is entranced, he or she is in communication with the Ololiuqui spirit who speaks through the individual. The message is interpreted by the shaman.

When Ololiuqui is to be given to the patient, the shaman prepares the infusion and administers it at night. The source of the patient’s problems and the appropriate remedy are diagnosed by the shaman from an interpretation of the patient’s words and visions during the course of the intoxication.

Turbina corymbosa is used for a wide variety of medicinal purposes from curing syphilis to removing tumors, to stimulating the healing of dislocations, fractures, and pelvic problems in women. The powdered seeds also have a variety of medicinal uses.

Preparation
Thirteen seeds are ground and placed in a gourd of water to make an infusion. The particulate matter is strained from the drink and the infusion is consumed or added to an alcoholic beverage and consumed.

Active Principle
The active principles of Ololiuqui are the lysergic acid alkaloids, lysergic acid amide, and lysergic acid hydroxyethylamide. They are indole alkaloids. Lysergic acid amide differs only slightly in structure from lysergic acid diethy lamide or LSD. LSD is a semi-synthetic compound and the most potent known hallucinogen. LSD is one hundred times more potent that the usual dose of Ololiuqui.

Ritual of Receiving the Plant Spirit, or Plant Medicine
Traditionally, Ololiuqui is administered to a single individual in a secluded, quiet place at night. The shaman prepares the hallucinogenic infusion, creates the ritual space, and helps the patient find the correct focus for his or her encounter with the spirit of Ololiuqui. The patient drinks Ololiuqui and remains secluded, waiting for the spirit to reveal what he or she needs to know. After the trance has run its course, the shaman interprets the cause of the illness and the necessary remedies from the patient’s experiences with the spirit of Ololiuqui while in trance.

Characteristics of the Induced Altered State
Intoxication begins rapidly, giving over quickly to visual hallucinations. In the early stages, giddiness may be followed by a weariness. Full trance is characterized by a state of “sleep” that is filled with visions, often grotesque, and occasionally movement as if sleepwalking.

The intoxication lasts approximately three hours. During that time the individual is dimly aware of his or her surroundings, which is the reason Ololiuqui is traditionally administered in solitude. There are seldom unpleasant side effects. See also altered states of consciousness and Morning Glory.


Omi
The soul of the Tungus after death. Chanjan, the soul of the living, becomes omi after death. Omi means becoming or being formed. After death the omi are escorted by ancestral spirits to the land of the Omi, the source of the Tungus river of kinship, where they reside until they choose to reincarnate.
If the ancestral escort does not appear or if the omi escapes its escort, the shaman must intervene and convey the omi to its proper destination. Otherwise the omi can cause harm to the living or slip into the body of a woman and try to reincarnate before its time. See also psychopomp.


**Omphalos**

Omphalos is the Greek word for navel and refers to a focal point or central part, as in the umbilicus. Symbolically, the *Tree of Life* is said to grow at the omphalos, the place of connection to all things. Literally, omphalos often refers to a sacred stone found in temples or shrines. Typically, the stone is shaped like a beehive, associating the stone and the temple with the goddess in one of her most ancient forms, the queen bee, civilizer of mankind.

Omphalos can also describe a beehive-shaped sanctuatory space found in the initiation histories of many cultures. For example in India, it is called a *stupa*. The shape of the egg or beehive is a symbol of the transformation, birth, and rebirth through initiation.

The sign associated with the omphalos and its symbolic nature as the earth navel, the point of connection of all things, is a small circle or dot within a circle. It is found painted on the heads of frame drums, worked into jewelry, and stamped onto coins.


**Oneane**

Corn pollen used as a sacred offering by the Zuñi. See also sacred.


**Onotcikewini**

Divining shamans of the *Ojibwa* who use no special paraphernalia to foretell coming events, such as the imminent arrival of travelers to the camp, the movement of enemies, or the coming of rain, for example. These *seers* are distinguished from the *djessakid* who perform the *Shaking Tent Ceremony* for divination. The onotcikewini, which means "foretelling man," coexists with the *djessakid* in Ojibwa culture.


**Ordinary Consciousness**

Consciousness, in this context, is an individual’s total pattern of thinking and feeling at any given time. Ordinary consciousness is an individual’s day-to-day experience of thinking and feeling. It is the experience of being awake versus sleeping or dreaming. This ordinary consciousness serves as a baseline for that individual from which to differentiate altered states of consciousness.

A discrete state of consciousness, like ordinary consciousness, is a system. This system has two basic components—structures and energies. Structures are the various human potentials that are expressed, suppressed, tapped, or untapped. Energies are the energetic flow routes of awareness, attention (partially directable awareness), and biological and psychic energies that keep the structures connected and interacting with one another in a relatively stable and habitual pattern.

Ordinary consciousness is a construction, not a given. This construction has a very large number of arbitrary
aspects in it whose value are personally and/or culturally relative. Humans almost universally assume, consciously or unconsciously, that their culturally created consciousness is reality. This assumption often extends to the belief that their ordinary state of consciousness is somehow the best or the optimal state of consciousness for all.

However, ordinary is a relative term and the construction of consciousness is a somewhat arbitrary process relative to person and culture. Each individual achieves an ordinary consciousness as part of the process of learning to function within their culture's consensus reality (the reality a human learns to perceive as it is defined and perceived by the powerful forces that influence humans) during their process of enculturation.

Ordinary consciousness is the state of consciousness the shaman leaves from and returns to after working in trance. See also energy.


Ordinary Reality

Reality as it is perceived from the cognitive state of normal consciousness. It is a consensus reality that is defined within each culture. What is ordinary to someone from one culture may appear to be non-ordinary reality to someone from another. There is no absolute ordinary reality.

Ordinary consciousness varies from person to person and may vary considerably between different ethnic groups. Some cultures have a highly refined awareness of different mental states. For example, the Buddhist Abhidhamma lists one hundred and eight different states of mental cultivation. Contemporary Western cultures recognize three states of consciousness: ordinary, sleeping, or dreaming. Other states of consciousness are considered symptoms of mental illness.

Orenda

The Iroquois term for the mystical force that is inherent in all matter and spirits. It is the magic in power or the potential inherent in power. Orenda is an anglicized word used by scholars for the Iroquois word that varies in the different dialects of the people of the Iroquois nations.

Orenda is a mystical force that cannot be understood with the rational mind, but can be manipulated to create change in the physical or spiritual realms. Orenda is the force the shaman manipulates to create healing. Orenda is neutral and can be directed by people to benevolent or malevolent ends.


Original Medicine

Original medicine is the unique quality of personal power that arises from the combination of talents, gifts, and challenges innate to each individual. All medicine powers arise from the consciousness that is innate in all things in our living universe. An individual may be granted additional medicine powers as a result of a profound life transformation, dedicated work, or a successful vision quest or initiation.

When an individual is fully expressing who they are they are said to be “full of power” or “expressing their medicine.” The original medicine of each individual is duplicated nowhere else on the planet; it is the uniqueness of each human. While the presence of original medicine within each individual is a given, whether or not an individual will live fully and bring his or her original medicine to the world is not. Individuals who do not live in integrity with their original medicine eventually suffer soul loss.

Oruncha
See Arunta (Aranda).

Oshadageaa
(Also haguks—Cayuga and Onondaga). The Seneca term for Dew Eagles, giant spirit eagles or “cloud dwellers” who are the patron spirit of the Iroquois Eagle Society. *Oshadageaa* have the power to restore vital lifeforce to the dying, the elderly, and those afflicted with wasting diseases. The Eagle Society performs the Eagle Dance in cases of serious, life-threatening illness.

The healing powers of the *oShadageaa* are invoked during this healing ritual through the singing of a power song called *gane ondaadon* (“shaking a fan”) in Seneca and *ganegwae gaena* (“striking a fan song”) in Onondaga. Thus the Eagle Dance is also called the Striking Dance. See also dance and song.


Otavalan
See Quechua.

Otgun
(Also *oki, okki, otkon, utgon*) The use of *Orenda* for malevolent purposes.

Orenda, the *Iroquois* term for the mystical force that is inherent in all matter and spirits, is neutral. It can be directed by people to benevolent or malevolent ends. *Otgun* is also used to refer to malevolent beings, animals, and people. In some groups it refers to a spirit that has attached itself to a shaman.


**Out-of-Body Experience (OBE)**
The out-of-body experience (OBE) is an altered state of consciousness characterized by the perception of all objects arranged in such a way that they are being viewed from a point of consciousness outside of the physical body. The experience of observing doctors performing an operation on one’s own body from the ceiling of the operating room is an example of an anesthesia-induced OBE. There is a clear distinction between OBEs and the trance states of the shaman due to the different phenomenology of each experience. An OBE is experienced relative to the physical world and the soul moves invisibly through the physical world. The shaman's trance states are experienced relative to the spirit world and the shaman's soul moves freely into other realms as well as in the physical.

Pachakuti

The time of transformation. According to ancient Inka prophecy the end of the 20th century is the time of gathering and reintegration of the Peoples of the earth. It is a time of upheaval and great change that will make it fertile for a new seed of awareness and bring profound alterations in the way humanity perceives the core structures of the universe.

The Q’ero, descendants of the Inka who live 17,000 feet up the mist-shrouded mountains of south-central Peru, recognize that there are three types of human intelligence/power: yachay (knowledge) developed in the Europeans, munay (love and feeling) developed in the indigenous South Americans, and llankay (the ability to manifest) developed in the North Americans. Each of these peoples needs the intelligence and power of the other two to be whole. This time of change, Pachakuti, will create the potential for Wholeness by bringing all three powers together.

Pachakuti is a very important moment for all humanity, particularly those who have strayed from a balanced life of purpose and meaning. Pachakuti is a time to realign the world in renewed order and harmony and to open to new ways of seeing the world. To this end the Q’ero now open their teachings to all others in preparation for the day the Eagle of the North and the Condor of the South fly together again. See also Andes, South America; North America; South America.

Paho

(Also: baho, paaho, paavaho [pl.]) A Hopi prayer stick that is made to embody a prayer for moisture. There are many types of paavaho made by different Hopi for different purposes in different ways. Only persons with authority and the required spiritual power can make ceremonial paavaho. Most paavaho are made from a required type of stick, specific feathers in a particular sacred arrangement, and hand-spun cotton twine.

Paholawu is the ritual of making a paho and it is a sacred undertaking usually conducted in a kiva. The success of Hopi ceremonies is based in part on the prayers given to the paavaho as they are made. Once assembled the paho is sanctified by smudging it with smoke, sprinkling it with cornmeal, spraying it with honey, or some combination of these acts. Completed paavaho are stuck into the ground at designated sites, some of which might host several hundred paavaho at a time. See also ceremony; embodiment; spirits.


Pains

The indigenous peoples of north-central and north-coastal California have a view of disease-causing agents that is unique to North America. Illness is believed to be caused by the intrusion into the body of “pains,” as they are referred to in the anthropological literature. These same pains are also the source of the shaman's power, so much so that the measure of a shaman's power is directly proportional to the number of pains held in the body. This notion of pains as the cause of illness and source of power extends to the west and south to the Southern Paiutes of Nevada where pains are called pakankii.
Pains are energy intrusions sent by a spirit, sorcerer, or someone with intent to harm the victim. They manifest in a variety of forms, frequently forms clear and sharp at both ends. They are able to fly from source to victim and continue to move even after being extracted from the body of the victim/patient.

Pains are distinguished from the energy intrusions that cause illness in other cultures. Pains are like simplistic spirits; they are in and of themselves supernaturally powerful. Other energetic intrusions are given power by the spirits or sorcerers who create them; their power is not innate. These intrusions manifest in ordinary forms, like sticks and stones whose presence in the body is harmful and disease producing.

As with energy intrusions, the shaman must locate the pain in the patient's body and suck it out, or extract it in some way. Unlike other energy intrusions the extracted pain is a potential source of power for the shaman. After a shaman has extracted a pain he or she either destroys it or keeps it within his or her own body to determine whether or not the power can be transformed to a useful power.

After the extraction in the healing ritual, the shaman usually displays the pain for the patient, family, and other participants to see, then swallows it. If it appears to the shaman that the pain will not become a source of power, it is destroyed. Once a shaman has transformed a pain to a source of power, he or she is able to vomit it up, display it, and swallow it again at will.

Traditionally, women of this region become shamans through symbolic dreams of pains. For example, a dream of mountain can be interpreted as a dream of the source of pains or a dream of a sunset can be interpreted as a dream of the color of pains the novice will acquire. After a novice receives her first pain in a dream, she must learn to control it so that it does not become a disease-causing agent in her body.

In this unique way, the shamans of California gain healing power through the acquisition and control of pains. Additional pains can be acquired by dancing and fasting at isolated spots or by extracting them from patients. The most powerful shamans have collected and gained control of many, many pains. See also California region; dance; ritual; Wintun.


Paksu Mudang
The gender-variant male shaman who performs as a woman and dresses in women's garments while conducting exorcism rituals. The paksu mudang is one of two classes of male shamans in Korea where the mudang (shamans) are predominantly female. The other class is populated by traditionally masculine men who are visually impaired. Male shamans specialize in exorcisms and work with the forceful chanting of mantras. They rarely use trance, which is the domain of the mudang. See also chant; gender variant; ritual.


Paq'o
The paq'o are the shamans and spiritual leaders of the Q'ero who live high in the Andes of Peru. They serve an area or region. There are many levels of paq'o involving many, many years of training. One of the higher levels, the pampa mesayog, is the “shaman” as defined in this volume. See also Andes, South America.

Paraphernalia
Paraphernalia refers to the personal belongings and articles of equipment used by shamans in their work. The paraphernalia used by a particular
shaman varies relative to culture, helping spirits, expertise or rank, and personal preference.

Examples of common paraphernalia include clothing, headdresses, stones, knives, swords, divination tools, crystals, whistles, soul catchers, musical instruments for inducing trance, mirrors, alcohol, candles, incense, pipes, amulets, spring water, grain, fruit, flowers, equipment for delivering prepared plant hallucinogens, and a vast variety of personal power objects.

Some items have both a universal function and unique cultural function. For example, the drum is used by shamans around the world as a tool to enter trance. However, some shamans decorate their drums with their map of the invisible world or use the drum directly as a divination tool.

Many objects in a shaman's collection are functional and essential to the success of the ritual work, like the drum, rattle, or smoke. The function of the item in the healing ritual determines whether it is essential and when. For example, alcohol offered as a libation in a Haitian ritual may or may not be deemed essential to that ritual, while trago (cane alcohol) used in a Quechua cleansing is essential for that healing.

Some paraphernalia is determined strictly by an individual shaman's unique powers and the need to embody and support it. A shaman may be guided by his or her helping spirit to find an object in a particular place or to make it in a particular way. Shamans will use a traditional object, like a sword, or an ordinary object, like a stone, in an innovative way if directed to do so by helping spirits.

In any shaman's collection of paraphernalia there may be items whose presence is determined by the culture. The presence of these ceremonial objects or costumes puts the audience and patient at ease. These things help the shaman to engage the audience and draw them into the sacred space of the ritual; however, the shaman could work successfully without them.

Some paraphernalia is used by shamans to provide symbolic representations of the formless and ineffable nature of the sacred in the material world. It is the shaman's role to communicate the sacred; however, that is not always most effective when done directly. Nor is it always possible in the midst of a healing ritual to speak. Shamans can achieve nonverbal communication during their rituals through the use of their paraphernalia. See also embodiment and Quechua.


Pattern Recognition

In the shaman's world all things have spirit and everything is one. A person, a stone, and a thought are all made of the same stuff. They are all energy and they are all connected. These connections create patterns of energy that are recognizable in altered states of consciousness. The shaman works with these patterns or forms of energy in trance. For example, a spirit who helps the shaman is one pattern of energy; the cause of an illness is another; and the shaman is another.

Everything is seen as a necessary part of the whole. However, it is the shaman's job to distinguish between the enemy and the ally, between benevolent and malevolent spirits and energies. The shaman's work is often interpreted through a system of good and evil, but in a more accurate and practical sense the shaman is using a system of pattern recognition.

The energetic pattern of an ally is different than that of an enemy; benevolent energy feels different than malevolent energy. In this way the shaman can distinguish, for example, the difference between a wise ancestor who has crossed over at death and returned to aid the shaman and the spirit of an ancestor who is unresolved about his or her life or death and hangs around the
living trying to gain resolution or revenge, which creates problems for the living.

The shaman’s ability to distinguish between an enemy and an ally in the spirit world does not lie in knowing who’s good and who’s evil, but in pattern recognition and the ability to accurately sense energy forms. Often the shaman must “sense” through layers of deception and trickery to accurately define the true nature of a pattern or energy form.


**Pawágan**

The pawágan, pawáganak (pl), is a guardian spirit who comes in a power dream or during a childhood vision quest to the Ojibwa. Pawágan, which means “dream visitor,” refers to both the spirit and the spirit powers obtained from the spirit through the vision quest or power dreams. These spirits usually appear in a human form and are referred to as “grandfather.”

All Ojibwa children are encouraged to seek pawágan through power dreams from the age of six until the spirit powers come. It is especially important for boys to gain the protection of a pawágan given the dangers inherent in hunting and warfare. Between the ages of ten and fourteen years, any boy who had not acquired his pawágan spontaneously was sent on a vision quest each spring until the helping spirit was acquired.

A site was selected in the woods and a platform, or wážisan (“nest”), was constructed there in a tree for each boy. The boy remained in the wážisan, often for more than week, until his pawágan presented itself in a power dream or vision. The content of these power dreams was not shared with anyone or the power acquired would be withdrawn from the boy. Even so, all powers received in this way from the pawágan were contingent upon the fulfillment of obligations and the adherence to taboos defined by the pawágan. See also manitou.


**Paxé**

In ancient times the peoples of the southwestern North America prepared a plant hallucinogen called paxé. Paxé was made by mixing peyote (*Lophophora williamsii*) with herbs and samin (little red beans, *Sophora secundiflora*).

**Payé**

Payé means imbued with shamanic power. Things and animals are referred to as being payé or a little payé. Payé is a title given to shamans throughout much of Amazonia; however, payé does not always equal shaman in use.

The payé usually works with sacred plant hallucinogens to learn directly from the spirits of the plants how to use the vast variety of rain forest plants for entheogentic and medicinal purposes. The payé’s role in the community is based on the power and accuracy of his or her work in trance with the spirits and energies of the invisible world. See also ayahuasca; entheogen; plant diets.


**Peak Experiences**

Peak experiences are intense, climactic human responses to the experience of one’s connection to all things. They are poignantly emotional and at times exclusively emotional. They are characterized by an element of surprise or
disbelief and a quality of a first time experience or a miracle.

Peak experiences are often transcendent, mystical, or religious experiences that are not dependent on location (church or temple) or beliefs (religion or faith), nor do they necessarily imply supernatural intervention. Peak experiences arise from a particularly lucid state of mind that is achievable in almost any activity, when the activity is raised to the individual’s threshold level of perfection.

The terms “religious” or “mystical” do not describe the full range of peak experiences. The same quality of peak experience can be triggered by stimuli or situations other than those in religious or mystical contexts. For example, experiences of nature, of the creative, of love, of sex, of death or despair, of insight, of performing live, or of watching a live performance of art or athletics can trigger a peak experience.

Peak experiences are hard to share with others who have not experienced the ecstatic state of a peak experience. People turn to shamans, in part, to have their peak experience resolved into a greater cosmic framework so that they can understand and use it. Others who have not had peak experiences turn to shamans to connect with the sacred through the shaman’s ecstatic state, experiencing a peak vicariously.

Peak experiences come unexpectedly and do not necessarily contribute to the progress of all those who seek transcendent states of consciousness. Peak experiences are best understood as a tool for personal development, not a way of life. Applying what is gleaned in a peak experience to one’s life can lead to a more sustained transcendent experience. The compulsive pursuit of the peak experiences alone may result in neglecting the very paths that will ultimately lead the individual to a more sustained transcendent experience of life.

At the turn of the century, peak experiences were considered abnormal or pathological by Western psychologists. While it is true that the mentally ill may have peak experiences, peak experiences themselves are not proof of mental illness. Peak experiences are more a characteristic of healthy individuals than of neurosis or psychosis.

It is becoming increasingly apparent that not having peak experiences is actually a sign of illness. A life without peak experiences may indicate a state in which the individual is not functioning as a full human or not sufficiently integrated. Not asking the questions that lead to peak experiences may be a sign of abnormal existential health. A healthy individual who adequately fulfills the concept of being human should experience spontaneous, peak moments in life.

The content of the peak experience and the experience itself reveal the nature of reality, humankind’s relation to it, and the values inherent in it. Peak experiences transcend morals, ethics, and dualities, like the distinction between good and evil. They reveal how these parts of life that appeared at odds in the moments before the experience now fit together into the whole.

The characteristics of a peak experience are known completely, without linear thought, throughout the entire being. In short, they are grokked. The following is a list of twenty-five characteristics of peak experiences:

1. The entire universe is perceived of as an integrated and unified whole in which the individual recognizes his or her place.
2. The quality and quantity of concentration is greater and more focused, resulting in enhanced perception of total sight, sound, and feeling. The inherent equality in things emerges from this totality, replacing the human habit of arranging things in a hierarchy of importance.
3. In this state of heightened awareness of one’s own being, the being aspect of the external world and external objects becomes apparent. Everything exists as an end in itself, not as a value defined relative to humans.
4. The independent reality of objects and people is more readily apparent as the individual's perception becomes less egocentric.

5. The peak experience is self-validating and self-justifying. Its intrinsic value may be experienced so intensely and completely that it renews the intrinsic value of life and justifies living.

6. Peak experiences are recognized as an end, not a means. This affirms that there are things, objects, or experiences that are worthwhile in themselves, thus renewing the awareness that life is worthwhile.

7. Awareness of time and space is altered. There may be a perception of timelessness and/or spacelessness, a complete lack of consciousness of time and space, or an awareness of eternity and universality.

8. The world is seen as a whole. Evil, pain, disease, and death are accepted, understood, and seen in their proper places in the whole, as unavoidable, necessary, and belonging.

9. Through this profound acceptance of the whole, the individual is freed from the need to judge, blame, condemn, or be disappointed, and can respond with pity, charity, kindness, and perhaps sadness or amusement.

10. The spiritual values of which the world is made become apparent. For example, the world does not merely exist; it is also sacred. Reality, then, is perceived as being composed of intrinsic values, which are absolute and can be defined in terms of each other but cannot be analyzed or broken down further.

11. The awareness of one's place in the greater being of the whole inspires a more passive, receptive, and humble consciousness than is normal for the individual.

12. The peak experience inspires in the individual feelings of wonder, awe, reverence, humility, surrender, and worship.

13. The individual perceives of unity and integration in the world and tends to move toward fusion, integration, and unity within himself, resolving or transcending the dichotomies, polarities, and conflicts of life.

14. The individual experiences a transient loss of fear, anxiety, inhibition, defense and control, perplexity, confusion, conflict, delay, and restraint.

15. The immediate effects or after-effects on the individual can range in intensity from life changing to therapeutic to no effects at all.

16. The individual experiences an increased awareness of "heaven" as an ever-available state that exists all the time all around.

17. The individual experiences a tendency to move toward uniqueness, the real self, or to become more real.

18. The individual experiences increased awareness of "free will," of being the responsible, active, and creative center of his or her own activities.

19. Peak experiences allow those who have clear and strong identities to transcend the ego and enter a selfless state of consciousness.

20. The individual becomes more loving and accepting, and, as a result, more spontaneous, honest, and innocent.

21. The individual transcends the experience of living under the laws of the physical world and becomes aware of the influence of psychological laws.

22. The wholeness of the peak experience frees the individual from striving, needing, or wishing for more.

23. During and after the peak experience, the individual feels lucky, fortunate, and graced to have had the experience.

24. The dichotomy between humility and pride tends to be resolved in the peak experience.

25. The individual experiences "unitive consciousness" and the sacred essence of all worldly experiences and things.

See also ecstasy; mystical experiences; plateau experiences; trance.
Persecution of Shamans

There is a long history, worldwide, of the death and persecution of shamans by invading religions and governments. Shamanism has survived through adaptation in some areas and retreats onto wholly undesirable land in other areas, yet some scholars ask why isn’t there more shamanism today?

Michael Harner, anthropologist and founder/president of the Foundation for Shamans Studies, explains that the persecution of shamans and the suppression of shamanic practices were quite strong. Even in the nineteenth century, it was still a criminal offense to own a drum in parts of Europe. Human history shows us again and again that the threat of death, banishment from one’s community, and systematic persecution are often enough to wipe out entire cultures or, at the very least, to send practices for cultivating power and individual freedom deeply underground. Either way, it is only a matter of a single lifetime, that of the few living traditional shamans, before the practices are lost.

The systematic persecution of shamans was enforced through laws, banning shamanic practices like drumming, and death. These things are a matter of record. What must also be noted is the extent to which the conquering governments and religions successfully undermined respect for the shamans and the shamans’ worldview.

Even before the systematic persecution, anyone who was called by spirit to become a shaman was deeply reluctant to follow that path. The life of the shaman involves far too much sacrifice in the best of situations for an individual to follow that path when the respect and social support for the role are also removed. There is little reason for the next generation to respond to a call that brings disrespect, disregard, social ostracism, possible imprisonment, and a very real threat of death.

Nonetheless, shamans have absorbed, assimilated, and reinterpreted new belief systems again and again all over the globe. They have adapted primarily to be tolerated by the locally dominant government and/or religion. Adaptation often meant barely saving their wisdom, their teachings, and their lives.

Adaptation has allowed contemporary shamans to remain effective as healers even after their cultures have changed. Shamans adapt to gain the trust of new clients where the old ways have been discredited and dismissed as superstition. For example, many shamans in Tuva are also Buddhist priests. Shamans have also adapted to understand the psyches of clients, changed through the client’s adaptation. Many shamans adapted by blending religion into their practices because missionaries came with religious beliefs they professed were “right.” Entire cultures were swayed by the new and powerfully compelling concept of “right.” It was not initially apparent that accepting the “rightness” of these religious beliefs necessarily defined their spirituality as wrong.

As societies and shamans evolved and adapted over time, a variety of specialists appeared to try to fill the holes created in the social fabric by the suppression of shamanism. Many of the shaman’s traditional roles were picked up by healers, priests, mediums, and sorcerers specializing, respectively, in medicine, ceremony, spirit possession, and malevolent magic. Most of the shamans’ roles and skills were retained by these specialists except one, journeying. None of the shamans’ successors journey. Without the journey, the art of shamanism and the ability to create vital healing ritual is lost. See also ritual.
Peyote

Lophophora cactus is found in two distinct species, \textit{williamsii} and \textit{diffusa}, and both are used as peyote by the indigenous peoples from the southwest coast of \textbf{North America} to the Sierra Madre and from Mexico north to what is now Arkansas. The \textbf{Huichol} of Mexico say that eating peyote “will give one heart” and greatly increase the \textit{kupuri}, or life-force \textbf{energy}. They revere peyote above \textit{Teonanácatl}, \textit{Morning Glory}, \textit{Datura}, and all other \textbf{plant hallucinogens} of that region and have built the social and mythological structure of their \textbf{culture} around peyote and the experience of the \textbf{trance} state it induces.

\textit{Lophophora} cacti are small, spineless, top-shaped plants measuring up to three-and-a-quarter inches in diameter. \textit{Lophophora} is found in scattered locations of dry, calcareous soil in the stony desert regions of Mexico and Texas. Each section of the cactus grows a flat areole with a tuft of hairs. Whitish or pinkish flowers, called \textit{tűtů} by the Huichol, grow from the center of the crown, the part of the plant that is harvested for use. \textit{Lophophora williamsii} is usually blue-green with five to thirteen ribs, while \textit{Lophophora diffusa} has a gray-green to yellow-green crown with infinite ribs and curves. If harvested properly, the roots continue to reproduce.

The use of peyote, medicinally and as a sacred \textbf{entheogen}, is an ancient practice in the Americas. Archaeologists discovered peyote in Texas preserved in a way that suggests ceremonial use more than three thousand years ago in the United States. There are reports of the use among the \textbf{Aztecs} even earlier. Peyote use is recorded with the Chichimeca, who inhabited the desert plateaus of northern Mexico, and the Toltecs at least two thousand years ago and with the Tarahumara long before that. Tarahumara symbols of peyote ceremonies are found in ancient lava rock carvings in \textbf{Mesoamerica}.

There is some scholarly discussion about who first discovered the use of peyote and how that practice then spread to others. The indigenous peoples who used peyote traditionally explain that peyote came to them from the gods in the time of creation and that the peyote spirit taught different peoples how to use it, independently of one another.

Regardless of where it came from, the medicinal and ceremonial use of peyote was firmly rooted in the spiritual practices of the native populations of Mexico and the Southwest long before the New World was “discovered” by Europeans. Religious and cultural persecution, first by the Spaniards and then by white Americans and more missionaries, drove these practices into hiding in the hills and valleys that are home to the Huichol, Tarahumara, Cora, and others where peyote use persists today.

In addition, peyote use has spread well beyond the areas of its original use due to the unifying force of the \textbf{Native American Church}. Within the practices of the Native American Church, peyote is shared as sacrament by peoples of diverse Native American nations. They gather to experience the ecstatic union with \textbf{spirit} and direct communication with the spirit that is characteristic of the peyote-induced altered state. Established in 1922 with 13,300 members, the membership of the Native American Church has grow to more than a quarter-million.

Peyote is called many names, including \textit{hikori} by the Tarahumara, \textit{wokowi} by the Comanches, \textit{señi} by the Kiowas, and \textit{peyotl} in Nahuatl, the
native language of the Aztecs. Though it has been called “mescal,” peyote should not be confused with mescal beans that are psychoactive and highly toxic or mescal liquor that is distilled from agave cactus.

**Use**

Peyote is used by various indigenous peoples as a means to enter trance and communicate directly with spirit. Regional and individual variations are seen in its use and the rituals and dance ceremonies that accompany its use. Healings are often performed by shamans in the context of these rituals and ceremonies. While in a peyote-induced trance state shamans can manipulate kupuri and the patient’s relationship to the web of energy that connects all life and effect a cure.

Peyote is also used medicinally. It is prepared in an variety of ways to treat a variety of illnesses and physical distress. Peyote is also eaten for medicinal purposes, though usually in smaller amounts than when eaten for its entheogenic properties. In some cultures peyote is eaten outside of ritual or medicinal context, to restore energy and stay awake, to go without food or water for days, or to fight without fear, under the protection of the peyote spirit.

Peyote dance ceremonies serve as a form of preventative medicine on both the personal and the social levels. Ingesting peyote and dancing is a form of prayer that enables dancers to connect to each other in mystical and spiritual dimensions. When they dance, they are united with each other and with the spirit that connects all things. This is the “One Heart” that the Huichol marakate (shamans) speak of and it is the reason peyote is held in such high regard by the peoples who use it.

**Preparation**

The crown is cut from the root of the cactus so that the roots sprout new crowns. Peyote cacti with multiple heads are not uncommon. The crowns are then eaten raw or dried. The crowns are also prepared as a tea or a mash. The dried, disk-like heads are known as Peyote Buttons or Mescal Buttons.

For the Huichol, preparation and consumption of peyote is almost always done within a strict ceremonial context. During the peyote hunt, peyote is not eaten until the shaman indicates that the time is right to do so even though the pilgrims have been fasting for days. The pilgrims first stalk it, hunt it like deer, and then, after all of the ritual obligations are performed, eat the fresh peyote before continuing with their annual harvest. Peyote is preferred freshly harvested, and four to thirty crowns may be consumed by a dancer in the course of a typical ceremony.

**Active Principle**

The primary active principle of *Lophophora williamsii* is mescaline, or trimethoxyphenylethylamine. It also contains as many as thirty alkaloids, mostly phenylethylamines and isoquinolines. *Lophophora diffusa* is morphologically and chemically much simpler, with mescaline still the primary active principle.

Mescaline is responsible for the spectacular, vibrantly colored visions induced by both species of cacti. It is nonvolatile; therefore, the peyote does not lose its potency when dried or stored. Traditionally, the peyote gathered once a year in the Huichol peyote hunt is dried and stored for use throughout the year.

**Characteristics of the Induced Altered State**

Peyote induces a trance state characterized by spectacular visions with kaleidoscopic colors, sounds, feelings, and flavors. These strong hallucinogenic effects come with only mild aftereffects relative to other plant hallucinogens. The first phase of the trance state is characterized by feelings of contentment and the increased sensitivity of all the senses. The onset of the second phase is marked by a great calm,
muscular sluggishness, a shift of focus to introspection and meditation, and for some interaction with figures, scenes, or animated objects.

Peyote visions differ depending on the amount of peyote eaten and the level of spiritual awareness of the individual. The second phase of phosphene perception is believed to be the direct communication with the spirit world, and not everyone who consumes peyote can make the transition into the second phase. This transition is often described as a passage through darkness, a tunnel, or a doorway that must be navigated by the individual, not experienced passively.

Ritual of Receiving Peyote
For the Huichol, the first ritual of receiving the sacred cacti is performed at the harvest during the peyote hunt. The lead mara'akame blesses the ritual objects with sacred water, the candles and copal incense are lit, and everyone prays to the five directions. Fresh peyote is placed in votive bowls. With feather wand and sacred water the mara'akame purifies everyone, touching peyote to their cheeks, throat, and wrists. Then the pilgrims remove the white tufts, leave them as offerings, peel the tough skin, and eat from the first peyote of the hunt.

In the villages, the traditional peyote ritual is primarily a dance ritual that appears to have changed little over the centuries. Although the importance of peyote as an entheogen varies among the peoples who use it, the dancing does not vary in importance to the traditional ritual. The Cora, for example, begin by clearing and sweeping a space large enough for all the men and women who will dance. The “leader of the singing” is seated in the center with the lead musician and each of their assistants.

Peyote is consumed by all who participate. A tray of peyote and a peyote drink are prepared for the dancers. The dancers dance around the circle or in place marking time with their feet. The musician and singer continue with the dancers throughout the evening without exhaustion. No one stops or leaves the circle from early evening until well after dawn. Some ceremonies last two to four days.

The Tarahumara name for their peyote dance ritual means “moving about the fire.” The peyote, the fire, the dancing, and the dancers’ prayers are the most important elements of the ritual. The Tarahumara hold the dance at any time of the year, often incorporating it with other festivals, yet always dancing for health, tribal prosperity, or simple worship. Healing rituals are often carried out within the dance. The full night of dancing with peyote is followed by a day of feasting.

Songs and Dances
The dances are the physical embodiment of the dancers’ prayers and their experiences in the spirit world during their peyote-induced trance. The songs are all given to people by the peyote spirit. To receive a song is considered good luck. The songs are the words of peyote and are shared with the whole community. All of the songs sung throughout the night praise peyote for its protection of the tribe and the beauty and unity it brings to the people.

Use in Western Medicine
Mescaline is used in contemporary psychiatry. It is similar in structure to noradrenaline (norepinephrine), a brain hormone. The chemistry of mescaline is relatively simple, 3, 4, 5, trimethoxyphenylethylamine, and is easily synthesized. See also altered states of consciousness.


Peyote Hunt

The annual gathering of peyote by the Huichol. Once a year small groups of ten to fifteen pilgrims are led by an experienced *mara'akame* (shaman) on a journey that repeats the same journey taken by their *ancestor*, Tatewari, who led the original peyote hunt. Through the peyote hunt the Huichol participate in a sacred pilgrimage to the home of their Ancestors in Wirikuta, the origin of the sacred life of the Huichol.

The pilgrims travel as the Ancient Ones did, abstaining from sex, sleep, and eating only peyote and tortillas. Those who make this arduous journey travel for several days over two hundred miles. They journey “to find their life” at Wirikuta where all are one. The pilgrimage is often made by novice shamans seeking sacred visions and special shamanic powers. However, many pilgrims are family members, often traveling with children, so that they are taught through experience family and cultural values.

Preparation

The pilgrims prepare for the journey through a ritual of recapitulation and purification with Tatewari, the spirit of fire. Each participant, including the *mara'akame* who will lead the hunt, publicly recapitulates all of the sexual encounters of his or her entire life, without resentment or jealousy. This ritual does not involve shows of guilt, shame, or blame. Even people who are not making the pilgrimage participate in this ritual of cleansing and renewal.

The *mara'akame* knots a string for each encounter. This string with the knots of the entire group is burned at the close of the ritual. With the burning, each participant is cleansed by Tatewari and returned to his or her state of pre-sexual innocence. The preparation ritual ensures the safety of the group on their dangerous passage.

Negative experiences during the peyote-induced trance state are rare. However, the most common reason for having an unpleasant experience is not naming all of the people with whom one has had sexual relations during the preparation ritual. To recapitulate incompletely is in essence a lie to the community; however, to do so in ritual is to lie to a god.

Ingesting peyote opens a channel of communication to the gods, who if lied to will have something to say about it, which results in an unpleasant hallucinogenic experience. Thus, peyote reinforces the importance of proper participation in rituals, traditions, and in one’s interactions with others.

Gathering Peyote

Tatewari, the first *mara'akame*, led the first expedition to collect peyote at Wirikuta where the hallucinogenic cactus grows abundantly. Each pilgrim carries a basket filled with offerings of peyote to the Ancestor gods and goddesses at Wirikuta. The same basket will be used to transport the fresh peyote back home. Pilgrims also carry a tobacco gourd, gourds for carrying sacred water from Wirikuta, dried peyote, and the tortillas they will eat on their journey.

Today, much of the two-hundredmile trek is done by whatever transportation can be arranged. Little else has changed. The pilgrims still travel, abstaining from water, sex, sleep, and food, other than the tortillas, throughout the journey.

When the pilgrims are in sight of the sacred mountains of Wirikuta (near San Luis Potosí), the hunt begins to take on otherworldly dimensions. The *mara'akame* begins to chant and pray. The pilgrims ritually wash and pray for rain and fertility. As the chanting continues the pilgrims begin to enter lightly into altered states of consciousness and the Ancient times become superimposed on present time.
As the journey continues the mara'akame opens the portals into the spirit world, first the Gateway of the Clashing Clouds and then the Gateway of the Clouds. This passage, though only literally several feet, is often filled with emotion for the pilgrims who are now returning, physically and spiritually, to the place of the origin of their ancestors.

When the pilgrims arrive at the place of the peyote, the mara'akame begins the ceremonial preparation for the hunt. The mara'akame tells stories of the peyote tradition and invokes protection for the hunt. Everyone lights candles and prays, while the mara'akame chants, filling everyone with the power of the spirits of the Ancestors. New pilgrims are blindfolded, and all are led through the threshold and into the hunt.

When the mara'akame has seen “the deer tracks” (the first peyote cactus), he draws his bow and arrow and shoots the cactus. The peyote is found. The pilgrims raise candles in the direction of the ascending sun and make their offerings to the spirits and to Hikuri, the peyote. The mara'akame continues his chants and the pilgrims pray and cry out to the gods to accept their offerings.

The first peyote found is shared by all, then everyone begins collecting until the baskets are full. The cactus is always cut away from its roots so that it will grow again “from its bones.” The gathering may continue into the next day. When the baskets are full the hunt is closed as are all portals opened to get to Wirikuta in a ritual fire.

When the pilgrims return home each family member in the rancho is blessed with sacred water and give peyote chosen especially for them so that they may also share in the visions and experiences of the pilgrims who undertook the sacred journey for all.

accumulate and store the substance in his body. The quenyon becomes the new shaman’s power that he will add to over his lifetime. See also embodiment; extraction; South America.


**Phosphenes**

Phosphenes are luminous lines, zigzags, grids, vortices, flashes, nested curved lines, and spots of lights that characterize the visions in the early stage of trance. They can be seen with the eyes open or shut. The visual phenomena of the journeying trance states change as the journeyer progresses more deeply into trance. Phosphenes are characteristic of the first stage of the three distinct stages of trance. See also journey.

**Pindé**

See ayahuasca.

**Pisausut**

Pisausut is the West Greenland Eskimo term for lifeforce, or mana, that manifests from the inua or soul. In a soul retrieval healing, the angakok (shaman) restores the patient’s pisausut by retrieving the lost inua from the spirit world and returning it to the patient’s body. See also Greenland; healing; soul loss.


**Placings (for spirits)**

Objects used to house spirit power. Placings can be permanent or temporary. Permanent placings are used for spirits that could be passed on, like clan spirits, or for spirits an individual hopes to have a permanent relationship with, like master spirits, without whose help the shaman would die of lack of power and protection while performing shamanic rituals.

The placings are present when a shaman performs rituals as they are a source of power. They can be created, like a carved tiger or bear, or used as found. Placings are power objects when they are in use housing a spirit.


**Plant Diets**

Observing a strict plant diet is a fundamental part of the traditional process of working with plant teachers in the Amazon regions. The diets are prescribed through visions given to the shaman by the spirit of the plant while the shaman is in a trance state induced by a plant hallucinogen.

A shaman observes a very restricted diet specific to the plant, for example, rice, plantains, and water, for the designated time to learn to work with a particular plant. During the plant diet period the only other thing the shaman consumes is the plant itself, to experience its effects on the body, and ayahuasca, to aid the shaman in attuning with the spirit of the plant.

Some plants need only one dieting period to convey the knowledge and information necessary for their safe use and preparation for a variety of medicinal applications. Other plants or plant preparations, like ayahuasca, have so much to teach and so much knowledge to convey that their diets may be repeated many times. Even experienced shamans will undergo a plant diet when they want to learn to use a new plant.

Each plant has its own diet, with specific foods, thoughts, and activities required for a specific number of days. Some diets extend into months and many require seclusion from family,
social activities, and sex. For some plants there are different diets for learning different ways of preparing and applying the same plant.

During the diet, the student is taught how, when, and where to harvest the plant: what parts of the plant to use; and how different parts of the plant can be used to treat different problems. The shaman also learns how to prepare the plants, which sometimes involves numerous steps, and how different preparations can be used to treat different problems.

Dieting is supervised by a shaman who can intervene when necessary to restore harmony between the student and the energies of the plant teacher. The diet is designed by the plant spirit to release old emotional patterning and fears that block the student's ability to communicate with the plant teacher. When these energies are released they can clash with the plant energies in ways that result in physical or emotional trauma. The shaman can intervene to restore balance and communication between the energies.

Once a diet is begun, it must not be broken in thought or action. To break a commitment with a plant teacher is like conducting a ritual without closing it. The spirits always do something to remind the people that they are still there. Plant spirits may cause accidents and bad fortune in the life of a student who breaks his or her commitment. Only a shaman who is on intimate terms with the plant spirit who has been betrayed can heal the relationship between the person and the plant.

**Plant Hallucinogens**

Hallucinogenic plants have been used by people around the world for tens of thousands of years. They are a diverse group of plants that are in general toxic, narcotic, and nonaddictive. Approximately 150 species of plants are known to be used for their hallucinogenic properties and at least one is found in almost every area of the globe.

There are very few First Peoples who did not use hallucinogenic plants. Australia, New Zealand, and the Pacific Islands are the only areas where hallucinogenic plants are found in the local flora, but there is no known usage of them as hallucinogens by the aboriginal populations. The Polynesians did use *Piper myristicum* to make the hypnotic drink *Kava-kava*. However it is not a true hallucinogen. There is also no known usage of hallucinogens with the Eskimos who have strong shamanic traditions, but very little plant life of any kind.

Plant hallucinogens work because they are “toxic.” A toxic substance is broadly defined as a plant, animal, or chemical substance ingested for other than purely nutritional purposes that has a noticeable biodynamic effect on the body. Relative to shamanism, intoxication must be understood as a broad range of biodynamic effects, including sensory stimulation, shift in sense of self, and awareness of one’s place in the Kosmos.

Plant hallucinogens are also used medicinally and in medicinal preparations with other plants. The difference between a medicine, a hallucinogen, and a poison is often the dosage, and in many cases the preparation. Shamans clearly understand that a proper dosage and specific application or preparation of a plant medicine is medicinal, while a stronger dosage and preparation is narcotic, while an even stronger dosage can be deadly.

Hallucinogens are nonaddictive and narcotic, which means technically (not legally) that the substance terminates its effects by depressing the central nervous system after one or more phases of stimulation. Many kinds of hallucinations are experienced during the phases of stimulation including: visual, auditory, tactile, olfactory, gustatory, and biomechanical. A single plant hallucinogen may induce several kinds of hallucinations simultaneously or in different phases.

Some plants induce experiences of such psychophysiological complexity
that they can not be accurately classified as hallucinations, which are generally visual and auditory. These plants are the **entheogens**, a term created because no other single term addresses the full range of sensory experience or the spiritual and magical aspects of the effects induced by these plants. The trance experiences induced by entheogens can be indistinguishable from traditional, mystical religious experiences.

Some plant hallucinogens can induce what contemporary medicine would consider psychotic states, or artificial psychoses. In this case the active agent can be called psychotomimetic. **Psychotomimetic** effects are normally temporary, though occasionally permanent effects are reported due to misuse, overuse, or overdose.

Our intention is to present the plant hallucinogens from the perspective of the people who have been using them for thousands of years and not to limit this discussion to the point of view of people who have only been studying them for a few short decades. From the shaman’s experience and perspective the plant hallucinogens alter an individual’s relationship with **space**, **time**, **self**, and the Universe. There is no loss of consciousness. However, there is a change in which an individual’s perception of reality and consciousness itself can be deeply altered by these **sacred** plants.

This shift in consciousness allows the shaman, and the patient when he or she also ingests the hallucinogen, to enter into the realm where the true **spirit** nature of the **illness** or **disease** resides. In the shaman’s world sickness and death originate in the spirit world, not from some removed physical or organic cause. The illness can be “seen” in a form that allows accurate **diagnosis**, a clear remedy or process for removal, and ultimately a **healing** resolution.

**Chemical Factories and Initiation**

All plants are chemical factories. The plant hallucinogens produce specific and complex chemical substances that promote healing and expand human consciousness. Plants that create hallucinogenic substances occur in the angiosperms, the highest evolved flowering plants, and in one division of fungi, which are simpler plants. The active chemistry of various plant hallucinogens is listed in the body of the individual entries.

The activity of hallucinogenic plants is induced by a limited number of chemical substances that act on the central nervous system in specific ways. The effects are temporary, lasting until the body can metabolize or excrete the active substance. These chemical substances are closely related in chemical structure to hormones present in the brain, like serotonin and noradrenaline, that play essential roles in the biochemistry of the brain’s activities.

The science of how these related chemical substances function in the brain, particularly the powerful entheogens, is not completely understood. It has been proposed that these hallucinogens, having the same basic structure as normal brain hormones, may act at the same site in the nervous system as the hormones do. This is based on the assumption that similar “keys” fit the same “lock.” If so, the psychophysiological functions associated with those brain sites would be altered, suppressed, stimulated, or otherwise modified.

While exactly how the entheogens work may remain part of the **Great Mystery**, shamans continue to use how they work for essential steps in **training** and **initiation**. In some cultures hallucinogens are used in training as an intermediate step in opening the initiate’s awareness of and connection to the spirit world. Many diverse shamanic peoples speak of opening a hole in the head to allow spirit to come in.

After years of training and experience in various trance states, some shamans develop the ability to access the desired altered state through will and intention alone. Many master
shamans choose when to use the plant hallucinogens and which plant to use. In some cultures one plant hallucinogen is used regularly in shamanic rituals while other hallucinogens are used only as needed for severe situations. In other cultures hallucinogens are rarely, if ever, used.

Consciousness Altering Is Not Consciousness Expanding

In this era of pharmacological psychology it is important to understand the difference between psychoactive drugs, like antidepressants, stimulants, and other mood-altering drugs, and the psychoactive plant medicines used in traditional shamanic practices. Psychoactive drugs are consciousness-altering; they switch awareness from one point of focus to another. The individual’s consciousness is switched by the drug from a pattern that is painful, like depression, to another pattern that feels significantly less painful or more empowered.

Hallucinogenic substances, like the plant medicines, function differently. They are consciousness-expanding; they widen the perceptual focus and bring the attention into the moment. They do not switch between patterns running in the same state of consciousness. They induce an alternate state of consciousness. They expand consciousness to include awareness of the painful pattern, a perception that it is only a pattern, the other patterns running simultaneously, an awareness of a larger context into which these patterns all fit, and the expanded point of view that there is an even larger pattern moving within the self, and another pattern in the space around the self into which all patterns weave together with everything.

In a state of expanded consciousness the individual’s pain is still present; however, it is perceived differently. It now holds less value relative to the expanded point of view. The pain is seen in the context of a greater Whole and recognized as part of that Whole. Every experience then, of pain or pleasure, is only one experience in a vastly expanded spectrum of sensations and experiences. See also altered states of consciousness; amanita muscaria; ayahuasca; Brugmansia aurea; Brumfelsia; Datura; Deadly Nightshade; epéndi; Iboga; Ololiuqui; peyote; plant spirits; San Pedro; Teonanácatl; yopo.


Plant Medicines

There are two general classes of plant medicines; those that are regarded as sacred and those known and used by the general population. The sacred plant medicines are primarily the hallucinogens with some medicinals and are used exclusively by or under the strict guidance of the shaman. The general plant medicines are primarily medicinals with some mild preparations of hallucinogens and are used by anyone with knowledge of plant remedies.

In many cultures the herbal or plant doctor is a different profession than the shaman, though in these cultures the two types of healers usually work together. Whether a shaman or plant doctor, these indigenous healers may know and employ over a hundred species of medicinal plants. Each of
these species may be used in many different ways to treat a variety of illnesses.

Indigenous peoples have always considered the plants sacred, particularly those that alter the normal functions of the mind and the body. In the native pharmacopoeia there are many plants that aid the physical healing of the body. However the entheogens, which help to heal the soul as well, are considered doctors in their own right.

In the shaman's worldview, sickness and death originate in the spirit world. Plants that allow the shaman to contact the spirit world are then the basis for his or her healing practice. Because the plant entheogens enable humans to speak to the spirits, they are called the "plants of the gods" or the "flesh of the gods."

The chemistry and bioactivity of the plant medicines are not the primary source of their power to heal. The primary power comes from the creative union of the plant's spirit and the shaman's spirit. The words and songs the shaman sings while preparing and ingesting or working with the spirit of the plant in the medicine are essential to the remedy. Without singing to the plant, the shaman knows the remedies would be weak. The words carried by the breath of the shaman are believed to have their own creative power.

The shaman's spiritual beliefs, or worldview, are the basis for that creative union with the plant spirits. The way the shaman works in union with medicinal and hallucinogenic plants is a direct application of his or her spiritual beliefs in the physical world.

The shaman can use either the physical attributes or the spiritual attributes (or both) of any plant. For example, in Amazonia, kana, the reddish berries of Sabicea amazonensis (Rubiaceae), is an important additive to sweeten the bitter ayahuasca drink. This uses the plant's physicality.

Kana is also the center of initiation rituals that use the plant's spirit. Kana berries are used in initiation because the shaman believes that each fruit is a heart and that these hearts are strung together like the fruits of the kana vine. These hearts are the people of each generation connected by the vine. By eating the kana fruit one is connected to the ancestral source of life. In these rituals the shaman camays (blows the Oneness of All Things) into the red berries and then administers them to the newborn whose heart is being connected to the community or to young men whose hearts are being connected to manhood and all the Ancestors who have gone before him.

This example illustrates the greater power in the plant medicines. The plant medicines allow the people to actualize and ingest their spiritual beliefs, their mythology, and their ancestry. From this relationship with the plants the individuals draw strength and the shaman draws magic.

The knowledge of general plant medicines is often widespread throughout the shaman's community. Women in the Amazon, for example, are often the keepers of a wide knowledge of medicinal plants, as well as the cultivation and collection, collection songs, preparation, and usage. Women harvest or collect plants for the general use of the community and often for the shaman specifically. The herbalist is frequently the shaman's wife, though women may also be shamans in their own right.

In indigenous cultures worldwide, the traditional healers could identify hundreds of species of plants by touch, smell, or appearance alone, a feat no university-trained botanist could do. Studies have shown that the Chacobo tribe in Bolivia used 95 percent of the tree species in their local ecosystem; the Tembe people of Brazil used 61.3 percent of the local tree species; and the Káapoor tribe used 76.8 percent. These studies did not take into account the use of plants other than trees.

Often these "untrained" healers identify different uses for different "kinds" of the same plant, though a botanist would consider them all the same species. For example, shamans
who work with *ayahuasca* distinguish between different parts of the plant, describing and making use of distinctly different healing or hallucinogenic properties of the plant. They can often distinguish between almost every species of tree in the rain forest merely by the smell, appearance, or feel of the bark.

Many theories have been put forth to explain how these healers know so much about the plant medicines. One theory is that they learned by trial and error. However, this does not explain the variation in parts of plants, preparations, dosages, etc., nor have these people been around long enough, statistically speaking, to have gathered the apparent amount and complexity of information.

Other theories may apply in some cases, but clearly do not explain the vast sum of knowledge being used. “Bitters” or taste may have guided people, since bitterness often indicates alkaloids, which represent the most important chemical components in modern medicine. Another theory is that color equals chemical potency. If a plant substance displays a peculiar color it may contain an interesting chemical. The Doctrine of Signatures is the theory that a plant or plant part that looks like something may somehow be good for treating that thing.

Other scholars suggest that the people learned by observing local animals in nature. However, stories of animals showing humans how to use the plants probably refer to the shaman’s *journeys* with *animal spirits*, since these animals taught the humans things far more complicated than what the animals actually do themselves. Others suggest that the people learned through *dreams* and *visions*, and this is perhaps closest to the truth.

The shamans and plant healers explain that they learned to use the plants from the plant spirits themselves, particularly by opening themselves to the wisdom of the plants by ingesting *plant hallucinogens* and engaging in *plant diets*. And by opening their hearts and minds to the plants, shamans have played a key role in the development and refinement of indigenous plant medicines now in use in Western pharmacology. Almost every plant species used by Western medicine was not discovered through science and research, but was originally discovered and used by indigenous peoples. See also *illness*.


### Plant Spirits

Plant spirits are the spiritual aspect of wild plants that may or may not take the form of the plant in *non-ordinary reality*. Like other *helping spirits* (energies found in the invisible world) plant spirits can assume other forms in the spirit world. Plant spirits are a kind of *nature spirit* which is a kind of helping spirit that the shaman works with while in an *altered state of consciousness*.

Plant spirits derive their *power* from the *Sun* and the *earth*. Unlike *power animals*, which are helping *spirits* available to all people, plant spirits tend to be available only to shamans and other healers who work with the *healing* powers of plants.

The primary importance of the plant spirits lies in their ability to teach the shaman how to use them. The shaman connects with the plant spirits in an altered state to learn the different applications of the plant for healing the body and the *soul*. The shaman must learn what part of the plant to use, when and how to harvest it, if and how to cultivate it, the *songs* necessary for collection, preparation, and use of the plant, etc.
The amount of information the plant spirits offer is endless. Human teachers can pass large bodies of information about working with plant medicines on to apprentices. If an apprentice also learns to enter an altered state and connect with the plant spirits to renew the information, correct healing rituals, and learn ways to treat new problems, he will become a shaman as well as a medicine man. If the apprentice learns only to apply the collected knowledge of the teacher, but not to communicate with the plant spirits themselves, then he or she will become a medicine person, but not a shaman.

In some cultures the plant spirits are used as helping spirits in the shaman's other healing work, like sucking extractions or soul retrievals. In other cultures they are primarily teachers. See also medicine; plant hallucinogens.


Plateau Experiences

A plateau experience is a profoundly serene and calm response to a miraculous or awesome experience, relative to the perspective of the individual. This sense of serenity is sustained over time. Like peak experiences, plateau experiences are often transcendent, mystical, or religious experiences that are not dependent on location (church or temple) or beliefs (religion or faith), nor do they necessarily imply supernatural intervention.

Serenity, defined as relaxation and awareness of the moment, is the distinctive component of plateau experiences. Plateau experiences involve retaining a sense of the ordinary while experiencing a non-ordinary fullness of life. This profound serenity is experienced in contrast to the usually intense, climactic, and explosively in-the-moment qualities characteristic of peak experiences.

Preconditions for the plateau experience are an awareness of the temporariness of one's own life, an openness to the miraculous, and the somewhat detached perspective of the witness who sees life in the context of the eternal world and is grateful for it. Plateau experiences are a blended experience of pure enjoyment and happiness with a noetic and cognitive element. The plateau experience is a pleasant, contemplative experience of witnessing and appreciating the unitive experience of life, the Universe, and oneself in that Wholeness.

Plateau and peak experiences differ particularly in relation to death. In the peak experience the individual often confronts his or her fear of death. If successful, a part of the pre-peak, identified self dies and the individual experiences a rebirth of his or her authentic self. In the plateau experience individuals are often making peace with death. The revelation of the experience is to see their own mortality in relation to the eternal truths that make up the essence of the world in which they live.

One can learn to live in the state of unitive consciousness; however, it is a lifelong effort. It is earned only through long, hard work and the experience of living, learning, and maturing over time. The particular “spiritual discipline” one follows in this lifelong effort is not as important as the commitment, discipline, work, study, and willingness to take the time to cultivate transcendence.

The content of the experience and the experience itself reveal the nature of reality, humankind's relation to it, and the values inherent in it. Both plateau and peak experiences transcend morals, ethics, and dualities, like the distinction between good and evil. They reveal how these parts of life that appeared at odds in the moments before the experience now fit together into the Whole.
The qualities of plateau experiences are known completely, without linear thought, throughout the entire being. In short, they are grokked. The following are the defining qualities of plateau experiences. They are shared by peak experiences:

1. The entire universe is perceived of as an integrated and unified Whole in which the individual recognizes his or her place within that Whole.
2. The quality and quantity of concentration is greater and more focused, resulting in enhanced perception of total sight, sound, and feeling. The inherent equality in things emerges from this totality, replacing the human habit of arranging things in a hierarchy of importance.
3. In this state of heightened awareness of one's own being, the Being aspect of the external world and external objects becomes apparent. Everything exists as an end in itself, not of a value defined relative to humans.
4. The independent reality of objects and people is more readily apparent as the individual's perception becomes less ego-centered.
5. An altered awareness of time allows an awareness of eternity and universality.
6. The world is seen as a whole. Evil, pain, disease, and death are accepted, understood, and seen in their proper places in the whole, as unavoidable, necessary, and belonging there.
7. Through this profound acceptance of the whole, the individual is freed from the need to judge, blame, condemn, or be disappointed and can respond with pity, charity, kindness, and perhaps sadness or amusement.
8. The spiritual values and truths of which the world is made become apparent. For example, the world does not merely exist; it is also sacred. Reality, then, is perceived as being composed of intrinsic values, which are absolute.
9. The awareness of one's place in the greater Being of the Whole inspires a more passive, receptive, and humble consciousness than is normal for the individual.
10. The individual perceives of unity and integration in the world and tends to move toward fusion, integration, and unity within himself, resolving or transcending the dichotomies, polarities, and conflicts of life.
11. The individual experiences a transient loss of fear, anxiety, inhibition, defense control, perplexity, confusion, conflict, delay, and restraint.
12. The individual experiences an increased awareness of "heaven" as an ever-available state that exists all the time all around.
13. The individual experiences a tendency to move toward uniqueness, the real self, or to become more real.
14. The individual becomes more loving and accepting and, as a result, more spontaneous, honest, and innocent.
15. The individual transcends the experience of living under the laws of the physical world and becomes aware of the influence of the psychological laws.
16. The wholeness of the peak experience frees the individual from habitual neediness that results in constant striving or wishing for more.
17. The individual experiences "unitive consciousness"—a sense of the sacred in the secular. See also ecstasy; mystical experiences; trance.


**Pogok**

The *pogok* is a *fetish*, carved from wood and created to embody a *spirit* or *energy*, like the *masks*. It is created and used by a *tungralik* (*shaman*). The *pogok* is usually burned after being used in a *ceremony* to release the spirit or energy within it, allowing it “to go to sea.” See also *Alaskan; embodiment; Eskimo*.


---

**Polyphasic Cultures**

Polyphasic cultures draw their worldview from multiple states of consciousness. Contemplative and *dream* states as well as the waking state inform their view of reality. Examples of polyphasic cultures around the globe are Australian *Aboriginals*, Ecuadorian *Achuar*, West African *Dagara*, and examples of polyphasic disciplines within *cultures* are Jewish Kabbalah, Buddhist *Abhidharma* psychology, and Vedantic philosophy.

Western psychology, philosophy, and culture are predominantly monophasic. They draw their world view almost exclusively from one state of consciousness, the usual waking state. See also *monophasic culture*.


---

**Popal Vuh**

The only remaining book of the Quiche Maya or the Book of Council of the Mayan people. The *Popal Vuh* contains stories, history, law, and poetry that together explain the essence of the Maya living experience, like the Old Testament Bible or the Koran.

The Maya developed a rich and expressive writing system to record their history. Maya scribes carved limestone, engraved jade, incised bone, and inscribed shell. They also wrote on accordion-folded books made from beaten bark, surfaced with a thin layer of plaster. Only four of thousands of books of Maya *knowledge* survived time and the Spanish conquest. They are all calendar almanacs for timing *ritual* except for the *Popal Vuh*.


---

**Possession**

Possession refers to the state of being controlled by a *spirit* or other force. Spirit possession is spontaneous, unintentional, and uncontrolled by the individual being possessed. This state has no purpose other than that of the possessing spirit and is considered an *illness*. The possessed individual is often rendered useless to himself or others and is without control over this *altered state of consciousness*.

In contrast, the state of possession used by the *shaman* is intentional and controlled. The shaman controls the entry into, duration of, and exit from the altered state. It is induced to serve a particular purpose in the *healing* ritual and the shaman is able to direct the *trance* experience toward that purpose. This state of intentional, controlled possession is spirit *embodiment*.

There is an intermediate state of possession which is uncontrolled but intentional and usually induced in a *ritual* context. This altered state is used primarily by novice shamans as a stage in *training* and by non-shamans in *cultures* that value and sanction connection with the Divine through spontaneous possession.
For example, in Indonesia the ability to surrender to states of possession and trance is encouraged from childhood. Throughout the islands people engage in various stages of possession, showing various degrees of ability in using these possession trances. In the beginning, the possessed may appear violent, thrashing and convulsing. As the individual develops the ability to focus and surrender, the thrashing gives way to a controlled possession, during which the individual can be pierced with a sword, beaten, or burned with coals and suffer no ill effects.

What makes the possession an act of shamanism is the shaman's ability not only to surrender to spirit, but to do so with a purpose and to accomplish that purpose while in trance. The purpose may be extraction, divination, or a healing ritual for the individual or community.

The explanation for where the shaman's spirit goes while in a possession trance varies culture to culture and shaman to shaman. For example, in Asia it is believed that the individual's spirit leaves the body and travels in the spirit realm. This creates the space for the otherwise disembodied spirit who is called in to help the humans in attendance.

There are areas of the world where full possession is culturally expected of shamans. For example, possession trances are expected throughout Indonesia, in China, Haiti, Udamba, and in South America from the Candomblé practitioners. Shamanic rituals often include a step in which proof of possession is displayed, such as piercing the skin or holding hot coals.

The relationship between the individual and the entering spirit defines the character of the trance stage. The first, transitional stage is characterized by dizziness/lightheadedness, precarious equilibrium, somatic (body) alterations, and cognitive disorganization. The spirit and the normal consciousness of the individual are connected, but they do not share the individual's body.

In the second stage, the spirit has entered the body and its discrete identity emerges. This stage is characterized by the change from the individual's identity to that of the entering spirit, co-identities, unusual behavior (expressions of the possessing spirit), unusual experience, and dissociation by the individual.

The third stage of total possession is transcendent and is available only to those who have mastery over the possession trance. This stage is characterized by the breakdown of the self-body awareness, alternate modalities of experiencing, total involvement, consciousness expansion, and increased energy. The process of passing through increasingly deep states of possession may last from just minutes to half an hour.

Both possession and embodiment are considered “the seizure of divinity.” However, the former is an illness and the latter a means to cure it. Embodiment is the intentional, controlled possession of an individual who is trained to access spirit through trance and interpret that connection for the good of the community. Possession is also considered the direct touch of god, but is given no greater meaning for the individual or the community.

In general, people have a deeply rooted, human need to experience the presence of the “Divine.” It is believed that the “Divine” has manifested when the shaman’s ego detaches itself from the body and the merging spirit is allowed full possession. Through possession the shaman serves as a vehicle or mouthpiece for the gods and allows the patient to witness a manifestation of the “Divine.” See also mediumship.


Postures

There are four postures used universally across cultures to enter various trance states. They are standing, sitting, walking, and lying supine.

Standing for long periods of time with focused intention is used to cultivate the inner stillness necessary to enter into full power and connect with one’s own spirit. Sitting postures are used to meditate when seeking wisdom in the face of paradox, perspective, guidance, or inner direction.

Walking (or moving) with intention induces a paradoxical state of inner focus and complete surrender which encourages creative solutions, intuitive insights, and communion with the unknown. Lying supine is the most healing posture the body can assume. The lying posture provides access to journeying and dreaming altered states.

In addition to the four universal postures, Felicitas Goodman, professor of linguistics and anthropology, has used thirty-one different body postures taken from mythology, experiential research, and archaeological data to induce specific trance states. In Goodman’s research, participants are instructed to adopt a particular posture while a drum or rattle is played to induce trance states.

Goodman’s results show some constancy over many years. However, her work has not proved replaceable by other researchers. It is not clear that these postures were used by shamans working with particular animal spirits in trance states induced through more common means. It is also unclear whether or not these postures that are found represented throughout human history were practiced for the same purpose over time. See also altered states of consciousness and journey.


Poswimkya Society

One of two curing societies among the Hopi, the other being the Yayatü. The Poswimkya was the only Hopi society performing cures by sucking and using Datura medicinally and to induce trance. Though the Poswimkya fetishes are still kept at Walpi, the sucking shamans of this society were inactive by the 1890s. See also Yayatü Society.


Powa

One of two types of supernatural power recognized by the Hopi. They differentiate between the power of tuuhisa, wielded by the tuuhikya (shaman), and the power of powa, wielded by the priests of Hopi ceremonial societies. Powa is neutral; it can be directed to benevolent or malevolent ends.

The healing and purifying aspects of powa are controlled by the priests and exercised in the annual ceremonies of these Hopi societies. Powa is the root of various Hopi words like powata, to cure or make perfect; powaka, sorcerer or to
use *powa* for *sorcery*; *powalawu*, sacred *ritual*; and *powatawi*, sacred *song*. See also *ceremony* and *song*.


**Powaka**

A Hopi witch or sorcerer. The *powak taka* is a witch man and the *powak wuqti* is a witch woman. The *powaka* create *illness* by shooting *tukyaini* (*energy intrusion*) into the bodies of their victims, which the *shaman* must remove in a sucking *healing* ritual. See also *ritual*; *sorcery*; *sucking shaman*.


**Powamû**

An *exorcism* healing *ceremony* performed by the Hopi *Powamûwimky* (*Powamû* society). Members of this society also perform *purification* rituals, called *powatañwû* or *nayochiwa*. See also *healing* and *ritual*.


**Power**

Shamanic power is defined by the shaman's ability to direct supernatural forces to influence the outcome of natural happenings. The shaman's ability is based on *knowledge* that is in part understanding how the world functions and in part having the ability to act on those functions. The *shaman* accesses and directs power through his or her knowledge of the supernatural or invisible reality and its relationship to the physical world. Intellectual knowledge is not enough to access power. Shamanic knowledge involves the ability to act and is gained through *training*, skill, and experience. Knowledge is mastered only when the shaman is capable of putting the information into action in a way that manifests the intended result.

Power is hard to acquire. Power is always available; however, it usually comes only to individuals who seek it through personal action and sacrifice. To acquire power one must approach the *spirits* with *humility*. Power demands the cultivation of the virtues of humility, honesty, sincerity, endurance, kindness, sensitivity, awareness, and courage of heart.

Power is easily lost. The “spirits,” the special, non-ordinary *energy* through which the shaman receives power, can easily take it away. Shamans can suddenly lose their powers completely as a result of breaking a *taboo* or transgressing *spirit* in some way such that it withdraws permanently and terminates the relationship.

Power can take its toll. Proximity to power requires precautions. Even the accidental misuse of power can cause sickness or death. Since the shaman is filled with power, he or she is often not harmed while immediate family members are the ones stricken. For this reason, shamans often send their offspring to relatives to be raised or they begin their *healing* work after their children are grown. The *helping spirits* can cause *illness*, madness, and death when shamans refuse to do as their helping spirits require.

North American shamans distinguish between “medicine powers” and spirit powers while using them both. *Aboriginal* North Americans understand that everything is alive and contains an animating power that connects everything in the universe. For example, the *Lakota* call this power *wakan* and the *Iroquois* call it *orneda*. Medicine power is the aspect of anything associated with this animating and connecting power that can be used or directed by the shaman.
In South America different cultures conceive of the shaman’s power differently. For example, the Culina shaman’s power, his *dori*, is formless in his body and manifests as small stones outside of his body. The Shipibo-Conibo shaman’s power is *shinan*, which is created by accumulating and storing *nihue*, the colored energies seen in trance and the individual power of plants and animals. The Shipibo-Conibo believe that the world contains a finite amount of *nihue* and *shinan*. The shaman’s role is to store and redistribute the *nihue* via his *shinan*.

Power, or *dau*, is cultivated by Siona shamans during several months of isolated training with plant hallucinogens in the jungle with a master shaman. When an apprentice has reached a certain level of knowledge and power he is able to travel to the highest power in the universe where he is shown a book with all the medicines in it.

Power, though it is established and accumulated in different ways, is the ability of the shaman to conceive of and direct supernatural forces. This knowledge of power is the key concept linking shamanism cross-culturally.

**Acquisition of Power**

Helping spirits are the primary source of power for shamans, though not in every culture. The spirits are not random. The shaman develops a working relationship with one or more helping spirits with whom the shaman may work for his or her entire lifetime. Helping spirits tend to take the forms of animals, mythical animals, plants, *dead shamans, ancestors*, cultural heroes, and gods and goddesses. Helping spirits often change form, transforming from human to animal and into beings combining aspects of the two.

Helping spirits are experienced as autonomous spirit entities who supply knowledge and power to the shaman beyond the shaman’s ordinary wisdom and strength. Helping spirits tend to take forms that are meaningful to the shaman; however, they are not mental constructs or archetypes. When a shaman communicates with an animal or plant helping spirit, he or she is communicating with the conscious aspect of the power of that animal or plant species, what would be called *soul* in a human.

Shamans do not pick their helping spirits. The spirits pick the shaman. The following are ways the shaman connects with helping spirits, though the shaman is never in control of what helping spirits, if any, show up. The primary means of connecting with helping spirits is to enter an *altered state of consciousness*, or trance. Shamans use both journeying trances, wherein the shaman’s soul enters the realm of the helping spirits, and *embodiment* trances, wherein the helping spirit enters the shaman’s body in the physical realm. The shaman connects with helping spirits through altered states induced in many ways, primarily by drumming, dancing, and ingesting plant hallucinogens. Shamans also use vision questing, which takes many different forms in different cultures, to connect with helping spirits.

Some shamans gain their powers through relationships with special, non-ordinary energies that are not helping spirits. These shamans do enter altered states to perform their shamanic work; however, they do not experience autonomous spirit helpers. For example, the San of Africa cultivate the ability to call up a power named *num* from the earth. When *num* is sufficiently heated it travels up the healer’s spine and into the hands rendering the healer able to heal with this power through touch.

The indigenous peoples of northern coastal and north-central California and Nevada share the concept of “pains.” Pains are a non-ordinary energy that is both the *disease*-causing energy and the energy the shaman collects to gather power. Once a pain is acquired, the shaman must learn to control the pain to be able to use it in healing.
Ingesting plant hallucinogens is in and of itself a means of gathering power, not just connecting with helping spirits. For example, in South America where the use of ayahuasca is prevalent, the ayahuasca is itself also a doctor. The plant hallucinogen has power, will, and knowledge of its own to offer the shaman in addition to the extraordinary powers granted by inducing an altered state.

Shamans travel to places of power to gain power from the spirits of the place. Power manifests in special places, some are natural sacred sites and some are shrines, charged with the prayers and offerings of thousands of people. Often spectacular, out-of-the-ordinary features of nature are regarded as sacred, as are natural springs and caves. These natural places of power are often the sites chosen for vision quests.

In some cultures shamanic powers can be inherited. In other cultures students can purchase teachings from a master shaman. However, within these traditions the shamanic powers that are inherited or purchased are not considered as strong as the powers received spontaneously and directly from spirit.

Training and the Mastery of Power
Although spirits may do the actual healing work, shamanic power depends on the shaman’s ability to control his or her trance states. The power of the spirits is limitless, but there are limits to an individual shaman’s ability to manifest that power. The shaman’s concentrated effort and accuracy in interpretation plays a significant role in shaping the results of a healing ritual.

Shamanic power is an energy form of pure consciousness that is directed in the altered state. Without training and experience this energy can easily have unintended results. The way this pure energy is used and how it manifests in space and time to help or to heal is determined by the combined wills of the shaman and the helping spirit.

Power operates according to specific sacred rules that must be followed by the shaman if he or she is to direct that power. Those rules can only be understood in a state of being during which the shaman directly experiences a connection to the sacredness in all existence. Once understood, it takes great discipline to exercise the rules well.

In most cultures the spirits teach the shaman how to achieve the necessary state of connectedness and to direct power. In other cultures the training also involves a master shaman passing on a magical substance that embodies knowledge gained through visions and personal sacrifice to the apprentice.

Storing Power
Power resides in power objects, songs, dances, specific actions, and magical substances. The spirits teach shamans the songs and dances that call in specific powers or that carry the healing power for specific illnesses. When performing these dances or songs the shaman accesses the related powers.

Power can manifest in objects that occur naturally or reside in objects created to contain power, like masks or talismans. These sacred objects can become endowed with power naturally, for example, the tunkan is a stone with very special powers that is created wherever lightning strikes the ground, or the power is called in through ritual.

In many cultures power is passed on from shaman to shaman through magical substances or objects. In the Peruvian Amazon, for example, the shaman stores yachay, a thick white phlegm, in his upper stomach. Yachay contains helping spirits and tsentsak, magical darts used in healing or harming. Yachay is a means of storing power related to knowledge. That power is passed from shaman to apprentice by drinking the shaman’s yachay.

Handling Power
Power must be approached with caution to protect oneself and to protect the power from being diminished by pollution or contamination. In cultures where people work with power objects,
there are protocols for handling power, power objects, for singing **power songs**, and approaching places of power. For example, acts of personal **purification**, from simple meditation to bathing, fasting, vomiting, and sweating, to more complex rituals of **cleansing** are completed before approaching or handling anything of (or containing) sacred power.

There is also protocol for handling shamans. The shaman gathers power through ritual. Those ritual experiences endow the shaman with many powers and perspectives that keep the shaman protected and powerful. Charged with power in this way, the shaman may be dangerous to others who are too weak or are not protected by similar energies. In some cultures there are taboos around touching the shaman, the shaman’s possessions, and the common objects the shaman uses, like dishes.

**Restoring Power**

Shamans must replenish their own power and power objects regularly. They do so through cleansing, through a literal connection to nature, like submerging in a sacred spring or taking retreat on a sacred mountain, and through ritual. On a daily basis shamans restore power by taking care to always complete the cycle of energy they are using by honoring the energies available to them, giving thanks, and making offerings of gratitude to the energies they draw on. Shamans also use physical disciplines, diet, fasting, and enemas to restore their power. See also **drum; journey; medicine; power places; power, abuse of; power, variation in amount of**.


**Power, Abuse of**

The shaman’s relationship with **power** is more than just the accumulation of vast quantities of power. The quality of what the **shaman** does with the power determines the shaman’s standing in the community. Power is, of itself, neither good nor bad. All power is available for misuse or abuse. Therefore, the right use of power is always a concern in any shamanic act.

Shamanic techniques are morally neutral. The intention behind the use of a technique determines its benevolence or malevolence. Most **shamanic** cultures draw a distinction between shamanic acts and acts of **sorcery**. However, it is left to the individual shaman to determine how he or she will act in each situation.

In some cultures the distinction between shamans and sorcerers is unclear largely because of the way **illness** is defined. In these cultures the source of all illness and accidents is believed to be an act of aggression by a shaman in a neighboring community. **Healing** almost always involves **extraction of** the source of the illness and sending it back to the neighboring people and their shaman. Therefore, a refusal to “attack” the neighboring shaman is a refusal to heal one’s own people.

Even regular people who are not shamans can abuse their power through actions that show disregard or disrespect of the preciousness and interconnectedness of life. **Taboos** regulating actions, like incest or murder, as well as prescribed actions, like returning every
seal bladder after a kill so that another seal can regenerate, guide individuals in the areas where their actions in the physical realm have profound negative effects in the spirit realm or on the community as a whole. See also sorcery.


Power, Variation in Amount of
In every shamanic culture, distinctions are made between shamans relative to the amount of power. In most cultures the distinction is based on the type of spirits the shaman works with and in what type of trance. In some, but by no means all cultures, this distinctions also falls along gender lines. For example, Sora shamans of the lesser traditions are male and work mostly in a divination trance state. Sora shamans of the greater traditions are female and work mostly with spirits in deep embodiment trances, conducting funerals and healings.

In other cultures distinctions are drawn at the level of initiation the shaman has successfully completed. As a result shamans may specialize in the areas of shamanic work in which they are best supported by their spirit help. In areas of Lapland, Africa, and North America, for example, shamans fall generally into three groups. There are those who specialize in divination. The next level includes those who cure through prayers, blessings, and power retrieval. The most powerful group includes shamans who work with soul loss and the spirits of the dead.

In every culture shamans traditionally work with an assortment of other specialists. Some examples of these healers are, herbalists, bone-setters, midwives, wise people, dream interpreters, and people who foretell the future. Today this list would also involve naturopaths, chiropractors, medical doctors, etc.

There are variations in shamanic power even among shamans who all work in deep altered states of consciousness with the spirits of the dead. For example the Inuit explain that the more pain and suffering a shaman takes upon himself during training, the greater his powers will be in his practice. All shamans adjust the length and depth of their journeys according to their power. If they do not have the power to succeed in the healing, a shaman of greater power is called on to complete the healing. In some cultures the shamans work in groups to effect a cure with their accumulated powers and skills. A shaman's powers depend on strength, ability, and capacity to understand the true nature of the Kosmos as shown by spirit.

Powers once gained can diminish or be withdrawn if dishonored or treated with disrespect. There is a direct correlation between the strength in the shaman's personal belief in spirits and the manifestation of medicine powers. When a shaman's belief in the spirits is undermined, for example by conversion to any of the high religions, the
shaman’s ability to display his or her medicine powers is weakened. Mature shamans may eventually develop abilities that initially they could only perform while in an altered state, such as the ability to see into the spirit world while in their ordinary state of consciousness. Nonetheless, the boundaries and limitations of any shaman’s powers are defined by his or her relationships with helping spirits.

The work of any one particular shaman will change over time. The shaman’s life is a path of mastery. The shaman’s skills and power will grow in direct relation to the evolution of his or her spiritual awareness and trance experience over time. Because of the importance of initiation and ego transformation in the shaman’s work, variations among shamans of one ethnic group will often be greater than the variations between shamans of different ethnic groups. See also black and white shamans and Buryat (Buriat).


Power Animals

Power animals are helping spirits in animal form who guard and protect the shaman in the physical world and in the spirit world. Though it is not possible to define any helping spirit in an absolute sense, a power animal is best understood as the spirit of a species of animal, e.g., bear, giraffe, or anaconda. Power animal spirits are one source of the type of power the shaman draws on from helping spirits to use in healing.

Power animals serve as conduits for wisdom, guidance, and information from the spirit world. When the shaman uses an embodiment trance for healing or conducting ritual, it is often the power animal who works through the shaman. In many cultures the shaman develops a deep relationship with one particular animal who then summons other helping spirits or allies as they are needed to perform specific aspects of the shaman’s work.

The shaman knows that there could be no power for healing without the spirits of animals, plants, and Nature. Shamans believe that the animals are manifestations of a natural power that is stronger and wiser than human beings. However, shamans do not lift animal spirits up to the status of deities, nor do they lower them to the status of a mere psychological metaphor. The shaman is empowered by his or her relationship with the power animals. Their relationship is a partnership.

The partnership with the power animals is not easily forged. The shaman must prove himself worthy of the power the animal spirit offers and then learn from the animal spirit how to use that power. In many cultures, strict taboos must also be observed by the shaman to maintain the relationship with the power animals, e.g., not eating the flesh of the animals that help them. In all cultures, offering gratitude and respect for the power animal’s help in human matters is fundamental to maintaining the working relationship.

Ancient cave paintings reflect the use of ritual by humans to evoke the mysterious sacred powers of different animals. Gaining access to the special qualities of the animal spirits is one facet of the extraordinary relationship between the shaman and the power animals. The power animals are also teachers. They may teach the shaman power songs and/or give the shaman the words to invoke power (to call power in) or to cast power (to send power out). Still other shamans learn the language of the animals and at times speak that language while in trance. In some Australian tribes...
acquiring the power to speak to birds and animals is one mark of shamanic abilities.

**Totem spirits**, who are inherited through a family line, and **tutelary spirits** are specific types of power animals. Power animals are also referred to as guardian spirits, allies, and spirit helpers. The fact that an individual has a relationship with a power animal does not make them a shaman. Most children have guardian spirits and, in many cultures, all adults must connect with a helping spirit as an aspect of their initiation into adulthood.


**Power Displays**

Power displays is a general term for any display of supernatural feats by a shaman using one or more medicine powers. Power displays are generally part of a competition and therefore usually outside of the context of a healing ritual. A shaman displays what he can do with the aid of his spirit help to make those skills a matter of public record. These feats have been well documented around the world for many centuries by non-indigenous observers. Because the intensity of these displays has declined, scholars believe that the supernatural abilities of shamans were far greater in former times.

Power displays are most often public demonstrations or competitions among shamans. Examples of common power displays include, but are not limited to, displays of mastery of fire, immersion in boiling liquids, eating hot coals, death in the fire and rebirth, or flying across the sky as a burning fireball, changing from form to form in shapeshifting contests, or causing the head of one's power animal to protrude from the mouth, shooting, killing, or maiming oneself or another and then regenerating the maimed part or resurrecting the dead, swallowing arrows, knives, slats, or sticks without harm, chewing completely and swallowing objects (stones, bones, etc.) or body parts (eyes, hands, etc.) and then reproducing them whole and functional, or causing animal skins or other inanimate objects to walk, fly, or dance about.

A shaman's success is based on his or her ability to handle the powers given by spirit. Across North America, for example, shamans of many different cultures gathered together to publicly display and often to compete with supernatural powers. In some geographical regions, these performances of power would serve to rank the shamans within their particular areas. These competitions were also an opportunity for a shaman who felt his powers were not being recognized to display them for the community.

These public competitions between shamans brought forth some of the most spectacular human feats ever recorded. These amazing displays of power, were for the most part just displays. In a sense they were advertising and did not serve a role in the healing, divination, or medicine work of the shaman. The competitions were primarily among male shamans and, though there are accounts of women competing equally with men, they are much less frequent. Female shamans do not appear to have needed to demonstrate their spirit powers in the same way.

On occasion these displays of power were associated with actual healing rituals. Usually performed at the beginning of the ritual, the power display served to gain the confidence of the patient and to clear doubt from the minds of those in the audience. For example, midewiwin initiations were...
opportunities for older shamans to display their skills, ensuring humility in the minds of the initiates. Similarly, the Shaking Tent Ceremony involves many displays of power, for example the shaking of the tent itself and the way in which the shaman is magically freed from the chords with which he is bound in the beginning of the ceremony. See also decline in power; midewiwin.


Power Objects

A power object is a physical object in which power resides. The object itself can be naturally occurring or created by hand. The power within the object can be naturally occurring or invited in by the shaman through an embodiment or empowerment ritual.

Power is found manifest in many natural things such as stones, meteorites, plants, shells, and animal parts like claws, feathers, hide, bones, teeth, or fur. The Lakota tunkan is an example of a naturally occurring object with naturally occurring power. The tunkan is a stone that is found where lightning strikes the ground. The tunkan is endowed with its unique powers by the lightning when it strikes.

Power is made manifest through ritual in other objects. The sacred pipe, the most familiar North American power object, is created by hand from sacred stone. Power is embodied in the pipe through rituals. That power is then activated when the stem is connected to the bowl. The ritual masks of Bali and the False Face masks of the Iroquois are also examples of power objects created by hand, as are drums, rattles, and parts of the shaman’s costume.

Some power objects occur naturally and are enhanced through ritual. For example, huacas are stones gathered by shamans in South America. The shaman is often directed in dreams to the exact stone and exactly where to find it, though that may be many days walk up a mountainside. Huacas are selected because of their own inherent power. Then, they are charged through ritual.

Power objects do not represent power. They are the power. To work with the object is to access the power contained within it. A power object is not a thing; it is alive. The living spirit in the object teaches the shaman what he or she needs to know to work with and care for the object. This is particularly important for new objects or for objects around which there are no traditions for care and handling.

Power objects can be created for single use or for all time. Many power objects are created for a specific purpose or ritual and then destroyed in the ritual process or after the ritual is complete. Other objects, like medicine bundles or False Face masks, are handed down for generations. Whether an object is empowered temporarily for the duration of the ritual or ceremony or permanently is determined by the purpose(s) for which the power object will be used.

The power in the object can be directed toward benevolent or malevolent ends. Power objects can be used to enhance any energy and then to direct that energy. They are used for healing, magic, or as a means to carry a particular energy into a ritual or ceremony.

There are protocols and taboos involved in working with power objects. The objects are living, and therefore they must be “fed” offerings, prayers, and gratitude, and cared for. When the life of a power object is complete, the power embodied in the object must be released. For example, the ancient Mesoamericans created holes in power objects and the tops of the heads of stone statues to release the power embodied there, effectively “closing” the object.

The use of power objects is not idolatry. In idolatry, the original revelation is codified and the connection to the
spirit power in the object is not necessarily still alive. The sacred relationship with that power gets lost in concretization of object as a symbol and codification of the related rituals. The shaman's work with power objects is a vital, spontaneous relationship. To disrespect the living power within the object through idolatry would result in the power leaving completely or staying and causing problems, injury, and accidents.

There are many stories of the mistreatment or dishonoring of a power object causing problems that range from mischief to death. For example, Kukapihe (the Death Stone), a sacred stone thought to be originally from Egypt, was brought with a companion stone to the island of Hawaii in the thirteenth century by Pa'ao, a kahuna priest. The palm-sized, white, oval, glazed stone is believed to embody the spiritual forces of the god Ku. Its female companion stone was held by kahuna priests on the island of Kauai.

In time Kukapihe was passed to Kamehameha the Great who passed it to his son, Kumu'o, who passed the stone to his son, Kaniho, a kahuna (shaman) and teacher of contemporary shaman Daddy Bray. Kaniho promised the stone to Bray, but on Kaniho's death it was not relinquished by his grieving widow. In the three months that followed the stone began to intensify the fearful energies of the widow's family. After the third death in her family, she gave Kukapihe to a nephew to deliver to Bray and the dying stopped.

Power objects must be maintained just as the physical body of the shaman must be maintained. When properly maintained, power objects can be used to enhance other energies, like emotions, mental concentration, or intention. In the act of enhancement the power object may take on the energies involved. If those energies are malevolent, fearful, or disharmonious, the object will need to be cleansed. On the other hand, energies that are benevolent or life affirming can charge the object, adding to the power of the object. See also amulet; charm; False Face Society; fetish; Mesoamerica; talisman.


Power Places

Power manifests in special places, some are natural sacred sites and others are man-made shrines, charged with the prayers and offerings of thousands of people. Often the spectacular, out-of-the-ordinary features of Nature are regarded as sacred, as are natural springs and caves. These natural places of power are often the sites chosen for vision quests.

Shamans travel to places of power to recharge, cleanse, and replenish their energy and power. In some places the power manifests as spirit beings who "live" in that place. In other places the power is of the place itself, in a sense the place has its own beingness. These places are believed to be the places where the gods have stopped, touching the earth and leaving their essence.

Power places must be approached with a certain amount of caution. There are often protocols, such as cleansing before entering, and taboos regarding behaviors that are inappropriate relative to the powers of the place. For example, Native Americans of many different tribes traveled to what is now the Zion canyonlands for ritual. However, they always left at night because sleeping overnight in the canyon was taboo. Power places are best avoided by the unprepared.

Power Retrieval

In the broadest sense, power retrievals and extractions, which involve returning or removing energy from the patient respectively, are the two kinds of shamanic healing. However, power retrieval generally refers to the shaman's efforts to reunite the patient with spirit energies to guard his or her health and to help the individual to live out his or her soul’s unique purpose in this lifetime.

The powers, or energies, retrieved are usually helping spirits, like power animals or ancestor spirits. Power retrievals can also involve retrieving the power of an internal organ, an acupuncture meridian, an archetype, a chakra, or a dissociated part of the patient’s personality.

There are three general types of powers, or energies, that the shaman retrieves from non-ordinary reality for his or her patient. The simplest energy is information, for example, a diagnosis of the presenting problem, answers to the client’s questions, remedies, or healing rituals. Retrieving this energy is called a divination. The most complex energy is part of the patient’s vital essence, like a lost soul or soul part. The return of this energy is a soul retrieval. The return of any powers, or energies, that are not lost souls, soul parts, or information is a power retrieval.

The process of a power retrieval is very much like that of a soul retrieval:
1. The shaman connects with a helping spirit and enters his or her working trance state, thus entering non-ordinary reality.
2. The shaman diagnoses the problem and discovers where the necessary power of the patient can be found (divination).
3. The shaman asks the helping spirits to take pity on the patient, finds the necessary power, and returns.
4. The shaman returns the power to the patient’s body, usually by blowing it into the patient’s heart and the top of the head.
5. The shaman thanks the helping spirits for their assistance, exits the trance state, reenters ordinary reality, and closes the ritual space.

The kind of helping spirit that responds to the shaman’s plea varies by person, culture, and geography. Some examples are animal spirits, nature spirits, ancestor spirits, and elementals. The helping spirit offers itself of its own volition.

There are many traditional and contemporary causes of power loss. Possible symptoms of power loss are depression, weakness, lack of mental alertness or self-confidence, and chronic illness or mishap. Power loss leaves the individual vulnerable to contagious disease and harmful, energetic intrusions.

Power loss also occurs when an individual’s behavior has created disharmony with the spirit world. To heal, the individual must take action in ordinary reality to return to harmony with the spirit world and reconnect with spirit. The shaman divines the necessary ritual actions the individual must take.

Shamans replenish their own power (energy) through their connection to Nature, for example submerging in sacred springs or taking retreat on a sacred mountain. They complete the cycle of energy-sharing by honoring the energies available to them, giving thanks and making offerings of gratitude to the energies they draw on. Shamans maintain their power (energy) through their daily physical discipline and diet, including what they eat, fasting, and enemas.


**Power Song**

A power song is a *song* taught to the *shaman* by a *spirit* for the purpose of calling on that spirit to gain access to its *power*. By *singing* the song the shaman calls the spirit into his or her body or into the *ritual* space. The power song taught to an individual by his or her own spirit is used to instantaneously gather personal power. The singing of a power song should always be done with correct attention and focus and never assumed lightly.

Being granted the power of song by spirit is an honor that must be earned. For example, North American shamans take *vision quests*, in the hope, but not the guarantee, that spirit will honor them with a *sacred* song. Power songs belong to the individual to whom they were given, and it is an abuse of power to *sing* another person’s song. See also *power, abuse of*.


**Prayer**

Prayer is a sincere and humble act to beseech, petition, confess, praise, or give gratitude to *spirit* through thought, word, *song*, *dance*, or *sacred* actions or *postures*. Genuine prayer requires enormous effort and will on the part of the individual praying.

The power of prayer is enhanced by cultivating within one’s being and expressing through one’s actions the virtues of *humility*, honesty, sincerity, courage to be loving, endurance, kindness, sensitivity, and awareness. These virtues are so essential to the efficacy of prayer that the elders of traditional indigenous *cultures* begin to teach these virtues in early childhood. Praying is a fundamental social activity in these cultures.

Genuine prayer also requires the ability to focus attention inward, to center, and to calm the normal activity of the mind. This capacity to go within is essential both to the ability to pray and to find the answers to one’s prayers and questions.

The efficacy of prayer can be enhanced by the preparation and *sacrifice* of appropriate *offerings*. Inappropriate, insincere, or excessive offerings are not received by spirit and thus do not enhance the power of prayer. Genuine prayers require a large amount of time to practice and prepare. Time is invested in creating offerings, centering the self, and activities to cleanse, such as fasting or participation in a *sweat lodge purification*. It is not unusual for an individual within an indigenous culture to spend several hours a day engaged in prayer or preparation to pray.

Through this focus and preparation the prayer becomes strong. It takes form as a real thing in the consciousness. If the prayer becomes strong enough, it is conscious, taking on a life of its own in the world. It is believed that the prayers of the shaman are all sufficiently strong to become conscious things in the world.


**Priest**

A keeper of *ceremony* whose position is secured through *knowledge*, the priest is distinguished from the *shaman*, who is a creator of *ritual* and whose position is secured through the ability to enter *trance* states and bring the *powers* of the *spirit* world to the aid of people.
While it is accurate to refer to shamans as priests and vice versa in a few cultures, like that of the Q’ero of Peru, these terms are more commonly used in ways that confuse the deep distinction between these two roles. Not all shamans function as priests, though some do. Very few priests have the training or skill to function as shamans. In many cultures the roles, training, and initiation are quite distinct. They work with different powers and are called by different names in the languages of their cultures.

Within the context of shamanism, the use of the term “priest” often leads to confusion, as indigenous priests are as different from those of Christianity as they are from shamans in their own culture. Although the term “priest” is frequently used in the literature, it has inherent weaknesses when applied to shamanism.

Priests are liturgical officiants whose authority does not rest on personal or direct experience with the deity or supernatural. They preside at ceremonies and over congregations using a fixed system of beliefs, writings, and codified rituals. They support and preach a religious belief system without the power to adapt or change that system.

Shamans, though often characterized as priests, are distinguished from priests in that the shaman’s authority rests on his or her personal experiences with the deity and the supernatural. Empowered by this direct relationship with the supernatural, the shaman is able to conduct both rituals and ceremonies and to adapt the spiritual discipline over time as directed by spirit.

Gender transformation is one of many transformations common in the helping spirits primary to shamanism. The primal bisexual divinity is often the initiator from whom the shaman and the transformed shaman receive his or her powers. Examples of primal bisexual divinities from different cultures follow:

The Inuit goddess, White Whale Woman, transformed herself into a woman-man to marry a woman of the Fly Agaric clan. (Fly Agaric is the amanita muscaria mushroom, a sacred plant hallucinogen used by shamans in the northern regions.) The Koryak of Siberia tell many stories of transformation involving Fly Agaric mushrooms and Raven. Big Raven, the Creator, his wife Miti, their son Eme’emqut, and his wives, appear in many stories involving gender transformations.

Hidatsa shamans, both females and gender-variant males, enter trance and embody a triune goddess who manifests as a magpie. This triune goddess is in part Village Old Woman (creator of women), in part Holy Woman of the Four Directions, and in part Holy Woman Above.

The balian and basir (shamans) of the Ngaju Dayk of Borneo embody Mahatala-Jata, an androgynous deity. Mahatala is the male aspect, a hornbill who lives on a mountaintop and rules the Upperworld. Jata is the female aspect, a watersnake who lives in the sea and rules the Lowerworld. The two aspects are joined by a jeweled bridge, the rainbow, to create the total godhead. The shamans of the Iban Dyak work with the spirit of Menjaya Raja Manang, the world’s first healer. Menjaya was a male who became a female, or androgynous being, to be able to heal his brother’s wife. See also mushrooms.


Primal Bisexual Divinity

A primal bisexual divinity is a deity who changes gender, is of both genders simultaneously, or is without gender. The name was used by author Joseph Campbell to describe those deities who are an important reoccurring theme in the myths of indigenous peoples.
Primordial Sea
Primordial sea refers to the theme that all life arose out of a fundamental substance of creation that existed before the beginning of the Universe. This theme is woven through the creation myths of almost every culture. The exact nature of this fundamental substance is unknown. Thus all of life arose from the Great Mystery.

Psilocybe Mushrooms
Several species of mushrooms containing the psychoactive constituents psilocybine and psilocine, which are unique to these mushrooms and not found in other plants. These mushrooms are found throughout the Americas and Europe.

Psilocybe mushrooms have been employed as sacred plant entheogens since the time of the ancient Aztecs in Mexico and Guatemala. Few psychoactive plants are more revered. They continue to be used by shamans in these regions to enter trance and gain guidance from spirit during healing rituals.

The Aztec name, Teonanácatl, means “divine, wondrous, or awesome mushroom.” As a term of endearment and reverence these mushrooms are also known as Little Flowers of the Gods. See also ritual.

Psyche
The psyche is a construct of Western thought that is defined simultaneously as the soul, the self, or the personality. The psyche is believed to be made up of the id, the ego, and the superego, including both the conscious and unconscious components.

The psyche is the vital principle of corporeal matter that is a distinct mental or spiritual entity coextensive with, but independent of, the body. Shamanic cultures generally experience mental and spiritual entities coexisting with, but independent of, the body. These aspects are usually seen as separate parts of the multiple human soul.

The shamanic explanation of the soul is culture specific and, where the information is available, it is found within the individual entries.

Psychomythology
Psychomythology is the expression of an individual’s life dream or personal myth through his or her inherent wisdom and love nature. Psychomythology is the innate story of the psyche, an aspect of the self that is composed of three parts: logos, inherent wisdom; eros, love nature; and mythos, life dream or myth.


Psychonavigation
A meditative technique for journeying in a light trance that does not use sonic driving or psychotropic plants. It is necessary to have the ability to relax the mind and the body and to have faith that the process will work.

J. Perkins explains that to psychonavigate means to travel through the psyche to a place where you need to be. This place can be the non-ordinary reality version of a physical place: where one finds game, fresh water, or a site for a home. Or it can be a non-physical place: where one finds answers, receives healing, or finds creative inspiration. See also journey.


Psychopathology and Shamans
Since first contact, people of European descent have judged shamans to be hysteric, schizophrenics, mentally deranged, psychotic, idiots, fantasy-prone, charlatans, or epileptics because of the shaman’s use of altered states of consciousness. There is ample evidence
today that shamans are not as a group mentally ill; however the shaman’s mental health is not the issue. The questions is whether or not the trance states used by the shaman in ritual are in themselves pathological.

In recent research, careful attention has been paid to the specific qualities of **shamanic altered states of consciousness** as compared to those of pathological altered states. Through this research it is clear that shamanic altered state experiences differ significantly from the experiences defined in traditional categories of mental illness.

**Shamanic Possession vs. Hysteria**

Shamans in a state of spirit **possession**, or **embodiment** trance, often exhibit shaking seizures, distorted physiognomy, speaking in an unknown **language**, or erratic behavior. These qualities are close to the classic description of symptoms of hysteria. However, unlike hysteria, the shaman can intentionally induce and terminate the embodiment trance. The shaman exhibits mastery, or control, of the altered state and is able to use the altered state purposefully.

Shamanic possession states are not false or acted out. They are authentic, unique experiences with qualities that range from quite lucid, leaving the shaman with consciousness during the trance state and memory afterward, to complete amnesia, leaving the shaman without awareness or memory of what occurs during the trance.

**Shamanic Journey vs. Schizophrenia**

The shamanic **journey**, or **soul flight**, involves a profound sensory experience of non-ordinary reality, usually with a strong visual component and communication with non-ordinary reality beings, or **spirits**. These qualities appear to be delusions or hallucinations which are associated with schizophrenia and other more serious disorders.

However, unlike a schizophrenic, the shaman controls the journey, inducing and terminating it at will, all the while aware that he or she is in non-ordinary reality and using the altered state purposefully. Unlike delusions, the journey experience is clearly distinguished from **ordinary reality** events.

John Walsh, doctor of psychiatry, philosophy, and anthropology, has shown through detailed phenomenological mapping of a range of altered states that schizophrenic episodes and the shamanic journey differ significantly in control, concentration, self-sense, quality of the experience, content, and quality of distortion.

Shamans exhibit controlled entry into and exit from trance and partial control over the content of their experience, while schizophrenics experience a dramatic reduction of control in all aspects of their episode. The shaman’s concentration increases and flows from event to event in the journey, while the schizophrenic’s concentration significantly decreases.

In the journey the shaman experiences his or her **soul** focused and empowered by a connection to all things, while the schizophrenic experiences a disorganization and disintegration of self accompanied by an unpleasant inability to distinguish self from others. The shaman’s feelings during the journey experience range from occasionally frightening to often ecstatic, while the schizophrenic’s feelings during an episode are rarely positive and often unpleasant, distorted, and inappropriate.

The content of the shaman’s journey is organized in a way that benefits others, sometimes profoundly. Though the shaman is not always able to communicate while in trance, the trance is controlled and the communication coherent upon return. The content of the schizophrenic’s experience is of no benefit to himself or others. It is highly disorganized, awareness of the environment is distorted, and communication is incoherent. In short, shamanic journeys enable the shaman to contribute to the **art**, intellect, physical well-being, and spiritual leadership of the community, while schizophrenic episodes leave

---

**Psychopathology and Shamans**

---
The individual significantly challenged in his ability to function socially.

A survey of the most current research shows that there is a clear distinction between the intentional altered states of the shaman and the pathological altered states entered unintentionally by the mentally ill. The shaman's mastery, or control, of trance is the important, distinguishing psychological criterion whether the shaman employs a possession or a journey trance state.

Initiatory Crisis
The initiatory illness of the novice may be considered a temporary pathological state. During this spiritual crisis the altered state experience is spontaneous, unintentional, and experienced as reality. The novice's experience is often terrifying, but also follows initiatory patterns like dismemberment, death, and rebirth or his or her soul being taken into the spirit world by the spirit teacher to learn to be a shaman.

It is the fact that the individual successfully resolves this temporary break with ordinary reality that makes them a shaman. If the illness were not successfully resolved, the individual would be considered spiritually ill in a traditional shamanic culture, not a shaman. It is through the resolution of this first, spontaneous crisis that the novice learns to control the trance state and masters the techniques for working in non-ordinary reality.

The psychological phenomena of the shaman's work in trance states is unique, but not pathological. This unique quality is not accurately addressed by any particular school of psychiatric or psychological thought. To understand it, we will need to raise the cultural blinders that color and confound our attempts to clearly understand shamanic traditions. If we can engage in research with a heightened awareness of our own cultural bias, perhaps the strength of a shaman's mental health and force of spirit will emerge from the confusion. See also soul loss.


Psychopomp
As a psychopomp, the shaman transports the souls of the dead home, assuring that soul's safe and complete journey through the death process. The shaman enters an altered state in which his or her soul leaves its body to accompany the souls of the dead to the home of the Ancestors or the Land of the Dead.

Each traditional culture defines the death process in its own way. The specifics of a shaman's psychopomp work, i.e., when or where he or she goes, etc., is influenced by that culture's beliefs about the soul, death, and the process of dying. However, psychopomp work always involves a journey or soul flight, which is the necessary tool for the shaman's soul to enter the spirit realms where he or she can serve as a guide.
In almost all traditions the soul lingers near its former home or by its body's gravesite. For a short time after death the soul will continue to be receptive to the physical world. During this period, many tribes have traditions to guide the soul home, to the Source-of-all-life, with prayers, chants, recitations, and preparations in the physical world, like making ritual offerings or disbursing or destroying the deceased's possessions so that nothing remains to hold the soul to the physical plane.

Malidoma Somé, an author and West African shaman, explains that for the Dagara a communal expression of grief has the power to send the deceased to the realm of the ancestors and to heal the hurt produced in the psyches of the living by the death of a loved one. The communal expression provides the opportunity for grief to reach the important cathartic peak that grief must logically lead to. In this case the shaman conducts the communal ritual which functions as the psychopomp by containing, generating, and directing that grief to serve as an energy that transports the dead home.

In most cultures it is believed that ancestor spirits will come to meet the newly deceased and guide that soul through the completion of the death process. When the ancestors do not come or the rituals or funerary traditions are not performed, or are performed incorrectly, the soul of the deceased may get lost and wander. If this happens, souls become unable or unwilling to complete their death process unaided. At this point the shaman must be called in to act as the psychopomp.

The need for a psychopomp may also arise in healing rituals with the living. If a patient is plagued or possessed by a misplaced spirit of the dead, the shaman may need to escort that spirit to the Land of the Dead after freeing it from its connection to the patient. This type of healing for the dead is often necessary to complete the healing for the living.

The following are two examples of psychopomp work by Yukagirs shaman of Siberia. In the first case the shaman enters a trance to contact the spirit of the dead to confirm that she wants help. The shaman then narrates her request for help and her pleas that she is afraid to go alone for all who are gathered, before embarking on the journey to guide that soul home.

In a second example, the soul needing help has been dead for forty days, long past the appropriate time for her return home. In this case the shaman must offer a sacrifice of brandy, then negotiate, and ultimately trick the necessary spirits of the dead so that they will receive the wandering soul and allow her entry into the Land of the Dead.

The rituals and funeral customs performed after death are based on the realization that upon death the consciousness, finding itself unexpectedly disembodied, is reluctant to give up its established place in the family. It needs time to accustom itself to the new situation. During this time the deceased's soul may try to attract the souls of relatives so that it does not feel alone. The soul does not instantly realize that it no longer belongs with the living and that it is time to return home. See also altered states of consciousness.


Psychotherapeutic Practices
Traditionally, one of the shaman's many roles was to guide the psychotherapeutic healing of their patients. In many
cultures today patients are crossing the boundaries between the shamanic systems of indigenous peoples, holistic systems, and the scientific system of Western cultures. For example, on most reservations in North America, the Native American population uses the best of both traditional and Western systems, thus creating a need for transcultural medical procedures.

This self-selection process is particularly pronounced in the area of psychotherapy, where the origins of mental illness are largely supernatural and social from the point of view of traditional healing systems. In North America, for example, the indigenous population exhibits greater confidence in traditional medicine people and shamans than in alien psychotherapists.

The indigenous practitioner anchors his or her practice in the spirit world, a world the indigenous person knows from daily experience to be the most powerful force, interrelating all aspects of life. The psychiatrist, on the other hand, anchors his or her practice in a system of beliefs and references drawn from a foreign culture whose limited belief in the spirit world renders the psychiatric system significantly less creditable for the indigenous person.

Tribal cultures see soul loss, power loss, spirit intrusion, and possession, all shamanic diagnoses considered mental illness by Western medicine, as problems involving the whole social network, the individual's place within it, and within the spiritual forces of the Kosmos. The shaman's traditional treatment is simultaneously spiritual and psychological. For example, by removing the spirit or inanimate object that has intruded into the patient's body a Washo shaman is capable of curing a range of psychoneurotic disorders or disorders with psychosomatic components.

In some areas of medicine contemporary methods closely parallel shamanic methods: use of medicinal herbs, dream interpretation, behavior therapy, family therapy, hypnotherapy, and psychodrama. In the area of psychotherapy in particular, the similarities can outweigh the differences.

However, the essential difference lies in the value placed on the spiritual dimension of a person, of his or her disease, and of the cure. The shaman, who places the health of the individual spirit foremost, will engage in soul retrievals, psychopomp work ( escorting the soul of the dead on the journey to the other world), spirit integration, communication with spirits, extractions of spirit intrusions, and cleansings.

The shaman is also concerned with the health of the communal spirit and the individual's relationship to the community and to the Kosmos. For this the shaman designs rituals and ceremonies to reconnect the individual to the community and the earth, to cleanse the community after violation of taboos, and facilitate the individual and communal awareness of spirit, life purpose, service, and harmony with Nature.

Shamanic healing rituals simultaneously address the healing of complex psychological-emotional-spiritual crises on multiple levels. Rituals do not untie these intricate, painful knots as conventional therapy and analysis seek to do. The shaman cuts through the source of the crisis with ritual and the guiding hand of spirit. See also ceremony and transcultural medicine.

Psychotropic Plants

Psychotropic plants contain naturally occurring chemicals that act on the brain, changing the way the brain and possibly the mind functions. These plants are also referred to as plant hallucinogens and plant entheogens. When prepared and ingested properly psychotropic plants convey humans into temporary altered states of consciousness, which for some individuals are ecstatic.

Some of the earliest forms of shamanism, dating back to the Paleolithic Age, may have involved the use of these plants. While this use of psychotropic plants to enter shamanic altered states of consciousness was and is common in shamanism, what a trained shaman can do under the influence of the sacred plant preparations is not common. To "see" accurately while in an altered state and to act with what one “sees” in that altered state requires hard work, lengthy training, personal sacrifice, and, most important, a special kind of psychological predisposition. See also plant medicines.

Puile

Puile is the Chinantec and Mazatec name for the plant hallucinogen made from the seeds of Morning Glory, Ipomoea violacea, for use in divination and shamanic rituals.

Purification

To cleanse the body, mind, and/or spirit of contaminating substances, thoughts, or energies that are harmful, disruptive to the acquisition of power, or that prevent a person from establishing a relationship and communication with spirit or power. Space and objects, like ritual space and power objects, can also be purified or cleansed. The appropriate purification rite depends on what is being purified and why.

Purification rites range from the simple acts for cleaning to the complex rituals usually performed for healing. Acts of purification include: smudging with a burning piece of sage, cedar, copal, tobacco, or some other plant, a spoken formula, singing a sacred song, camaying with alcohol or flower water, taking an emetic, participation in a sweat lodge ceremony, abstaining from sexual intercourse, fasting, dietary restrictions, and participation in ten-day-long rituals designed specifically for purification. See also camay; ceremony; cleansing.

Qanimasoq
Qanimasoq, meaning “one who shivers with fever,” is the West Greenland Eskimo term for sorcerer. A sorcerer who only casts spells is called a serrasoq, or witch. See also Greenland and sorcery.


QaumanEq
QaumanEq is the special ability of the Iglulik angakok (Eskimo shaman) to see what others cannot see, to “seeing with spirit eyes.” QaumanEq is the ability to see in the darkness, both literally and metaphorically. An angakok with QaumanEq is filled with a light or energy. This enlightenment enables the angakok to perceive energies, people, and events, in the past, present, and future.


Q’ero
Q’ero were essentially unknown to the Western world until 1949. Q’ero was first a place, the home of the first man and woman, Inkari and Collari, created by Kamaq. Inkari and Collari eventually move, have children, and send their first-born son back to Q’ero to live. Later they visit Q’ero and designate its people the keepers of their spiritual traditions, those of the Inka.

It is unclear whether or not the Inka are the descendants of the Inkari and Collari and the original Q’ero people. It is clear that today’s Q’ero are the direct descendants of the Inka and that Inka shamanism continues to be practiced in an unbroken tradition by the Q’ero people. Long ago their ancestors, a small group of ancient Inkas, climbed high up into the mountains. There they created a very isolated sanctuary for the safekeeping of the ancient prophecies and traditions they believe hold key teachings that will be important for the survival and evolution of the world.

The Q’eros refer to this time, the end of the 20th century, as take onkoy, the gestation of the luminous body of the world. The Q’ero are determined to share their traditions and practices with the rest of the world to reunite the great spiritual traditions of North and South (hemispheres) and gather together the peoples of the Four Directions. From this coalition can come the essential transmission of spiritual power needed for take onkoy to become a reality.

Wirachocha and Ayni
Wirachocha is the supreme creative energy that brought forth the universe, through which divine will and divine thought were transmitted to humans. When humans use their divine will and divine thought in every moment they can live life as an expression of Wirachocha, the superior energy that flows through the universe. In that humans become capable of transforming themselves into Illapa Runas, Beings of Light. This is the desired state of consciousness and the path to it
results in a way of life in harmony with others, the planet, and the cosmos.

The knowledge of this path is called Pachacuteq, the return to Divine Origin, Wiracocha. Q’ero shamans see life and the universe in these cosmic terms. For example, the soul is seen as a subtle, cosmic energy that exists in humans. When a child is born, this energy, called the ánimu, enters from the top of the head and warms the child’s blood, giving it life. At death, the ánimu leaves through the top of the head and melds again with the cosmic weaving of Wiracocha.

Any human who attains a high state of consciousness can learn to vibrate his or her own energy at a frequency that is in harmony and balance with all things. That frequency of harmony and balance can be transmitted to everyone and everything around, including the Pachamama (earth). The actions of this individual become sacred; they are in ayni (perfect reciprocity). Achieving this state an individual can merge with all-that-is, love, and life the energy of the Universe.

Q’ero Realities
The Q’ero explain that there are two realities: panya and yoqe. Panya is all that we associate with the world; it is ordinary reality. Yoqe is all that we associate with the spirit world; it is non-ordinary reality. Through yoqe the shaman connects with the enigma, the Great Mystery, and the unfolding of unknown energies that are everpresent in all things.

Pacha (the Kosmos) is divided into three worlds. Hanaqpacha, the Upper-world or superior world, is filled with superior energy that flows through the universe, called by various names: texemuyu, wira-cocha, paha kamak. Ukhupacha, the Lowerworld or interior world, is populated by invisible beings, beings who existed before the universe took its form, and elemental beings. Kaypacha is Pachamama’s world or the surface world populated by all the animal, plant, and geographic beings of the earth.

The power of the paq’o (shaman) comes from his or her ability to communicate with the achachle, the spirit that lives in everything. The paq’o must cultivate his or her personal power/energy to able to link with different powers/energies in the environment to attain this state of sacred communication. At the core of this practice is the paq’o’s mesa, an altar-like arrangement of q’uyas (stone’s power objects) and the icaros (sacred songs).

The Q’ero Spirit World
Primary in the spirit world of the Q’ero is Pachamama, the earth, and the apus, the spirits of the mountains. Pachamama is the expression of the female cosmic energy and is associated with the blood, birth, and death. The apus, are the expression of the male cosmic energy and are receivers of celestial powers.

The paq’o also communicates with the spirits of nature, for example, kuichi (the rainbow), malqu (trees), mayo (river), kocha (sacred lakes) and the four elements: allypa (earth), unu (water), wayra (winds), nina (fire). Entering into the sacred relationship of ayni with the spirits of Nature promotes well-being of self and others.

Paq’o—The Shamans
The paq’o of the Andes are spiritual leaders who serve an area or region. They are organized into a system of concentric circles of power. In the center with the smallest circle of power is a paq’o who serves a small village, then the paq’o who serves a larger village, and finally the paq’o who encompasses the larger circles of power serves a region, and so on.

Every living being in the universe has a relationship of service to other beings. The training of a paq’o begins by serving a very small mountain from his or her area. When that energy is mastered he or she moves on to a larger mountain in the area. Finally he or she begins working with the spirit of a region. At each stage of development
the power of the *paq'o* increases commensurate with the power of the mountain or region that they serve. The *paq'o* is always learning, training, and receiving *karpay* (initiation) from beings of greater and greater power throughout his or her lifetime.

**Selection**

There are entryways, formal and informal, to become a *paq'o* in the Q'ero tradition. The traditional path is followed in a formal way, receiving teachings and the corresponding energy transmissions from a master. There are also informal paths, for example being struck by lightning and surviving. In this case the transmission can come from the lightning and training must follow. The transmission can also come from the spirit world, manifesting as a feeling inside the individual that he or she has been called to become a *paq'o*. All paths are strange and difficult and traverse a lifetime.

**Karpay**

*Karpay* is “to be initiated” and always involves a transmission of knowledge and energy. In this sense initiation is not a measure of spiritual success, like a graduation, but a creation of potential, like the planting of an Inka seed in one’s soul. Anyone can receive the *karpay* rites. The *paq'o* is distinguished by what he or she is able to do with the energy and knowledge transmitted.

*Karpays* are the rites of passage of the *kurak akulleq*, one of the highest level of *paq'o* in the Inka traditions. They contain the mystery teachings that can not be told, but can be known. For those who can “see” into the mystery, *karpays* convey sacred knowledge that can not be shared, but can be experienced.

**Teachings and Teachers**

There are particular lines of knowledge and levels of development for which it is helpful for the *paq'o* to have a teacher or *mesayoq* (master). For example, one of the fundamental skills of the *paq'o* is to see fields of energy. The *mesayoq* can awaken that sight and teach the *paq'o* to use it to read connections within the fields of action and to interact with those fields.

The *mesayoq* teaches the use of *Coca* leaves for *offerings* and for *divinations* and techniques to reconnect with the matrix of the Kosmos. The *mesayoq* teaches the meditative techniques to connect with the *achachle* that lives in all things like meditating on the lap of *Pachamama* to draw in strength from earth or to working with *Pachakamac*, the *Sun*, to draw in that concentrated energy.

**Awakening the Luminous Body**

Another fundamental skill the *paq'o* must learn is the cultivation of the luminous body, or *kausay poq'po* (energy bubble). The *kausay poq'po* is the energy field that surrounds the body; the center is the *qosqo*, located around the belly area. The luminous body must be awakened, cleared, and healed so that it can grow and transform as the *paq'o* does.

The Q’ero perceive of all energy as neutral, not negative/positive or good/evil. The *paq'o* must learn to discern between qualities of energy: *hoocha* (heavy) or *sami* (refined). The *qosqo* is used to move the energy. Heavy energy must be transmuted and is fed to Pachamama. Refined energy is drawn from nature or *hanaqpacha*, the Upperworld and redirected where it is needed. *Sami* can be directed into a person, a community, or into the natural environment to correct energy imbalances and blocks so that energies can return to a harmonious flow.

**Initiation**

There are many levels of initiation for the *paq'o*. Each initiation lasts from fifteen days to a month and involves walking through the high mountains and going to sacred sites to experience teachings. Initiates participate in many *rituals* designed to connect them to resident spirits and to receive transmissions. They also experience the energies
directly, for example meditating on the cosmos under the night sky or bathing in very cold mountain lagoons.

The initiates are tested in many ways, all of them hard and not all of them apparent. There are tests of fire, knowledge, and love. There are tests to determine their physical readiness, the preparation of their hearts, and their ability to be compassionate.

Levels of Training

When the *paq’o* has mastered the fundamentals of energy and working with the local *apus*, the next level of training is to learn to use *q’uyas* (stone’s) for healing and therapy. There are many different *q’uyas* and many different applications. For example, healing energy can be transmitted through a *q’uya* or the *q’uya* can be used to cleanse heavy energies from the body. The *paq’o* learns mystical techniques to give the *q’uyas* a purpose and meaning that allow it to be used in the healing.

Certain rocks are distinguished as *q’uya* because they have a particular feeling to the *paq’o*. The most powerful rocks are found high in the Andes and the *paq’o* may be guided to them in dreams or visions. *Q’uyas* can be stones struck by lightning or stones given by a river, a lake, or Pachamama. Some large *q’uyas* are stone altars used at sacred sites where the *paq’o* engage and direct the forces of Nature.

The next level of *paq’o* is the *kuya hampeqs*, the herbalist healer who has mastered the art of working with plant powers for healing. The *kuya hampeq* is the physician of the Andes who is an expert on the use of plant energies and plant spirits to cure illness.

All of the next three levels of *paq’o* are capable of extraordinary healings, both physical—like paralysis and drug addiction—and spiritual—like psychic and psychological abnormalities. In addition to healings the *pampa mesayoq*, the *alto mesayoq*, and *kuraq akulleq* each use their relationship with the supernatural in unique and increasingly more powerful and enlightened ways.

The *pampa mesayoq* is an expert healer and is perhaps the shaman of the *paq’o* as the role is defined in this volume. His or her main relationship is serving Pachamama and using rituals to direct and maintain Her energies. The *pampa mesayoq* works with medicinal plants, performs divinations with Coca leaves, creates and uses talismans, and works with animals, plants, trees, rivers, and other aspects of the geography of the earth.

The *alto mesayoq*, of which there are three levels, specializes in the cultivation of his or her relationship with the *apu*, the spirits of the mountains. The *karpa* of the *alto mesayoq* involves the consecration of his or her being to the service of the mountain. As a consequence it is the *alto mesayoq* who listens to and speaks directly with the *apu*, who is the only being who knows the whole prophecy of *Pachakuti*. Each *alto mesayoq* is also consecrated into the service of a star, which, with the *apu*, serves *alto mesayoq*’s guide.

The *kuraq akulleq*, which means the great elder or master, is one of the highest levels. There are very few who master it. There are two levels of *kuraq* above this; both are even more rare and cannot be named. The *kuraq akulleq* is a great visionary who works primarily with the superior energies of *hanaqpacha* and the celestial filaments. It is a very prophetic and charismatic role.

The *kuraq akulleq* can be a man or a woman. The male *kuraq akulleq* is more visible to the outside world; however, it is usually the female *kuraq akulleq* who moves the celestial filaments. Working with these celestial energies can bring about miraculous long-distance healings. The *kuraq akulleq* are also known to use earthquakes and other energies of Nature to create transformation.

Tools

The primary tool of the Q’ero shaman is the cultivation of his or her own energy body to use as a tool to direct the energies of the physical and spiritual environment. Within that practice the *paq’o*
does use actual tools that aid in communion with the elemental spirits of nature and the frequencies of celestial energy.

The Mesa, K'uyas, and Icaros
The *paq'o* mesa is a bundle of power objects that function as a portable altar and is used in small personal and large group rituals. For use, the mesa is unwrapped and its contents placed ritually on the cloth. Typical contents include stone's and objects that embody the power of Pachamama, the *apus*, and the *paq'o*’s teachers, both human and/or spirit beings.

*Q’uyas* are stone power objects. They can be large enough to serve as altars at a sacred site and small enough to be folded into the *paq'o*’s mesa. *Icaros* are sacred songs taught to the *paq'o* by the spirits or by his or her teacher who receives the song ultimately from the spirits. Singing the *icaros* is a way to call on the energy of the spirit who gave the song and receive and/or direct that energy.

Despacho and Kint’u (Coca)
A *despacho* ceremony is a traditional Andean offering to Pachamama. Performing the *despacho* is part of nearly every Q’ero ceremony. It is the formal way to give thanks to and to honor the energies of Pachamama, the *apus*, and Nature.

The *kint’u* is an offering of *Coca* leaves that can be used in different ways during the *despacho*. The *kint’u*, made of three *Coca* leaves, is a formal way of sharing *Coca* which is a sacred act of spiritual and energetic bonding.

Rattle, Whistle, and Pisco
The *rattle* and whistle are used to call on the spirits of Nature and to establish a sacred relationship with them to use during a sacred ceremony. *Pisco*, strong Peruvian alcohol made from the skin and seed of grapes, is used for cleansing.

*Coca*
*Coca* is the most sacred plant of the Andes. “To chew Coca” means to meditate. One of the highest levels of *paq’o* is called the *kuraq akulleq*, which means “the great chewer of *Coca* leaves,” or great master. *Coca* leaves are used for divination, as offerings, and as vehicles to carry prayers and *ayni*, perfect reciprocity, in ceremony.

*Coca* leaves are used for divination to determine a person’s destiny and to diagnose illnesses. The leaves are held to the mouth and prayed into or asked the questions, then allowed to fall onto the *manta*, or ceremonial cloth. The leaves, their shape, coloration, dispersion, and relative relationships, are all read. There is an entire system of symbols associated with reading *Coca* leaves; however, to read the leaves well, the *paq’o* must cultivate *Coca q’awaiq*, clairvoyant abilities.

During the *despacho* a participant receives a *k’intu* made from three *Coca* leaves from the *paq’o*. The *k’intu* is held to the mouth and prayed into, blown into, and then slowly chewed and tucked into the cheek. The *k’intu* is not always chewed. It can be used as a vehicle for *ayni* during the *despacho*. The prayers, breath, and energy sent into the *k’intu* are given in reciprocity for the help and guidance received from the nature spirits. Charged in this way the *k’intu* are returned to the *paq’o* who incorporates them into the *despacho*.

Pachakuti—the Time of Transformation
According to ancient Inka prophecy the end of the 20th century is the time of gathering and reintegration of the Peoples of the earth. It is a time of upheaval and great change that will make it fertile for a new seed of awareness and being to mature into profound alterations in the way humanity perceives the core structures of the universe.

The Q’ero recognize that there are three types of human intelligence/power: *yachay* (knowledge) developed in the Europeans, *munay* (love and feeling) developed in the indigenous South Americans, and
llankay (the ability to manifest) developed in the North Americans. Each of these peoples needs the intelligence and power of the other two to be whole. This time of change, Pachakuti, will create the potential for Wholeness by bringing all three powers together.

Pachakuti is a very important moment for all humanity, particularly those who have strayed from a balanced life of purpose and meaning. Pachakuti is a time to realign the world in renewed order and harmony and to open to new ways of seeing the world. To this end the Q’ero now open their teachings to all others in preparation for the day the Eagle of the North and the Condor of the South fly together again. See also Andes, South America, and South America.


Qilaain

(Dialectical variants: qilaun, qilaut, and qitlaun.) The qilaain is the drum of the East Greenland Eskimo angakok (shaman). It is the only instrument used by the angakok and is fundamental to the process of inducing trance.

The qilaain is made from a wooden hoop, approximately 18 inches in diameter, over which is stretched a piece of skin, preferably the skin of the stomach of a polar bear. A handle or kättiwa (also kalilua) is lashed to the wooden rim of the drum. The angakok may choose to add an amulet to the qilaain to improve the power of his or her singing, e.g., the stiff feathers from the root of the beak of the raven are inserted under the lashings, or kilikirpia, for this purpose.

The qilaain is played by striking the lower border of the wooden hoop, not the drumhead, with the kättiwa, or drumstick. During the torniwoq, the shamanic rituals, the qilaain is usually played by the assistant, freeing the angakok to dance about, call his or her spirits for help, and enter trance. The angakok calls his or her helping spirits with the anaalutaq, a simple wooden stick that is tapped on the floor to call in spirits and to send others away. See also Greenland and torngraq.


Qilajoq

One who consults the spirits in the qilaneq divination ceremony. The practitioner is not necessarily a shaman, but someone who has acquired a qila, or “spirit of the earth,” as a helping spirit and is empowered by the qila to perform the divination. Variations of this ceremony are found throughout the Arctic region in Eskimo cultures. Plural: qilajut, also called a qilalik. See also Eskimo.


Qilaneq

The most common divination ceremony in the Arctic region, performed in many variations in different Eskimo cultures. In this ceremony the qilajoq lays the patient, or a relative of the patient, on the floor facing up and fastens a belt around the head or foot. The patient relaxes on the floor and the qilajoq begins to ask his or her qila, helping spirits, questions, for example, to diagnose the patient’s illness.
When the question is asked the practitioner calls on the spirit, raising the belt and body part to which it is fastened. If the body part grows too heavy to raise, the spirits are present and they have answered "yes." If the body part maintains its normal weight and is easily lifted the spirits have answered "no." See also Eskimo.


Qologogoloq
The qologogoloq is a charm, created and used by tungralik, whose power is inherent. It is carved from wood and can be an animal figure, an object, or a mask. The qologogoloq is used and reused in a variety of ceremonial ways. See also Alaskan and Eskimo.


Qoobakiyalxale
(Also koobakiyalhale.) The qoobakiyalxale is the outfit doctor or singing doctor of the Pomo people of coastal California in North America. Singing doctors were skilled at extracting poisons from a victim's body. (The literal translation of qoobakiyalxale is "performer for somebody poisoned.") Generally, it was thought that a qoogauk (sorcerer) introduced the poisons to the victim. A variety of poisons were known: plants, herbs, mushrooms, rattlesnake juice in water, pinole poison from lizards and snakes, touch with a coyote paw, oak blossoms mixed with ground human bones, and snake blood. These poisons could affect someone by being put on their clothing or hair, on money or beads, or in food or drink. The Pomo believed that only the singing doctor had the skill and the power to extract the poisons. Because of this, he was a man to be respected.

The qoobakiyalxale is one of two types of Pomo shamans. The second type, the madu, were known as dream doctors or sucking doctors. They gained their power from spontaneous mystical experiences. The power of the qoobakiyalxale, on the other hand, was supposed to have started with creation and was passed down to him through the hereditary transfer of songs, the objects in his outfit, and the knowledge of how to use them.

The qoobakiyalxale began training in early childhood, learning the proper sacred songs, locations of various herbs, and their preparation. As the apprentice matured, many more years were devoted to the serious study of the profession, some doctors learning well over 1,000 different songs. When the apprentice was proficient and the mentor prepared to retire, the outfit was passed down to the apprentice. This outfit was the source of the qoobakiyalxale's power.

The power objects of the outfit were kept in a sack made from the whole skin of a deer, which was usually stored in a special little house, out of the reach of those who lacked the knowledge of how to use the powerful objects held within. A typical qoobakiyalxale outfit included:
1. The cocoon rattle. The qoobakiyalxale always shook the cocoon rattle to keep time as he sang. Some Pomo also called the qoobakiyalxale the "rattle doctor."
2. A three- to four-inch obsidian or flint blade that was rubbed with herbs determined by the nature of the illness, heated, and pressed into the painful body part while the doctor sang continuously.
3. Rocks taken from mineral springs, which were heated, rubbed with herbs, and used much like the blade.
4. Two or three head nets.
5. A hat with many kinds of feathers, e.g., owl, woodpecker, raven, yellow hawk, emerald bird. The feathers were worn and also used as healing tools.
6. A sharpened stick, usually of manzanita wood, used to pin the feather hats to the head net.
7. A breechcloth of braided laurel.
8. A stone pestle, usually about six inches long, used with the mortar to grind up paints or medicinal herbs.
9. A hollowed out stone, used both as a mortar and bowl. The patient was fed herbs and medicines directly from it.
10. Additional items, e.g., various herbs, seeds, roots, greases, paints for ritual attire, eggs of the turtle not yet laid, coyote paw, bulbs of a kind of wild onion, seeds of a small red pine, pine sugar, rattlesnake and bull snake heads, a liquid-filled moleskin, fragments from the hill of a certain ant, powdered whalebone, and the cremated bone of a person killed in violence.

Four days is typical for the qoobakiyalxale's healing ceremonies, which were most often conducted in the patient's home. The family of the patient erected a pole and placed the payment around it, the amount varying depending on the seriousness of the cure. This payment—which traditionally consisted of beads and sometimes baskets, blankets, or food—remained untouched until the healing was completed. The doctor returned the beads if the patient later died from the illness he was supposed to heal.

The singing doctor usually had an assistant, whose main purpose was to use small sticks to count off the number of songs. (The doctor had to sing all healing songs four times before moving on to the next one.) After a few songs, the doctor sang a sack-opening song, and with it named every object in his sack, taking each out and spreading it on the bare ground by a fire. The Pomo believed that if the doctor sang the songs incorrectly, he could fall ill, or even die.

The most common illnesses required the application of various herbal mixtures either by rubbing the preparation into the patient's skin with a heated blade or stick or inserting the mixture into a small incision in the skin. When finished, the qoobakiyalxale left his outfit with the patient to continue the healing, returning several days later to check on the patient’s progress. The qoobakiyalxale either retrieved his outfit and payment or continued his treatment. If the patient failed to recover after several visits, the doctor reassessed his diagnosis. For the duration of healing ceremonies, the qoobakiyalxale was forbidden from eating meat and grease, and from drinking water.

Qoobakiyalxale were called upon to treat any type of illness, in addition to those caused by sorcery. He could, for instance, cure an illness caused by violating a restriction or taboo, or by an ordinary cause.


Qoogauk
The Pomo term for a sorcerer or witch, rare among the Pomo. The qoogauk is one who sends poisons or pains that the shaman must extract. See also sorcery.


Quechua
Quechua is both a people and a language. The language is the language of the Inka empire that spread north and south from Cuzco, Peru, in the 15th and 16th centuries following Inkan
conquest. Quechua continued to spread into Ecuador without conquest and into the tropical rain forest of both Ecuador and Peru. Today there are many Quechua-speaking peoples spread north and south along the Andes of Ecuador and Peru and into the Oriente of both countries.

**Cosmology**

Thousands of years ago, Viracocha, the creator of all things, created men and women. They lived wild in caves with the other animals. Inti, the Sun, looked down and took pity on the humans. Inti sent Manco Capac, his son, and Mama Ocllo, his daughter-in-law, to teach the humans how to build villages, grow crops, and build society. To this end, humans were taught laws to live by.

Above all other laws was the directive to never build more or grow more than was needed and to act always as guardians of all things on Pachamama, the earth. Manco Capac and Mama Ocllo taught the humans to live in a way that was responsible for and conscious of the fact that they were connected to all things—all the plants, animals, mountains, stone’s and to Pachamama herself. These laws were passed on to generation after generation of Quechua, who see themselves today as protectors and caretakers of the earth.

Like the Q’ero, the Quechua speak of Pachakuti, a time of great change at the end of the 20th century. It is the time envisioned in dreams of the ancestors of the Quechua who saw the Eagle of North America and the Condor of South America flying in the same sky. To this end the Quechua offer the secret teaching of the Condor and the heart to their brothers and sister in the land of the Eagle.

**Canelos Quechua**

The Canelos Quechua are a people of the Ecuadorian Oriente. They refer to themselves as Sacha Runa, “human of the rain forest.” The shamans of the Canelos tribe are renowned for producing the most powerful, and therefore the most valued, tsentsaks. Shamans from many different tribes travel for days to receive these powerful magical darts and to train with these shamans, or yachajs.

The strong yachaj has mastered over time training and discipline and a level of personal control that allows him to balance his knowledge with his visions, both ordinary visions of the future and those shown to him by the spirits while under the influence of ayahuasca. He is able to accurately relate his visions to cultural knowledge and to relate his personal insights and reflections to both the knowledge and the visions.

The yachaj is engaged in a continuous process of cultivating self awareness and yachana, “to know, to learn.” The first step is to control within himself the process of reflection and creative endeavor, or yuyana (yuyarina), “to think, to reflect.” Growth in the yachaj’s consciousness is seen in his ability to creatively maintain a dynamic balance between his visions, muscuna, “to dream, to see,” and his knowledge of things outside of himself, ricsina, “to know, to experience, to perceive, to comprehend.”

Men and women who control this process within themselves are able to use the foundation of their cultural knowledge, their laws, to relate experience and vision to other systems of knowledge. They move up in status to paradigm builders and creators of change. They become masters of their profession and create the most powerful and/or valuable tools of their professions. These strong yachaj are able to simultaneously maintain native paradigms and expand those paradigms to create change in the world today.

For example, the yachaj continue to look to the traditional cosmic forces that generate strength and health and those that cause weakness and illness. As a result they are the best diagnosticians in the area. From this insight they recognize that diseases new to the indigenous people (tuberculosis, diphtheria, whooping cough, and influenza) and some old one’s (malaria, measles,
chicken pox) are caused by forces beyond the traditional. So, logically and rationally, healing powers beyond these shamans must be used. The yachaj tend to be strong supporter of programs that make Western techniques and medicines available to their people.

Otavalan Quechua
The Otavalan Quechua live high in the Andes where their shamans call on Pachamama and the energies of the mountains, like Grandmother Cotacachi and Grandfather Imbabura to assist them in their healing sessions.

To camay, to forcefully blow the unity of all things into someone or something, is central to Quechua healing. The technique is used ubiquitously to bring anything, but particularly humans, back into balance with the unity of all things. This practice is derived from the Quechua awareness that all are one, and to fall out of balance with that unity in any way is the fundamental source of all illness.

To camay the breath of life is fundamental. The shaman also camays with different substances to cleanse, empower, or sift the energy of a person or part of a person. Traditional substances include trago (cane alcohol), fragrant oil, flower water, spices (cinnamon), flower petals (carnations), and flame created by camaying a fine mist of trago across a candle flame.

In a typical healing session, the shaman's altar is spread with many huacas (stone power objects), a candle, fresh eggs, fruit, flower petals, spices, and trago. There are freshly cut branches (stinging nettles) or flowers to the side. The shaman camays his or her altar, spraying a cleansing mist across everything and begins to whistle his power songs.

The shaman whistles or chants songs to call in the helping spirits that help the shaman to enter trance. Quechua shamans move in and out of trance and between lighter and deeper trance states as are needed to perform the acts of healing necessary. Though they do not ask for information before their diagnosis, they do speak to the patient during the healing to convey necessary information.

The process of diagnosis is unique to each shaman. For example, some use a candle rubbed all over the patient's body and burned, while others use a special huaca or simply enter into trance.

Patients disrobe for the healings, and the shaman proceeds using a variety of techniques dictated by the diagnosis. The shaman camays trago, very often through the flame of a candle, engulfing the patient in a ball of fire. Flames are camayed onto branches of stinging nettles and shaken vigorously against the bare body.

The shaman continues selecting specific huacas to massage the patient with and draw out harmful energies. Eggs are used in a similar fashion. The shaman rubs eggs all over the body to collect harmful energies or places them against the part of the body affected and sucks the energies out through the eggs. These eggs are quickly broken on the earth or into a clay pot and offered to the spirits outside of the healing space. The shaman brushes and shakes leaf bunches all over the body to cleanse it. At the completion of the healing, herbs may be prescribed to be taken internally or in the bath to support the body's adjustment to the shaman's healing.

When the shaman diagnoses espan-tu, a sudden fear or trauma, soul loss is expected. The shaman will enter the spirit world, retrieve the lost soul, and returns it to the patient. See also Andes, South America.

Quetho
The berdache (berdach) of the Tewa Pueblo people of the North American southwest. A quetho (pronounced, kwih-doh) is identified as a child who has a special relationship with the spirit world. They are inclined to be androgynous and gentle, resisting socialization into male or female gender roles. As they mature quetho are not assigned a male or female sex by the elders. See also gender variant.


Q'uya
Q'uyas are stone power objects used in the shamanic practices of Q'ero shamans. They can be large enough to serve as an altar at sacred sites or small enough to be folded into the shaman's mesa. There are many different q'uyas and many different applications for healing and therapy. For example, healing energy can be transmitted through a q'uya or the q'uya can be used to cleanse heavy energies from the body.

Certain rocks are distinguished as q'uya because they have a particular feeling to the shaman. The most powerful rocks are found high in the Andes and the paq'o may be guided to them in dreams or visions. Q'uyas can be stone's struck by lightning or stone's given by a river, a lake, or Pachamama, the earth. See also Andes, South America.
Rainbow Serpent, is simultaneously male and female and is the soul of all beings who can act creatively. *Ungud* cooperated with the Milky Way to create the world and humankind. It is the huge snake living in the earth at the beginning of time and the rainbow across the sky today.

The Rainbow Serpent at its most basic symbolizes the spiraling cosmic power that is the creative force from which emerged our world and humankind on that world. It is an extension of universal serpent myths that permeate the beliefs of all peoples, past and present. These mythical serpent creatures are recorded in many countries: the dragons of China, the naga of India, the taniwah of New Zealand, the water serpents of the San, and in the myths of Europe, ancient Greece, Egypt, and the Indonesian and Melanesian islands.

Belief in the Rainbow Serpent is universal among Aborigines and strongly associated with the shaman throughout Australia. In some tribes the Rainbow Serpent takes the shaman to a place under the waterhole for several days to teach him songs and dances for the tribal healing rituals. The crystals inserted into the shaman's body during his initiation, the source of the shaman's power, are found where the rainbow touches the earth.

The Rainbow Serpent is simultaneously the mythical being living in the spirit world and the water dwelling snakes that live in the natural world. These ordinary manifestations are known throughout Australia by many names, including bunyip, akaru, takkan, wogal, and brimures. The serpent is associated with the sound of the bullroarer and the shaman's ability to call the rain.

The Rainbow Serpent is the initiating spirit in some Aboriginal tribes, transforming boys into men and men into shamans. In puberty rites, the Rainbow Snake takes the boy from the women, swallows and regurgitates him, releasing the initiate into the circle of

---

**Rainbow Serpent**

In Australia, the Aboriginals tell of a Rainbow Serpent being who brought great blessings to humanity. *Ungud*, the

---

**Rai**

*Spirit* beings in Aboriginal Australia. *Rai* are spirits of the dead, pre-existent spirit children, and spirits who will be reincarnated. *Rai* can act as helping spirits for the shaman and/or as initiating spirits. *Rai* are distinct from the hereditary helping spirit received from family or clan during initiation into adulthood.

In the southwest, Kimberley Division, shamans are initiated by the *rai*. The *rai* cuts the initiate open, removes the internal organs, and hangs them up. The empty torso is filled with magic cooking stones, covered in paper bark, and put over a hot earth-oven. When done, the *rai* replaces the organs, leaving the magic stones inside, and closes the initiate up.

The *rai* then takes the initiate and dips him in a sacred water place and inserts more magic stones through his navel and temple, giving the initiate “an inner eye of magic” that allows him to see what is normally invisible. The *rai* also teaches him to use his magical cord to travel to the realms of the dreamtime. See also Australia and water.


men. In some tribes the Rainbow Serpent is replaced in the male puberty rites with Ingurug, the Old Woman or All-Mother.

In the initiation of shamans a master shaman takes the initiate into the Upperworld, seated astride the Rainbow Serpent. There in the Sky small rainbow serpents and quartz crystals are inserted into the initiate's body, filling him with the Rainbow Serpent's power. After this operation the initiate is brought back to earth, again riding the Rainbow Serpent. The master shaman inserts more magical objects into his body and wakens him by touching him with a magical stone. The new shaman must now learn to control the powers inserted within.

In Africa there are stories of a great serpent, shooting rainbows from its body as it moves, told by people of Nigeria, Mozambique, Namibia, Natal, and many countries of West Africa. This serpent brought the earth mother to this world. In Western Africa they say the earth mother traveled through the world in the mouth of the Rainbow Serpent, creating mountains, valleys, and stars.

The Vedaps of Northern Transvaal believe that Nyoka the python first taught men and women how to make love, again associating the serpent with creativity and lifeforce. Love-making is considered a sacred teaching and one of the greatest gifts bestowed on humankind by the Creator spirit.

Around the world shamans ride the serpent into the earth, through the Dreamtime, and climb the serpent's rainbow to enter the Upperworld. The Rainbow Serpent appears as the celestial anaconda who brought the first man, woman, and the ayahuasca to Amazonia. It is Quetzalcoatl, the plumed creator serpent of the Mesoamerican people. Everywhere the Rainbow Serpent is found associated with shamans, their extraordinary powers, and the essential creative force of the Kosmos. See also Mesoamerica and ritual.

Rama Puran Tsan
The First Shaman of the Magar people of Nepal who appeared in the fourth age of Nepalese cosmology and fought with nine witch sisters concluding in a truce agreement. In that agreement the witches could continue to cause illness for humanity, but could no longer extract payment and blood sacrifices. In exchange, the shamans would be able to heal humanity of these illnesses. See also sacrifice.


Rattles
Rattles are one of the oldest musical instruments, believed to be created originally to imitate the sound of rain. There are three classes of rattles. The first is any vessel filled with objects that move about, making a "rattling" noise when shaken. The rattle may or may not have a handle attached. The vessel can be round, box-shaped, highly decorated, or constructed like a small drum. Dried gourds and seed pods are common sources of natural rattles.

The second category consists of objects suspended so that they clash together. Rattles of this type are not always held in the hand, but are often constructed to be worn while dancing. The third category is a rasping stick or a notched stick that is scraped with a second stick common in southwestern North America where a basket is used as a resonator at the bottom of the notched stick. This category also includes wooden clappers common on the Pacific northwestern coast of North America.


Rattles
Rattles are used by shamans universally in their healing work. They are used to induce trance or call on particular helping spirits. In healing they are used to attract energetic intrusions that need to be removed from the patient's body and to disburse unwanted energies stuck around the patient's body.

Rattles with metal pieces, like sistrums, also have powerful protective functions and were used to drive away harmful spirits and the harmful effects of malevolent sorcery, spells, and curses. The rattle can also be used in the beginning of a healing ritual to cleanse and purify the space and the patient before proceeding.

The rattle is used with the drum in most areas where shamanism is found. In South America the rattle is found primarily by itself and is used with plant hallucinogens. Generally speaking, in South America the handle of the rattle symbolizes the World Tree and the vessel represents the Kosmos. The seeds or pebbles inside the vessel are helping spirits and Ancestor spirits. By shaking the rattle the shaman calls on these spirits to assist in the work.


Red Ochre

Ochre is earth or clay containing impure iron ore creating a range of red to yellow pigments in the earth. Red ochre is a pigment made by grinding hematite or other iron oxides. Of the range of colors of ochre, red in particular is considered sacred by cultures around the world. Red ochre is often used as body paint or to adorn costumes, fabrics, or power objects in preparation for the most sacred rituals of many cultures.

In Upper Paleolithic times red ochre was used to redden graves, corpses, cave walls, engraved objects, and sculptures of women. Paleolithic people often buried their dead in fetal positions, painted with red ochre.

In some cultures red ochre is used for healing directly. The Aborigines of Australia explain that female ancestors traveled around the world in the dreamtime and where they bled their menstrual blood congealed in the earth as red ochre. It can be used by humans for many kinds of healing, particularly those of women.

Similarly, in Africa, the Zulu, Shanga, Mashona, and Swazi people explain that red ochre is the congealed menstrual blood of either the great earth mother or the moon goddess. The ochre was believed to have spread around the world when the earth was being created. See also aboriginal and colors.


Religion

Shamanism is not a religion. There is no dogma, no church, no cult, and no divine personification. There are prayers and sacrifice, but not in the abstract form of religious worship. They are common, daily actions that maintain balance and well-being.

“Religion” comes from the Latin “religio” or “religere,” meaning “to tie together again.” This refers to the reconnection of the creation to the creator. For shamanic, or pre-religious people, there is no need “to tie together again.” The creation is not separate from the creator. They are One. They have always been and will always be One. It takes great imagination for a contemporary Western mind to make the complete shift necessary to see the world as the shaman does.

Scholars often refer to shamanism as the “ethnic religion” of a certain people; however, this is largely due to a lack of
imagination or words necessary to describe what shamanism is. It takes a generous imagination to see life from a worldview formed prior to the existence of religious thought and the dominance of the high religions in the creation psychology of humankind.

Central to shamanism is the understanding that humans are connected to all things. Traditional shamanic peoples accept this quite literally even though much of that web of connection is not visible. It took Heisenburg, in the 1970s, and his "probability principle" for science to show contemporary people that interconnectedness is not just a metaphor. Everything is connected by a very real and continuous exchange of electrons and photons. It took at least 16,000 years of human evolution and over 2,000 years of philosophical thought for humans to return to what shamanic peoples have known from the beginning.

Scholars have characterized pre-religious thought as a phase marked by the inability to divide real from supernatural (transcending the natural or material order) and acceptance of the related idea that inanimate objects embody spirit and may affect humans positively, promoting well-being, or negatively, promoting illness. The “inability” of shamanic people to separate the visible from the invisible worlds does not arise from a lack of intelligence or the mental ability to do so. It arises from their experience of life as simultaneously ordinary and non-ordinary. The shaman’s experience tells him/her that the separation, fundamental to a religious worldview, is not real.

World religions include Christianity, Judaism, Islam, Buddhism, Hinduism, and Gnosticism. These higher religions all embody the principle of transcendence from the state of separateness in which a godhead involves humans in an experience beyond their immediate needs. This experience of the sacred, or holy, is outside of the individual’s day-to-day life, created by the godhead, and not believed to be an immediate need.

For an individual in a traditional shamanic culture, the sacred is in all things. It is in every part of day-to-day life, it need only be recognized. The sacred does not need to be created by the godhead, for it already is. The sacred is not believed to be beyond one’s immediate needs; it is inherent in life and living.

Shamanism is not a religion. It can, however, be considered a prototype for the world’s religions. The experience of the shaman in his or her relationship with spirit parallels the original mystical experience of the “lonely prophet” at the center of each of the revealed religions. The intrinsic core of every known high religion (Confucianism aside) is the private revelation, or ecstatic illumination, of a prophet or seer. Each of the high religions begins with one individual’s revelation. The validity, function, and existence of the religion is based on the codification of this original mystical experience and the teaching of the message in that revelation to others.

The revelatory experiences at the core of the high religions are peak experiences that were then phrased in the conceptual, cultural, and linguistic framework of the seer at that time. It is within the natural range of human experience to have peak experiences. They are not reserved for the godhead alone. The shaman’s relationship with spirit is based on the techniques for provoking peak experiences.

There is some scholarly discussion as to whether or not shamans experience unio mystica, the classical ecstatic, mystical union with God. While shamans do not report having mystical union with a religious divinity, they do report returning to the source of all things or communicating with the Great Mystery. Perhaps the shaman frames the ecstatic experience differently precisely because he or she never created the underlying metaphor of that reunion which is the anthropomorphic God who is separate from Nature and the earth. It is easy to assume that it is the human condition to be separated
from God and to desire the experience of unio mystica; however, that assumption is only accurate for religious humankind.

Pre-religious people experience the concept of God and Nature as One, not as two or even as the union of two. Furthermore, the shaman does not believe in Oneness; the shaman experiences Oneness, particularly in his or her practice of journeying. This is not to say that shamans experience unio mystica every time they journey; they do not. Ecstatic union is not the goal of shamanic practices; it is a common fringe benefit.

It is clear that shamans have ecstatic experiences of an intensity and character to be considered genuine mystical experiences. One must always remember that the true mystical experience cannot be captured in words; therefore, these particular experiences would be very hard to preserve in the oral traditions of shamanic cultures. Those that are preserved are expressed in a pre-religious context in terms of a through framework, not in the context and terms of religious mystical experiences.

That fact that a word for religion did not even exist in many shamanic cultures before contact does not mean that shamanic peoples did not have profoundly spiritual lives. The human concerns of questing, soulful yearnings, and existential needs have been called religious questions; however, they are also pre-religious questions. These concerns arise from roots planted deeply in the human experience of being a living, breathing, creating expression of the Great Mystery manifest in physical form. See also knowledge.


Renewal of Life
The renewal of life ritual is a counterpart to Siberian hunting magic. The purpose of the ritual is to encourage the reproduction of game animals. The survival of hunting peoples was obviously interrelated with animals; however, they also saw their fertility interrelated with the fertility of the game animals. Participation in the renewal of life ritual was both a joy and a duty to the community.

The dances of this ritual, some more like games and wrestling, were explicitly sexual. They were composed mainly of mimicking the rutting and mating behavior of animals, like elks and reindeer. Men and women dance, or in some versions, men dance alone. The ritual was a celebration of virility, both human and animal, and intended to please the animals spirits so much that the animals would engage in reproductive activities themselves.


Rewe
The rewe is a pole carved with steps that is the sacred symbol of the machis, the shamans of the Mapuche. The rewe is climbed during ceremonies as the machi enters a deep trance. She stands on the top playing her drum and communicating with the beings of the spirit world.

A three-meter section of a tree is barked, notched to form steps, and set
in the ground at a slight tilt that makes it easier to climb. Tall branches may be stuck into the ground around the rewe to create an enclosure of 15 by 4 meters for special rituals. The rewe remains in the ground outside the machi’s house indefinitely.

The trunk of the Tree of Life is the axis (axis mundi), running through the Center of the World that allows the shaman to travel between the realms of the spirit world. This symbolism can be recognized by the presence of seven notches or steps, representing the seven layers of the Upperworld. As the machi ascends her rewe she ascends into the Upperworld. See also shamanic symbols.

Rhythm
Rhythmic music is an essential component in most shamanic rituals. Rhythm is a primary means by which shamans induce the altered states of consciousness necessary to perform shamanic acts. Through mental and physical concentration on particular rhythms the shaman can enter altered states in which the shaman’s soul is unbound by the normal limitation of time and space.

Rhythm was revered as a structuring force of life in the most ancient cultures. Today science has shown us that rhythm shapes matter. Sound waves introduced into various material substances creates symmetrical patterns with uniform characteristics in the substances. Disorganized, random substances become organized instantly into organic forms by rhythm. Rhythmic vibrations give form to the material world.

Our creation theories express the idea that the universe is in essence a symphony of vibrations emanating out of an enormous first beat or bang. The different harmonics correspond to different elementary particles—electron, graviton, proton, neutrino, and all the others. These elemental rhythms shape the matter of our world. See also drum; journey; song; sonic driving.

Ritual
Shamans use ritual and ceremony to create the quality of sacred space necessary for their work with spirit to succeed. Though “ritual” and “ceremony” are used interchangeably today, they are not the same. Ritual (seance) and ceremony are two powerful and distinct shamanic tools for creating change through the intervention of spirit in human affairs.

In ritual the energy spirals upward, toward spirit; it is unpredictable and uncontrollable. The shaman sets the


Rig Veda
The Rig Veda is a sacred book of Indo-Aryan hymns first recorded in Sanskrit approximately 3,500 years ago. It is the oldest still-extant book of the ancient Aryans, written after they began migrating from the steppes of Eurasia into the Indus Valley. Soma is an ecstasy-inducing plant, or entheogen, revered as a god and named in the hymns. However, the actual plant that is “Soma” is a mystery.

In Soma: Divine Mushroom of Immortality, R. Gordon Wasson writes that amanita muscaria, a mushroom used by shamans to induce shamanic trance states, was the original source of Soma. Wasson based his theory on linguistic and literary evidence and on the similarity between unique characteristics of the entheogen and the altered state of consciousness it induces and those of Soma experiences described in the Rig Veda.

intention, creates the container, calls in the spirits, and surrenders to the ritual process. The participants don’t know what is going to happen. That is the uniqueness of ritual and the magic. Ritual is a call to the Unknown and that gives ritual the power to heal us.

In a successful ceremony the energy spirals downward, toward the earth, drawing spirit into the community. Ceremony is essentially the same each time and that is the power of ceremony. It allows humans to make adjustments to correct what is taking place in the visible world, on the surface, that can be seen and observed. In ceremony it is the familiar form and familiar experience of the Divine that empowers it to build community, ease the heart, calm the mind, nourish the soul, and to bring people into the same time and space with one another.

Shamans use ritual to call on the spirit world to help achieve goals that the people cannot achieve in any other way. The shaman opens a sacred space, invites spirit in to help do something, and then closes the space when the sacred activity is complete. Shamans use ritual to create the conditions for sacredness. It is the spirits themselves that make sacredness real.

In ritual the humans are openly admitting to the spirit world that they need help with whatever they are facing as individuals or as a community. Through ritual the humans can put what they are overwhelmed by in the hands of spirit which makes it possible for things to be done better.

When humans invoke the spirit world they initiate a different context or condition for reality. Through ritual humans have superhuman help and superhuman witnesses. The shaman and the participants take the initiative to spark the process then they surrender control to allow the spirits to produce an unexpected result.

Uniqueness
Each shamanic ritual is unique because the reason for ritual is never exactly the same twice, nor are the resources the shaman draws on. Comparing, for example, two depossession (exorcism or extraction) rituals, there will be at least the following variables: two different possessing spirits who are possessing for two different reasons in two different people who have received the possessions for two different reasons. Furthermore, the shaman draws the energies into the ritual from things that are always changing: the spirit world, Nature, society, weather, people, animals, even the illnesses keep changing. Therefore, shamans must renew the form of rituals to keep them alive and effective.

The form of a ritual changes in response to many different variables as directed by the shaman’s helping spirits. However, the functional elements of the ritual, the ritual structure, must remain the same if the ritual is to be effective and safe. The ritual structure is consistent. The actions taken within this structure and the relative importance of each step varies depending on a range of variables, the foremost being the type of ritual to be performed.

Shamanic rituals lose their efficacy when simply repeated or imitated. Without an understanding of the important variables, including the original intention, the necessary preparation, and the worldview within which the ritual is held, imitation will not engage the ritual process. Exact repetition is only effective if the situation remains exactly the same, which is highly unlikely in an ever-changing world. As the variables change the efficacy of any repeated ritual will diminish.

Codifying Rituals
When the forms of ritual are codified, ritual can no longer serve it’s intended purpose, which is to open a portal in time and space between the physical and spiritual worlds and to access the Unknown. Without the ability to change the ritual to serve the specific needs of a specific situation, the shaman loses the creativity and power of ritual.
Codifying the results of ritual can be advantageous when it allows humans to build, preserve, and pass on huge bodies of information over time. This is particularly important when used to collect plant remedies, physical therapies, and healing songs, chants, and dances. In this way humans have learned complex healing arts like the medicinal value of thousands of plants in the rainforest or all of the acupuncture points, their interrelationships, and treatments.

Codifying ritual turns ritual into an empty performance that are nothing more than a series of actions practiced by rote that never actually result in accessing spirit and focusing that energy on an intended outcome. If the shaman cannot access spirit for instructions, rituals stop living. The information that was a living communication with spirit, becomes dogma. Those who hold it tend to defend its “rightness” without understanding its deeper source and meaning. As a result, the sacred in the lives of the people begins to die.

There are rituals that have been codified and turned into effective ceremony. The ritual no longer serves its intended purpose as ritual, however it can serve a new purpose as ceremony.

Elements of Ritual
There are essential elements of ritual that the humans are responsible for creating. They are: invocation, communication, structure, and opening and closing the ritual space. For a gathering to rise to the level of a ritual, the spirit world must be invited in. Once in, spirit provides new answers and energies to solve human problems. When the spirit world is not accessed, the humans are on their own to solve their problems.

Ritual involves authentic, real time communication with spirit. The shaman is there to take all the steps necessary to create sacred space in a safe way, to access spirit, and to interpret the communication. The shaman is responsible for orchestrating all the elements of the ritual structure, though all the steps are not always apparent to the participants. Finally, the shaman is responsible for opening the ritual space by invoking spirit and closing the ritual space by releasing or sending spirit away.

Purity and Secrecy in Ritual
In the ritual, spirit is called to intervene in human affairs. The presence of spirit makes the act and the space sacred. The entire process and all beings, both ordinary and nonordinary, must be safely contained. Therefore opening and closing the ritual space is important. Keeping the space away from any impurities and unwanted intrusions is equally important.

Often secrecy is necessary to safely contain all the energies of a ritual. For some rituals the content and purpose of the ritual must be kept secret because any disclosure tears open the sacred space. This release of energy affects everyone and disempowers the ritual itself. There is much about traditional shamanism that we will never know for this reason. The Keepers of Ritual in many cultures went to their graves with these secrets during the time of the persecution of shamans.

Ritual is the art of the shaman. The medium of this art is the invisible energies of the spirit world. Through ritual the shaman moves these energies between the worlds to create the potential for change beyond that which humans can do for themselves.


Ritual Structure
Authentic, shamanic rituals are not repeated exactly the same way twice. The specifics of the form changes in response to many variables as directed by spirit. However, the functional
elements of the ritual, the structure, must remain the same if the ritual is to be effective and safe.

The following are seven general steps that form the structure of effective ritual. All the steps are important. None of the steps may be left out, though steps may be carried out in ways that appear insignificant or invisible to the audience.

**Purpose Is Determined**
The purpose of the ritual is determined by the shaman and/or a council. Depending on the scope and the severity of the problem the shaman may determine the purpose of the ritual through divination or a series of divinations. Participants may take part in determining the purpose of the ritual and/or the shaman may select participants according to the purpose.

**Opening Sacred Space**
The shaman determines the location of the ritual and cleanses the space. That space is now removed from ordinary activities until the ritual is closed.

**Purification and Preparation**
The shaman and all participants make preparations and are cleansed before they enter the sacred space. Once in, participants can not leave until the ritual is closed.

**The Spirits Are Called In**
The shaman calls in the spirits appropriate to the purpose of the ritual. The shaman may use the participants or a chorus to aid in calling in the spirits, usually through song, music, chanting, or dancing.

**Communication with the Spirits**
The shaman enters trance and communicates with the spirits. The shaman is directed by spirit to move the energies and/or to guide the participation of those present. Through the shaman's work in trance, the participants come into the presence of Spirit.

**Gratitude and Closing Sacred Space**
The shaman and participants thank the spirits for their intervention in human affairs and the shaman releases the spirits. The shaman closes the sacred space completing the ritual.

**Reintegration**
The shaman instructs participants in the integration into their daily life and community of new energies or new perspectives gained in the ritual.

The spirits are always sent away symbolically, not dismissed. The shaman clarifies that the sacred purpose for which they are gathered is complete and that the humans are ready to resume normal life. When spirits are not thanked and sent away properly, they invent ways to remind the people that they are still there. Ancestor spirits tend to create major accidents or destruction. Nature spirits tend to create conflicts. Thus the whole ritual structure is essential to assure that the ritual is successful and safe.

If the purpose of the ritual is healing, actual healing takes place between the fourth and sixth steps. In the fourth step the shaman enters into the trance state necessary for the healing. In the fifth step the shaman begins to communicates with spirit, usually beginning with a diagnosis. As the ritual continues action is taken by spirit through the shaman to restore the client to health and harmony. When the healing is complete the helping spirits are thanked and released, sending all spirit elements back into the spirit world before the final closure of the healing ritual. Though the healing is only a small part, it will not be successful without all the steps of the ritual.

The ritual structure is consistent, though more or less detail may arise in any step as the shaman is directed by spirit. The actions taken within this structure and the relative importance of each step varies depending on the type of ritual being performed. The openings and closings are always important for the safety of all involved.

Roadman
A roadman is a leader of the peyote ceremony performed as practiced in the Native American Church. The roadman is the Keeper of the ceremony who offers the peyote sacrament. A roadman is not a shaman, however, a shaman can also be a roadman.

Rock Art
Ethnographic history ties rock art sites to shamans and the process of acquiring supernatural powers and helping spirits. Neuropsychological modeling and an increased understanding of the stages of trance has revealed a better understanding of the content, function, and origins of the art.

Prehistoric rock art was assumed to be part of primitive hunting magic or astronomical observations. However, there is no ethnographic evidence to support the theory that the art resulted from either practice. A reexamination of the rock art in the context of historic ethnography and neuropsychological modes has revealed that the art is most likely derived from trance states, particularly those of the shaman.

Many of the central characters of the rock art scenes are shamans. It is possible that creating the art was a way that the shaman communicated or illustrated his or her altered state of consciousness experience. This hypothesis is supported by the practice of applying new paintings over older works, implying that the act of painting was more important than the art itself. It is also possible that the illustrations are a “road map” of sorts for the uninitiated to follow as they enter trance for the first time.

San rock art, for example, is filled with representations of the visionary imagery perceived by shamans in various stages of trance. Generally speaking, there are three distinct stages of trance that are distinguished by the distinctly different qualities of visual phenomena. Images from these three stages are seen in the rock art of Africa and Europe.

Luminous lines, zigzags, grids, vortexes, and spots of lights most likely represent phosphenes, the visual sensations associated with the early stages of trance. Arcing rainbows, crescents, or corona like images, along with vague animal images are characteristic of the transitional stage as the trance state deepens. The part animal/part human beings, or Therianthropes, and the spirit forms of animals and humanoids so characteristic of rock are also characteristic of the visual experience in deep trance. Though historically mistranslated as monsters or demons, these spirit beings are the source of power that the shaman seeks when entering trance.

Different styles in the art also reflect the predominant trance states used by the shamans of the regions in which the art is found. For example, in the Great Basin region of North America shamans worked primarily in deep dream states. The images here are rendered in a stylized fashion in that region. In contrast, shamans in the Southern California region often induced trance with Datura, the plant hallucinogen. The art there is rendered in a highly innovative, bizarre style reflecting the more hallucinogenic nature of that trance state.

Rock art is most likely derived from trance states; however those trance states are not necessarily all the same nor are all the artists necessarily shamans. The images are just as likely to be from the altered state experiences of non-shamans engaged sacred activities like vision quests, initiation into adulthood, or dream incubation.


Rope Trick
A term used in the literature to refer to the shaman’s mysterious release from
bindings and blanket in which he is firmly bound during the Spirit Lodge ritual. The shamans explain that the spirits summoned in the ritual untie the shaman. See also Shaking Tent Ceremony and yuwipi.

Runes
Runes are the symbols of the major magical alphabet of central and northern Europe, usually carved on wood pieces or stone’s. The runes are more than an alphabet for the transmission of information through words; they encapsulate an array of symbolic meanings that go far beyond our familiar, linear communication of information. The runes were part of a mystery, spiritual in nature, that connected intimately with the inner secrets of magic. The shamans of central and northern Europe used the runes primarily for divination, problem-solving, and magic. They continued to be used for magical formulae throughout the Middle Ages in northern Europe even after shamanic practices were driven underground by the spread of Christianity and organized religion.

The meaning of the words for rune in Old Celtic, Welsh and English is “to whisper” and in modern Irish the word rún means “secret” or “resolution.” The root words for rune all show the traditional connection of the runic alphabet to its use as a divination and decision-making tool.

Like the characters of other Magical Alphabets (the Greek alphabet, the Celtic oghams, the Hebrew alphabet of the Kabbalah, etc.) each individual runic character has not only a name and sound, but they also represent many different objects that express the dynamics of specific qualities. For example, the runes engraved or inlaid into weapons record the weapon’s name and the magical qualities of that weapon, while the runes found on other artifacts are considered to be magical formulae for healing or love.

The rune symbols hold many layers of meaning. Like the ogham alphabet each rune is associated with a tree, which expresses the quality of the rune. Traditionally, the runes are also associated with gods, goddesses, the elements, seasons, and various qualities of family, community, and lifeforce or power.

Initiation into the secrets of the shamanic or the bardic professions gave the initiate an understanding of deeper layers of meaning in the runes and the ability to use them for magic. However, the runes could be used for problem-solving by anyone who could read them at even the simplest level of interpretation. When needed, a branch was broken from a fruit tree, cut into twenty-four slivers, and carved with the runic alphabet. The slivers were then cast onto a white cloth. Three were picked up, one at a time, and the meaning interpreted from the runic symbols drawn.

For more powerful acts of divination or magic, a rune casting ceremony was performed by a shaman, bard, magician or sorcerer. This ceremonial method was known as Raed Waen, which means “riding the wagon” and refers to the act of placing oneself in the position of deity on the sacred wagon from which all things—past, present, and future—can be viewed. To perform the Raed Waen, the rune caster must consider several aspects of the physical location to be used and timing of the ceremony. At a minimum these considerations included the axis of the space, its orientation to the four directions and the gods and goddesses who inhabit the directions, prevailing local forces of man, customs, and nature, the Nowl (navel) point created when the shoat (casting cloth) is spread, and the various ceremonial objects to be incorporated into the ceremony.

The actual casting is performed on a shoat, a white cloth whose dimensions are the length of the diviner from fingers to toes and the width of their outstretched arms. Functionally, the shoat serves to define the rune caster’s place in space and time. Shoats were used by
shamans for the same purpose in their healing rituals and long distance journeying work.

The myth of the origin of the first ten runic characters is associated with Odin, the Norse shaman-god of magic, poetry, divination, inspiration, and shamanic practices. Odin’s revelation of how humans could use the runes for divination (communication with the spirit world) came about in an act of self-sacrifice on the World Tree, Yggdrassil. Wounded by a spear, Odin hung himself upside down by one foot from Yggdrassil for nine days and nights without food or water. Odin’s insight on the ninth night was inspired by the rune sigils (symbols) themselves, believed to have been drawn first by the gods. In the moment that he grasped the new use, which was a synthesis of the relationship between the intuitive use of rune sigils and the rational phonetic alphabet, he fell from the tree, ending his suffering.

It does appear, historically, that many of the runes were derived initially from two basically separate sources. Though the origin of the runic alphabet has not been determined by scholars in the field, the concurrence of certain characters in ancient European rock carvings (the sigils used intuitively) and Mediterranean alphabets (the Phoenician Ahiram used rationally) makes it plain that two sources were involved.

The runes together express the fundamental nature of the inner structure of reality as these ancient peoples saw it. Each individual rune encapsulates a certain aspect of that existence; it is one piece of the fundamental nature of the whole of the Kosmos. The meaning of each of the runes is fixed, as described in the rune poems, and plays apart in the whole reality described. However, each new day brings new experiences, new developments, and new relationships, all ultimately new expressions of the inherent structure of reality. The fixed runic meanings take on fresh significance in relation to the new circumstances and gain another layer of interpretation. It is because of the eternally fluid nature of existence that the simple runic symbols have deep, multi-layered meanings that can convey the true nature of the Kosmos and thus provide a powerful and lasting tool for divination and magic.

There are three ancient Rune Poem texts: Anglo Saxon, Norwegian, and Icelandic. They each show us the specific meanings of the runes, or more correctly, the Futhark (a runic row), from earliest times. The earliest complete rune row dates from the early fifth century and is carved in a Gothic stone from Kylver, on the island of Gotland, Sweden. There have been a considerable number of runic alphabets, the oldest complete version is call the Elder Futhark or Common German Futhark.

The Elder Futhark has twenty-four characters, collected into three groups of eight, called aetts. Runes are read from the bottom of the center to the top, down the right side, and up the left. The order of the Elder Futhark is fixed. To alter the order would be to disrupt and render the pattern meaningless, for they are in a precise sequence directly related to the cycles of time. Historically, the runes remained almost unaltered in order, though not in number of characters.

The following is a brief summary of the symbolic meaning of the twenty-four runes of the Elder Futhark. Alternative names are in parentheses.

The first rune of all runic alphabets is Feoh, meaning cattle. Literally, cattle refers to movable and negotiable wealth, unlike the homestead or other inherited wealth. Symbolically Feoh signifies wealth that can be traded or exchanged. Thus Feoh represents both the accumulation of this two-fold power—physically controlling the wealth and economically controlling the trade—and the responsibilities that ownership brings. Feoh also warns against greed and envy, the problems that arise from this type of wealth.

The second rune, Ur, means auroch, the extinct wild ox, a symbol of the
raw, impersonal, tameless power of wild cattle. Ur symbolizes the limitless power of the universe, the awesome \textit{embodiment} of unlimited creative potential. Ur is a symbol of the power of collective will because its power, irresponsible by nature, ensures that it can never be restricted to a single individual. Magically Ur brings good fortune, collective strength, and personal success measured in terms of common good.

\textit{Thorn} (Thurisaz) denotes the resistant and protective qualities of the thorn tree. Mythologically, \textit{Thorn} signifies the defensive powers of Mjölnir, the Hammer of Thor, symbolic of the power that resists everything that threatens the natural order of things. \textit{Thorn} symbolizes the willful application of the generative principle and the creative \textit{energy} of the masculine as it flows within the natural order of things.

The fourth rune, \textit{As} (Asa, Ansuz), signifies the divine force in action. As represents the \textit{Ash} tree, which in Norse tradition is the World Tree, Yggdrassil, the cosmic axis of the universe. This rune symbolizes the divine power that oversees the maintenance of order in the cosmos.

\textit{Rad} (Raed, Rit) refers to riding, implying both horsemanship and sexual intercourse, and represents all forms of formalized, directed activity. Rad signifies the necessity to channel our energies in an appropriate manner to achieve the results we desire and emphasizes the necessity to be in the right place at the right time to perform the appropriate act.

\textit{Ken} (Cen, Kennaz) means the chip of pine wood that burns to illuminate the house. The rune represents illumination, bringing light into darkness, and the transformation necessary to achieve it. Mystically, \textit{Ken} represents the creation achieved through the union of two separate entities and the transformation that creates the third which did not exist before. Ken calls forth of the inner light of \textit{knowledge} gained only through transformation, giving it the second meaning of regeneration through death.

\textit{Gyfu} (Gebo) means gift and signifies the unifying effect that a gift makes between the donor and the recipient. \textit{Gyfu} is the quality personified in The Norse goddess Gefn, the bountiful giver. \textit{Gyfu} expresses the feminine qualities of linking seemingly separate people in common bond or the link between a human and the divine.

The eighth rune is \textit{Wyn} (Wunnaz, Wunjo) and is the last run of the first \textit{aett}. Shaped like a wind vane, \textit{Wyn} represents the joy that arises from one's ability to remain in harmony with the flow of events. It is the rune of fellowship, shared aims, and general well-being. \textit{Wyn} represents the balance that must be maintained in order to lead a sane and happy existence and to fulfill our wishes and desires without dilation or attachment.

\textit{Hagel} (Haegl), meaning hail, begins the second \textit{aett}. The structure of hail and the results of its storms are symbolic of the results of the forces which arise from the nature of the Kosmos rather then the results arising from human creativity. \textit{Hagel} symbolizes the disruptive agency working in the unconscious mind that causes needed change in established thought processes. It is associated with Heimdall, the watcher god whose Rainbow Bridge (Bifröst) links the \textit{Middleworld} with the \textit{Upperworld}, and Mordgud, the goddess who guards the bridge from the Middleworld to the \textit{Lowerworld}. \textit{Hagel} signifies the link between the worlds and between human consciousness and other planets.

The tenth rune \textit{Nyd} (Not) means need. It expresses the maxim that the ability to be released from need exists within the need itself. Thus, \textit{Nyd} calls for caution in action and the wisdom to look within oneself before acting.

\textit{Is} (Isa) means ice and refers to several aspects of the principle of static existence. Where fluid water becomes resistant ice, \textit{Is} signifies cessation of progress or termination of relationship.
Where solid ice is recognized as having the potential to melt and become fluid, Isis is associated with death. Where ice becomes the irresistible force of a glacier, Isis is symbolic of the power of inexorable forces.

Jera (Ger, Jara, Jer) means year or season and refers to the cycles of time. Jera symbolizes the fruitful results of doing things in the correct order and at the fitting time. The power expressed by Jera is that beneficial results always transpire when human activities are conducted according to the correct principles and are done in harmony with the natural order.

Eihwaz (Eoh) means yew tree. The yew, considered the tree of death and rebirth was sought for making bows and the staves of spears. Eihwaz is symbolic of the dual power of protecting the dead and of giving access to the Otherworld of spirit.

The fourteenth rune Peorth (Peord, Perthro) means game piece, dice, or dice cup. It is symbolic of the dynamic relationship between the action of the conscious free will and the constraint of existing circumstances. Just as circumstances often inspire innovation, Peorth is the power of the manifestation of that which was formerly concealed. In this sense it represent the fertile womb of the All Mother which brings into existence the world.

Elhaz signifies the elk and the sedge plant, both noted for their ability to protect. Elhaz is considered the most powerful of the runes for protection against those influences which we find in conflict with ourselves. Spiritually it denotes our conflict with ourselves in our aspiration toward divine qualities.

Sigel (Sig, Sowilo) means sun and represents the power of the sacred solar disc and the vital qualities of daylight. Sigel is symbolic of clear vision and ready accomplishment in the physical or spiritual plane. It also represent the conscious magical will at work in a selfless way, bringing the strength to resist the powers of death and disintegration. The last rune of the second aett, it is considered the rune of victory.

Beginning the final aett, Tyr (Tiwaz, Ziu), is named after the sky god of central and northern Europe and is considered the rune of justice. Tyr represents the qualities of steady, reliable, positive regulation resulting from just rule as well as the self-sacrifice of the ruler necessary in order to rule justly. Thus the rune denotes the essential relationship between successful accomplishment and the sacrifice necessary to succeed.

The eighteenth rune Beorc (Birkana, Bar) means birch tree. The birch, the traditional tree cut for the central maypole of the Beltaine festival on May 1, is the ancient northern European symbol of purification and regeneration. Signifying regeneration and new beginnings, the rune's powers are related to the Earth goddess, Nerthus, the creative energy of the feminine.

Ehwaz (Eh) means horse and refers to the intuitive bond between horse and rider, not the action of riding as signified in the rune Rad. Symbolic of the combination of two, the underlying power of Ehwaz is the trust and loyalty necessary to accomplish the task of life our soul has arrived here to do.

Man (Mannaz) is the rune of the human being and the basic nature present in every person. The rune denotes the full range of human experience and expression, without which the full potential of our lives cannot be realized.

The twenty-first rune, Lagu signifies water in all its aspects and is symbolic of the ever-changing nature of existence. Central to this rune is the irresistible power of growth, which is always cyclical and fundamental in all matter. The flow implied in Lagu signifies the medium through which humans pass in life and the inherent risk in that passage. Lagu cautions that balance is attained through accepting the ebb and flow of nature and the cycles of growth.

The twenty-second rune, Ing (Ingwaz), is named after the god Ing, the male consort of Nerthus, goddess of fertility and nurturance. Ing guards the
hearthfire (inglenook) and the rune has long been used for protection of households and as a symbol of light. The masculine character of Ing represents both the type of energy that must accumulate slowly over time before it can be released in one enormous burst and the responsibility for the consequences of such a release of power.

The twenty-third rune, Odal (Odil Ethil, Ethel), means ancestral land, or the homestead of the family. This rune represents the qualities of belonging, togetherness, ancestral heritage, and unique familial characteristics passed down through the generations. The rune is symbolic of the innate qualities, both material and spiritual, within anything.

The twenty-fourth and final rune of the third aett is Dag (Dagaz), which means day. Dag is the rune of the bright day, with the sun at its zenith and the season in midsummer. Carrying the central message that Spirit is in all things, Dag is the rune of light, health, radiance, and prosperity. Spiritually, it is the rune of cosmic consciousness and the joy and strength found in any source of divine light. As the end of the cycle, Dag is also a beginning. It is a door, symbolic of the door that lies at midsummer when half the light is rising and half the light is declining.

Various rune poems have included up to thirty-three rune symbols. As with all alphabets, there are many variant forms, for example the Danish or Norse variations. The eight characters, drawn from different alphabets and different historical times, can be considered a fourth aett. They are Ac, Os, Yr, Ior, Ear, Calc, Stan, and Gar.

When using the twenty-four Elder Futhark runes there are also reversed meanings to be considered. If the rune is drawn in an inverted position then the meaning is generally reversed. This applies also to the Anglo-Saxon twenty-nine rune system. With the thirty-three runes of the Northumbrian system, or the Thirty-eight runes of the extended system, there is only one reading for each rune. These combinations of possibilities increase the already rich complexity of interpretation. See also Tree of Life.

Saami
The First People of Northern Scandinavia, also called Lapps by outsiders. Samiland, their homeland, encompasses the northern portions of what is now Finland, Sweden, Norway, and the northwestern corner of Russia.

The most important tool of the Saami nostide (shaman) is his drum. From the late 17th to the middle of the 18th century, drums, drumming, and all related shamanic activities were forbidden and effectively suppressed in an effort to break the spirit and erase the culture of the Saami people. The drums of the Saami were confiscated and destroyed by fire. The Scandinavian courts of law imposed severe penalties and heavy fines on those who kept their drums. Some were flogged or burned at the stake.

Unfortunately, the majority of the owners of magical drums were the heads of families, fathers whose role it was to function as the family shaman. Many fathers and their eldest sons were taken from their families and shot simply because it was their tradition to solve practical problems by using their drums to ask their guardian spirits for guidance.

In contrast to the family shaman, the nostide is a shaman as defined in this volume. The nostide had greater knowledge and ability to control his gaddse (guardian spirits) and saivo (power animal). This gave him greater access to more powerful spirits than the ordinary man who acted as a passive medium, receiving and interpreting messages from ancestor spirits.

The Saami nostide share a fundamental ideology and many healing techniques based on the practice of soul flight with the shamans of other circumpolar peoples. The following are the elements of Siberian shamanism not practiced by the Saami: performing transference rites to cure epidemics, officiating ceremonies involving animal sacrifice, hunting magic, and the special costume empowered by spirit.

It is possible that the Saami nostide was more active in hunting magic when the Saami people were more dependent on hunting and fishing for food. In the beginning of the 17th century, the Saami transitioned into reindeer herding, a pastoral way of life which shifted their culture and economy in such a way that a scarcity of game was no longer a crisis to be solved by the shaman.

Saami Philosophy
The Saami look to the Sun as the source of life. The Sun gave birth to life. Its light falls from above into the bodies of the earth, the animals, the humans who all get heavier and heavier with the spark of life inside. The spark of life is in everything. When humans reconnect with the spark of life they can remember the Source of All Things and be Whole. Therefore, the Saami also believe that humans have to go into their own darkness to release the spark of life from that darkness.

In practice the reindeer herding Saami pursue this Wholeness, which they believed is created within the individual by balancing the Mother/Father dyad internally. In this principle the “Mother” is symbolic of the qualities one is given at birth that are innate to one’s nature. The life issues that arise are ones of nourishment and internal creation. The solutions are found in the Moon Path, in the Moon Mythology, and in the journey into the spirit realms.

The “Father” is symbolic of doing, speaking, setting priorities, and taking action to bring one’s innate nature into full manifestation. The issues that arise are ones of manifestation and creation
in the world. The solutions are found in the Sun Path, the Sun Mythology, and in action in the physical realm.

Moon Path
Traveling the Moon Path demands the journey through the body and out, into dreams, intuition, and altered states of consciousness. The Moon Path involves death and the driving rhythm of the drum to open the doors to perception. The helping spirit is the Moon Woman, or Moon Hunter, and the cycles of the moon. She is the big hunter, carrying bow and spear, stalking the light and losing it.

Sun Path
Traveling the Sun Path is the waking of the Dreamer. It involves remembering the good, recreating the body from the inside out, and expressing the dreams to manifest them. The Sun is the circle that tells of the journey of getting home. It is the mythology of being called back to the light. The helping spirit is the Sun, the sunray that reaches across the room, walking out in Nature, softening intellect, sustaining good humor, and opening to creativity.

The Crystal Bridge
The Crystal Bridge, or rainbow, is the connection between the Sun and the Moon, like the corpus callosum that connects the two hemispheres of the brain. It is a bridge of white light given by the sun to allow people a way to create balance. White animals are believed to be connected with the Crystal Bridge.

Tree of Life
The Saami Tree of Life is superimposed with an animal cosmology. Both are used to diagnose illness and the necessary remedy for the patient to bring balance to his or her life. The tree is seen as a metaphor for life development as a whole. Illnesses, weakness, or pain results in the places where life development has stagnated.

Different parts of the body are associated with different animals which are used as metaphors for the nature of the stagnation in that area of the body. Strengthening the relationship between the patient and the animal is an important part of the healing process.

For example, the roots of the tree are associated with the Bear who wakes from her long dream of hibernation and must find the earth. A Bear stagnation is one in the foundational energy that holds the structure and form of the patient's soul. Cultivating a relationship with the spirit of Bear would be a strong aspect of the patient's healing.

The Dragon rises from the foundation of the Bear through its ability to raise the inner fire. The inability to nourish the spark of life and raise inner fire is the next place of stagnation. Cultivating the energies of touch, feeling, and inner awareness associated with the Dragon are an aspect of this healing process.

When inner fire is healthy within the patient then the next place of stagnation is the ability to act as an individual in the world. These energies are associated with the Wolf who is a master of the ability to rise up, go out, and hunt. The spirit of the Wolf teaches the patient about responsibility, functioning in the here and now, and establishing hierarchy or order, like the social order of the pack.

Once order is established the next place of stagnation is in the ability to express the power of the heart and the ability to sacrifice. These attributes are associated with the Reindeer who carries the moon/sun silver/golden horns and shines on everyone equally with no need for hierarchy. Through cultivation of a relationship with the Reindeer spirit the patient learns to gives of him/herself, to create an ideal life that is flexible, free of revenge and at peace with darker side of human nature.

The Reindeer's horns are paths to the Upperworld. Once a connection to the spirit world is established, the Bird energy emerges that is associated with expressing sight, vision, and the capacity for spiritual insight. Without this energy the individual stays closed to
spirit and his or her cultivation of “true sight” stagnates along with the individual’s maturation into a full adult in Saami society.

Drum

Saami shamans traditionally paint their drums with a representation of their inner cosmology, which displays the Saami universe holistically in both geography and ideology. In other words, they paint their drums with a multidimensional a map of their experience of the terrain of the spirit world and their own orientation within it. Saami nodide create some of the most ornate drum skins found in shamanism anywhere.

Saami drums are double headed, frame drums with both faces of the skin covered in images. The images on each drum and each side of a single drum are unique, although they always include the sun and moon, the World Tree, and the rainbow or crystal bridge in some fashion. This microcosm of the spirit world depicts the three realms of the Upperworld, Middleworld, and Lowerworld and the figures of many of the significant beings the Saami encounter regularly in these realms. The design a nodide paints on his drum is believed to be given by spirit.

The drumming and singing are used at the beginning of rituals to summon the spirits into the ritual space and to embody them in the nodide’s drum. Drumming is used to induce trance for healings and divination and the drum itself is used as a tool to perform various types of divination that do not involve deep trance states.

The Saami used different rhythms as a code to speak to the spirit world. One rhythm was used to summon giants (raw energy), demons, chaos, or division. Another rhythm was used to summon ice, order, Odin (the Great Shaman from the Upperworld), or unification.

The bow was also used to induce trance states. A single string was strung on a reindeer antler and plucked to produce a monotonous, droning tone. The bow is considered “less demanding” than the drum as a means of trance induction and tended to be used for journeys to the Upperworld and/or at the nodide’s discretion.

Divination

Divinations in which the drum is the tool of divination were performed by the family shaman and the nodide. The “shaman” performed this technique either alone, together with a client, or with a group. The drum is held with the plane of the faces parallel to the plane of the floor. A moveable metal ring(s) or other kind of pointer or frog is placed on the top drum skin. The drum is beaten gently with the drumstick so that the pointer moves across the drumhead, but does not fall to the ground, though in certain circumstances the fall to the ground would be considered the answer.

The movement of the pointer in relation to the figures on the drum is interpreted as an answer. Of particular importance is whether or not the pointer stays at a certain figure as the drumming continues and the movement of the pointer in a clockwise or counterclockwise direction.

When a more extensive divination is necessary the nodide is able to combine this drum technique with the performance of a in deeper trance. In this case, the presence of others to sing continuously is important to support the nodide journey into the spirit world.

When the drum divination is complete the nodide begins to beat the drum in a stronger rhythm meant to induce trance. As he enters trance he lies back in an altered state of consciousness, allowing his soul to seek further information in the spirit world. Since the drumming has now stopped, it is important that the singers continue until the nodide’s soul has returned to his body. This method was most often used to diagnosis illness, to determine the appropriate remedy, and travel to a remote location.
Remedies derived from this type of divination often involved extracting a promise from the patient to make a specific sacrifice and then clarifying the kind of sacrifice: reindeer, bull, oxen, buck, ram, or other, what Storjunkare (wood or stone figure embodying a particular spirit) to make the sacrifice to, and where, on what mountain, to make it. Sacrifices were also made to Thor or the Sun for cures.

The Saami used divination to determine events at far off locations, luck or misfortune, location of game, diagnosis, remedies, and the type of sacrifice and to whom it should be offered.

**Acquiring Power**

Generally, the two forms of obtaining shamanic powers coexist among the Saami, as do the two types of shamans, family and **nođide**. The gift of shamanic talent is transmitted in a family and the powers are in part hereditary. This is particularly the case for the family shaman, the head of the family who engages in divination rituals to better guide his decision making for the family.

The **nođide**, the professional shaman's is granted power directly by the spirits, in particular Thor, the Sun, or the spirits of **dead shamans** among the Sájva-olmak. The spirits grant power to whomever they wish to bestow it to. The initial experience of the **call** is spontaneous, the spirit forcing itself into possession of the chosen one. Those who resist develop mental and physical illness, until they relent to the demands of the spirit.

Once the individual surrenders to the will of the spirits, they instruct the future shaman in the use of this power through dreams and **visions**. Saami shamans today still tell stories of their ancestors who were able to fly through the air and perform other displays of power.

**Helping Spirits**

The **helping spirits** in animal form play an important role in Saami shamanism. The **nođide** uses drumming, singing, and dancing to call the spirits into the ritual space, into the drum, and into the **nođide**'s body in preparation for the ecstatic journey. The dancing of the **nođide** often begins by imitating the movements and cries of the animal. As the dancing continues Saami **nođide** merge with their helping spirits and become wolves, bears, reindeer, fish, dragons, **birds**, etc.

**Secret Language**

In the course of his **training** the novice **nođide** has to learn the secret **language** that allows him to communicate with the spirits and **animal spirits** during his rituals. This secret language is learned from a master **nođide** or directly from spirits. This is the language of all Nature, of all life, from the time when all things were One.

**Healing**

Illness is believed to be caused by natural and/or supernatural causes. The role of the **nođide** is to restore balance within the individual, the community, or the world at large. Supernatural causes are primarily believed to be the **soul loss** of a person, group of people, a place, or thing.

The Saami **nođide** performed their healing rituals stripped to a breechcloth or entirely naked, like many North American Arctic peoples. Using drumming primarily and singing and dance, the **nođide** attained a deep trance state during which his soul descended into the Lowerworld to locate the lost souls the sick or to escort the soul of the dead to Sájva-ájmuo, the **Land of the Dead**.

The shaman's role after locating the lost soul was to engage in combat for the soul or to negotiate a sacrifice to be performed later by the patient in exchange for the soul. The journey to the Lowerworld and Sájva-ájmuo was the most common journey for the **nođide**. One of the Saami words for trance is “immersion,” signifying the importance of the underwater and lowerworld aspect of the **nođide**'s journey.

The Saami shaman's journeys to the Lowerworld began with a journey to a
mountain that functioned as the World Mountain. However, from there the nodide usually traveled down. The only remaining examples of the nodide journeying to the Upperworld are preserved in the late oral tradition. There does not appear to have been a prohibition to journeying up and the Tree of Life and World Mountain clearly provided access. There simply appears to have been a lack of need, interest, or records of these journeys.

**Costume**

Saami nodide perform without a costume. There are records of hats worn by the nodide adorned with stars that represented sexual power that has been transformed and released through the crown chakra.

**Storytelling**

The Saami have a rich history of storytelling. It is a form of teaching that has been used since the beginning of time. Among the Saami the stories are often sung. These singers possess a virtually endless fount of stories the central theme of which is the recreation and continuance of the sacred, and the relationship of the Saami people to the sacred in all things.


Gaup, Ailo, personal communication with Saami Shaman, April 1995.


**Sacred Language**

Shamans in many cultures speak a sacred language, usually unintelligible to others, while in trance. In anthropology “sacred language” refers to a unique shamanic language employed to speak with helping spirit(s). For example, the Lakota call it hanbloglagia and the Sukuma people call it kinaturu to distinguish it from common language. The Chukchee, Tungus, Lapps, Yakuts, Semang pygmies, North Borneo cults,
Brazilian Umbanda cult, the Zulu Amandiki cult, the Trhi-speaking priests of Ghana, and the Hudson Bay Eskimos are all examples of peoples whose shamans speak (or spoke) in a special language while in trance.

It is believed that in the beginning after the First Shaman began to teach others, that these shamans extended their knowledge of extraordinary things as they helped humankind. They also developed a sacred language, a language of tones and frequencies that was only used for communicating with the spirits. It was taught to a very small number of persons and even they did not use it in everyday speech.

In some cultures the shaman's sacred language is composed of old words which are related to the common language. These shamanic languages are partially intelligible to the ceremonial audience without translation. In other cultures only the shaman can understand the sacred language and one of the shaman's assistants must translate for the audience.

In other cultures the process of communication and translation is even more complex. Among the Inuit, for example, the shaman works in trance with a special helping spirit whose sole role is to interpret all the other spirits for the shaman. Similarly, Mikenak the turtle spirit, takes the shaman's questions to the spirits and returns with answers during the Shaking Tent Ceremony of the Ojibwa.

Art is an important extension of the shaman's sacred language. There are aspects of the sacred that cannot be translated into words, but can be expressed through a visual or performing art, like sand painting or song. For this reason, art is used by shamans as a healing tool and as an expression of the sacred qualities of their ecstatic experience. See also ecstasy and glossolalia.


Sacred Pipe

The sacred pipe is one of the most widespread power objects used by aboriginal North Americans in healing and prayer. The ritual smoking of tobacco with the sacred pipe is practiced alone as prayer or as part of the sweat lodge ceremony, or any of the other rituals and ceremonies practiced in North America.

The ritual smoking of any sacred pipe is an act of sending one's prayers directly to the source-of-all-things. If performed correctly, the ritual is a means of communication between the realms. Elaborate ceremony has evolved around the use of the sacred pipe, its handling, loading, and smoking. The pipe is activated by inserting the stem into the bowl. When inactive, the pipe is kept in two pieces, with the related paraphernalia, in a beautifully decorated, skin bag.

Smoking tobacco is a sacrament for the indigenous North American. The sacred pipe has evolved from its earliest tubular structure into many different forms in many different areas. Originally made from the straight leg bones of large mammals, the most common form now is carved from catlinite, or “pipestone,” a dark, red stone symbolic of the blood of the Ancestors and/or the buffalo. This mineral is found in only one location in the world, along Pipestone Creek in Minnesota, an area now protected as Pipestone National Monument. It is estimated that quarrying for pipestone at this site began as early as 1600.

One of the most powerful sacred pipes was brought to the Lakota by the spirit being and teacher White Buffalo Calf Woman. Her message is believed to
be directly from *wakan tanka* and the pipe remains with the people as a means to communicate directly with *wakan tanka*. This pipe and its *medicine bundle* are believed to be from between 1785–1800.

Shamans are among the acceptable pipe carriers. The sacred pipe is alive and is treated with the utmost respect. It is an object of great supernatural power. Shamans who carry a sacred pipe believe that through the proper use of the sacred pipe, good health, protection, abundant game and crops, and control of the weather can all be assured.

Pipe carriers usually used a blend of tobacco and other herbs or plants. Each pipe carrier gathers the plants, prepares the components, and creates his own mixtures. Traditionally these mixtures do not contain psychoactive ingredients. Power of the sacred pipe is more akin to shamanic prayer than to shamanic trance. See also sacred.


Sacred Space

Sacred space is physical space in which spirit is alive, present, and available to humans who share that space. Shamans open sacred space by calling spirits into a circle of humans in order to help achieve goals that cannot be achieved in any other way. The shaman creates the conditions for sacredness. The sacredness is created by the spirits themselves. The shaman opens a space, invites spirit in to make it sacred, and closes the space when the sacred activity is complete.

Sacred space is necessary for shamanic work. The most minimal role of sacred space is to provide a place where power objects and other sacred paraphernalia can be laid out and protected. The greatest role of sacred space is to provide space for wounded souls to be laid out and protected so that they can be healed and transformed by the spirits through the efforts of the shaman.

Sacred space is an in between place, no longer truly ordinary or non-ordinary, but touching both. It is ordinary space permeated by the energies of the Otherworld. Different laws operate in the Otherworld. The shaman will be able to operate according to those Otherworldly laws within the sacred space if it has been properly set up.

Using sacred space, the shaman creates a different context or condition for human transformation by bringing into the spirit world. This space must remain a safe container for transformation in the way a mother's belly safely contains the transformation of the baby inside. Sacred space itself is shy. It must be kept free from impurities and unwanted intrusions.

It is essential that sacred space is closed with the same care through which it is opened. The spirit beings called into the sacred space must be thanked and released. The shaman tells the spirits that what the humans embarked upon is over and that they are ready to resume normal life. In this way the spirits are sent away symbolically, though not dismissed.

When sacred space is not closed well, the spirits will invent a way to remind the humans that the spirits are still there and the sacred space is still open. Ancestor spirits tend to create incidents of major accidents or destruction. Nature spirits tend to create incidents of conflict. See also ritual and shamanic healing.


Sacred Technologies
The various techniques used by shamans to enter into altered states of consciousness in which they come into contact with the Divine. It is in trance that the invisible world of spirit becomes visible for the shaman. Mastery of these techniques of ecstasy is the essential characteristic of shamanism. These techniques include, but are not limited to: dancing, drumming, and ingesting psychotropic plant medicines (entheogens). See also dance; drum; ecstasy; sacred.


Sacrifice
Sacrifice, which can be seen as an equivalent exchange of energies, is an essential element in shamanism. Sacrifice is exacted on several different levels.

Shamanic rituals often involve the actual sacrifice of an animal or object. In some cultures what is sacrificed distinguishes different kinds of shamans. Those who benefit from the shaman’s rituals must make sacrifices to restore balance with the spirit world. Finally, shamans experience great personal suffering and sacrifice to gain their power and to keep it.

Sacrifices, which range from the fee offered by the patient to the killing of an animal, are a usual part of shamanic rituals. The Dagara, for example, determine the necessary sacrifice for a ritual through divination. The appropriate sacrifice is always relative to the purpose of the ritual. For a ritual to be successful, the sacrifice must be correct. The spirits do not recognize inappropriate sacrifices. They will not take what they do not need. How the sacrificed animal dies contributes information to the overall divination and diagnosis of the situation.

Generally, animal (blood) sacrifices, are required in situations of disease or death. The blood sacrifice is offered to fend off or to placate a malevolent spirit or ghost whose presence is causing disease or death.

An animal is often sacrificed as part of funeral rites to free that animal’s soul to aid the deceased in his or her journey in the Otherworld. For example, the Sora sacrifice a buffalo and Siberian and Mongolian shamans sacrifice a horse or caribou. The shaman is called on to perform these sacrifices, because he or she alone can assure that the soul of the animal, as well as that of the deceased, finds safe passage to their right place in the Otherworld.

In some cultures shamans are distinguished by the types of sacrifices they perform. These distinctions are often translated as “black” and “white,” perhaps reflecting the bias of the reporter more than the sentiment of the culture. For example, the Yakut distinguish between oyun, male “shamans,” and udaghan, female shamans.

The udaghan enter trance to deal with malevolent spirits in the Lower-world who bring disease, starvation, and death. This work often necessitates animal sacrifices to protect the people. The oyun do not enter trance or make blood sacrifices. They attend to problems that can be resolved with lesser offerings, blessings, and prayers offered to the beings of the Upperworld.

The people who benefit from the shaman’s rituals must also make sacrifices in order to restore balance and harmony. All people are responsible for maintaining balance between the human and animal communities, and between the human and spirit communities. It is common for Eskimo shamans to return from divination journeys demanding of the audience full and immediate public disclosure of all transgressions against each other to restore balance and harmony in the community.

All people who partake in food, clothing, and shelter from the sacrifice of animal lives must honor that animal’s sacrifice in kind. An Eskimo shaman
explains that “the greatest peril of life lies in the fact that human food consists entirely of souls. All the creatures we have to kill and eat, all those we have to strike down and destroy to make clothes for ourselves, have souls, as we have.” The soul of the animal is honored in a feast of gratitude during which some sacrifice is made to show the spirits the sincerity of the human needs and thanks.

In some cultures the sacrificial offerings necessary to propitiate the spirits and restore the proper balance between the worlds are extreme. For example, Tukanoan shamans enter the spirit world and travel to the realm of the Master of Animals where the shaman asks permission to hunt and fish. Permission is granted for the price of a number of human souls whose soul-stuff must be sent into the realm of the Master of Animals. The shaman must pledge himself to kill this number of people, of his or a neighboring group, and perform the necessary rituals to send their soul stuff into the Master's realm. Though extreme, this practice did allow the Tukanoan people to maintain stable and sustainable populations for thousands of years.

Shamans experience great personal suffering and sacrifice to gain their power. The initial experience of death and rebirth, central to the shaman's initiation, is not a metaphor. The experience is literal and terrifying, leaving those who cannot find their way through the fear of death to “rebirth” either dead, insane, or diminished in some way for life.

The shaman's path demands continual sacrifice to maintain, rejuvenate, and develop power. Entering trance states is in and of itself dangerous for the shaman's soul who may have to do battle there. “Successful” cures often result in the shaman taking on the patient's illness and healing it in his or her own body. Many helping spirits exact a heavy toll from the shaman for their services in non-ordinary reality. Shamans are often forced to observe rigorous taboos in diet, behavior, and sexual practices to maintain their relationship with their helping spirits. A shaman who breaks a taboo, even unintentionally, may suddenly lose the power they have spent a lifetime cultivating.

Shamans are often required to sacrifice much of life that others take for granted. Jealous spirit “spouses” may prohibit marriage in ordinary reality. Women called into shamanism before childbearing may never be allowed to bear children. The strain of being available all day, every day, to people who are possessed and ill may be more than any non-shaman wants to deal with. The shaman's relationship with the helping spirits my frighten the uninitiated. So, the shaman may not be able to find a mate even if the spirits allow it. The life of the shaman is one of profound personal sacrifice that may or may not be balanced by the moments of ecstasy that arise from a working relationship with spirit.


**Salasacan**

The Salasacan people are Quechua-speaking Bolivians who were relocated in Ecuador. See also *cuy.*

**San**

A nomadic people of the Kalahari Desert, *Africa,* on the border of Botswana and Namibia in southern Africa. Men are hunters and women gather small animals and plants and report the signs and movement of game
to the men. Today only a few thousand of the estimated 62,000 San are of pure blood or follow their original way of life.

The San are the earliest aboriginal inhabitants of South Africa. Some are believed to have been there for 40,000 years. The San left paintings and engravings in the stone where they stopped to rest, live, and conduct ritual. Their paintings were made with natural dyes, like carbon iron oxide, and yellow ochre, mixed with blood or animal fat.

These rock paintings, some made at least 10,000 years ago, appear to document shamanic roots in what is now the great diversity of African spirituality. The paintings show shamans, “big shamans,” individuals dancing ecstatically, and individuals in ecstatic trance states. The painting also show individuals in a trance state receiving powers to attract game, heal illness, and control the weather.

The San originally lived in the central plains as is evidenced in the paintings and carvings that remain. The San began to be pushed from these more desirable lands in 500 A.D. by the Nguni who migrated from the north. The San did not permanently leave the area for the Kalahari until after the arrival of the European settlers in the mid 19th century. See also art; colors; Ju|'hoansi.

Sand Painting

Sand paintings, like those created by Navajo shamans, are healing tools. The paintings are made from colored sand and powders made from ground rocks and precious metals. Each grain of sand is charged with intention and blessings through the ritual process, then carefully put into place in the picture. These paintings are delicate and impermanent. Their power comes from the spirit energy that is called into the painting through the intention and focus of hours of painstaking creative work.

The shaman’s sand paintings are spontaneous creations designed by spirit for that particular healing of that individual at that time. They are a type of medicine. No two paintings are the same.

Sand paintings are generated from the unique perspective the altered state of consciousness gives the shaman on the illness, the patient, and the patient’s relationship to the world and the spirit world. They are two-dimensional images of this multi-dimensional world perspective of an individual and his or her interconnectedness to all things. By creating a sand painting, the shaman is painting a picture of the healthy state of interconnectedness and drawing the individual into it.

Traditional sand paintings that are always exactly the same are also effective healing tools. They can be used as a mandala, for example, to focus meditation. The Gelupa monks who make the Kalachakra sand painting spend years memorizing texts and learning how to construct their traditional sand-painting exactly as the first painting was constructed. See also colors, Dineh, and Ikhááh.


Sangoma

The sangoma (isangoma, zangoma) is one of three classes of traditional Zulu practitioners who each perform different functions of the shaman. The sangoma is responsible for the mastery of skills necessary to maintain a healthy relationship between the natural and supernatural realms for his or her community.

A sangoma works with the Amadlozi, or ancestral spirits, who are ever present; however an altered state of consciousness is usually necessary to communicate with them directly. Umbilini is the primal source of the sangoma’s power. Through its arousal the sangoma enters the altered states necessary to
connect with the ancestors for divination, diagnosis, and healing.

The sangoma uses several methods to arouse the umbilini. Using drumming, the sangoma experiences the umbilini heating, rising up the spine, and bursting through the top of the head. In this aroused, energetic state, the sangoma is able to call upon the hidden powers of his or her soul to join with the great powers and helping spirits of the unseen world. Merged in this way, the sangoma draws knowledge from “the Hidden Lake,” a huge unseen lake in the spirit world where all the knowledge of the universe, past, present, and future, is found.

The sangoma’s knowledge and understanding must encompass the context, history, and mythological antecedents of his or her skills because true power resides in the universe as a whole, not in any single ritual or act of magical efficacy. Thus the sangoma’s awareness and concern is broader and deeper than that of the sorcerer. The sorcerer is merely a technician of magic who simply activates its force without awareness of or concern for the Whole.

When a sangoma disregards the whole and uses his or her skills to harm another, he or she becomes umtagatin zulu allmaloy insone, a doer of evil deeds and a sorcerer to be feared. Through knowledge of the universe and correct orientation within it, the sangoma’s power is exercised in a wholesome way. This way brings healing to the patient and to the world at the same time.

The Call—Ukutwasa

A sangoma is called to his or her profession by ancestral spirits. This experience is Ukutwasa, meaning coming out or emergence. This call often comes in a dream and manifests as an unexplained illness of the mind and body. This strange illness gradually progresses and remains untreatable by standard medicine. Characteristics of Ukutwasa include, but are not limited to; visions, both waking and sleeping, increased ability to see future events or through physical objects, experiences of dismemberment by animal spirits, and a sense of the self (ego) shifting into something different.

When the individual recovers from Ukutwasa he or she is recognized as a twasa, (novice, apprentice) and is apprenticed to a baba, (sangoma teacher). The twasa begins a long period of training and personal purification while continuing to fulfill all responsibilities to family and community for an individual of the same age and gender.

The sangoma’s training is a highly ordered, strictly regulated, process. Candidates must work their way up through twelve stages, or ranks. In each stage they learn to work with one of twelve “vessels” or types of spirits. Few sangoma succeed in mastering the twelfth and final stage to become a High sanusi.

Gender

Traditionally the sangoma is a woman. However, there are male sangoma, many of whom are gender variant or transformed shamans. The important factor is that the individual is called, regardless of gender, by the spirits through Ukutwasa.

Training

During the first period of training, a twasa learns the Umlando, the tribal and community history, mythology, and ceremonies. He or she learns how to prepare herbal medicines and interpret dreams. In addition the twasa must begin an intense, ongoing process of deep, personal work focused on eliminating base feelings, like jealousy and anger, from within his or her self.

Each twasa must create his or her own dingaka set for divination. The dingaka come from the bones of the animals sacrificed for the feasts prepared to honor the twasa’s successful completion in an area or level of his or her training. After each feast the twasa searches through the fire for an
unbroken bone. The bone’s are treated ceremonially, cleaned, and carved with sacred symbols. When the twasa has collected and decorated four dingaka, he or she can begin learning divination and diagnosis.

The baba teaches the twasa the techniques for using the full extent of his or her mental powers to enter trance and achieve union with the unseen world. The twasa learns to use drumming, meditation, proper breathing, and fasting as different means to summon and heat the umbilini and properly enter trance.

The twasa learns to use his or her trance states to diagnose illness, exorcise or remove tokoloshe (frightened ghosts), control the weather, and foretell the future. The twasa must also learn the techniques of counteracting tagati, the hexes placed on tribal members by witches or sorcerers.

The Ukukishwa Ceremony
Successful completion of a stage of training and initiation is honored with a feast during which a calf or goat is slaughtered. The sacrificial animal’s ena (soul) is offered to the ancestral enas to strengthen the twasa’s connection to the ancestors. The animal’s bladder in worn on the twasa’s head signifying the readiness of spirit to communicate through that individual. The ukukishwa ceremony is held when the apprenticeship is complete and the twasa is welcomed into the community as a sangoma.

Divination
The Zulu believe that the fact that an individual is ailing is evidence that the divine power of the universe has been misused. The sangoma must determine who (the client, someone else, or something else) has misused the power and how (counteract, uproot, avenge, or balance) to restore harmony to the universal energies involved.

Using dingaka bones for divination, the sangoma “throws the bones.” Both sangoma and patient blow on the dingaka, bringing the ancestral spirits of both people in to assist in the divination. Then the bones are thrown and their configuration interpreted by the sangoma. The dingaka are used to diagnose whether the illness or ailment is caused by witchcraft, sorcery, the presence of malevolent human or nature spirits, a broken taboo, loss of energy, or loss of a part of the patient’s soul, the most serious condition.

Healing
After diagnosing the cause, the sangoma will throw the bones again to prescribe treatment. Treatments include purification rituals, exorcism or extraction, soul retrieval, offerings, healing ritual, massage, or medicines like tea, snuff, salve, poultice, emetics, or powders.

The sangoma’s medicines have both medicinal and magical properties. A sangoma uses a variety of things; herbs, minerals, insects, bone fragments, feathers, roots, seeds, smoke, excreta, shells, and eggs, in their medicines and rituals.

Treating Physical Illness
The sangoma treats physical illnesses (headaches, heart disease, high blood pressure, etc.) with specific foods, lifestyle changes, and psychological work. The Zulu believe the power of the human mind can harm or heal. By acknowledging the power of the patient’s mind to harm himself through unexpressed thoughts and emotions, the sangoma works to balance these mental powers and restore internal harmony.

The sangoma also finds hidden objects, counters evil wishes against patients, and distinguishes between different types of “ghosts” to be exorcised. Some ghosts are gently persuaded to go where they will be more at home and no longer cause the humans discomfort. Noisy ghosts that throw things are expelled with more force by working with the humans they have attached themselves to.
Treats Mental Illness
In treating mental illness a sangoma distinguishes between three categories of madness; hopelessly mad, mad but able to be healed, and mad with Ukutuwasa, which the individual must resolve for him/herself. Sangoma treat both the physical and mental aspects of mental illnesses with herbs, abstinence from particular substances, life style changes, and/or psychological work. Most remedies also involve some way of using the patient's visions, illusions, or hallucinations as a lever to bring the patient back to sanity. For this work the sangoma must know how to communicate with people who are in involuntary altered states.

First Contact
The sangoma learns the oral history of the most ancient ancestors who came from the stars. He or she is trained to be able to relate to extraterrestrial phenomenon. The sangoma learns what rituals to perform and how to properly communicate, depending upon which type of extraterrestrial lands and where the landing occurs. See also Africa and iNyanga.


San Pedro
The San Pedro cactus, known as the Cactus of the Four Winds, grows in the temperate and warm zones of the central Andes of South America between 6,000 and 9,000 feet. It is used as a sacred hallucinogen by the indigenous peoples of Peru, who call it Huachuma, Bolivia where it is called Achuma, and Ecuador where it is called Aguacolla and Gigantón. In contemporary Peru it is called San Pedro after St. Peter, whom the Christians believe holds the keys to heaven.

Trichocereus pachanoi is a branched, columnar cactus with six to eight ribs (often spineless) that can grow up to twenty feet in height. The fragrant buds bloom at night, revealing seven to nine inch, funnel-shaped flowers with white inner segments, brick red outer segments, and greenish stamen-filaments. Trichocereus pachanoi grows wild and is cultivated widely in Peru, Ecuador, and Bolivia.

The indigenous people of the Andes recognize several “kinds” of San Pedro, distinguished by the number of ribs. Cacti with seven ribs are the least potent and most common. Cacti with four ribs are rare, considered the most potent, and believed to have special power because each rib corresponds with one of the “four winds.” The four winds and the four roads are supernatural powers associated with the four cardinal directions.

The use of Huachuma as an entheogen is one of the most ancient practices of the peoples of South America. There is archeological evidence that Huachuma was used by shamans more than 3,000 years ago in Peru. The association of Huachuma with the jaguar, anaconda, and trance states in South American art undoubtedly indicates that the cactus was used in ancient shamanic rituals. Huachuma is also associated in ancient art with the hummingbird, deer, and the sacred spiral of life, which are all symbols associated with the shaman and shamanic healing practices.

The ritual use of Huachuma was well established in the indigenous population of Peru when the Spanish arrived. The Spaniards, and the Roman Catholic Church in particular, were intolerant of these spiritual practices and suppressed the ritual use of Huachuma. The traditional practice was driven underground and the sacred role of San Pedro transformed.

The modern use of Huachuma, now called San Pedro, has been greatly influenced by Christianity. The spiritual center of the modern day San Pedro cult is
the highland town of Huancabamba. In the Andes above the town lies a series of sacred lagoons known as Las Huaringas which are renowned for their curative powers, and for being the home of the greatest curanderos and the source of the most powerful healing plants.

**Use**

Traditionally the shaman, the patient, or both may drink *Huachum* during the healing ritual, which lasts through the night. The shaman uses *Huachum* to enter a trance state in which he or she can access the spirit world for divination and diagnosis. There are reports that *Huachum* enables the shaman to assume another's identity. The magic available through this sacred plant goes far beyond divination and curing.

The shaman's intention in giving San Pedro to the patient is to enable an opening of the heart and a blossoming of the patient, like the night flower of the cactus, into a higher state of energy and health. In the trance state patients are sometimes contemplative and introspective and sometimes quite wild, breaking into spontaneous dance or simply writhing on the ground. It is the shaman's role to facilitate the patient's revelations from these experiences.

In modern curing ceremonies San Pedro is used for divination and to heal sicknesses, like alcoholism and insanity, reverse hexes, counter sorcery, and assure future good fortune.

**Preparation**

The cactus stem is cut like bread into slices, approximately one half inch wide, and boiled for several hours. The resulting mash is strained for the juice. In this preparation San Pedro is taken alone. Often other plants, like *Datura*, are boiled separately and added to the drink, which is then called Cimora.

Some of the common admixtures are: *Brugmansia aurea* and *B. sanguinea*, Andean cactus (*Neoraimondia macrostibas*), *Iresine*, *Pedilanthus tithy- maloides*, and *Isotoma longiflora*. Many of the common admixtures have psychoactive components themselves that greatly affect the potency of the drink and the nature of the trance state induced. On some occasions the magic needed demands additives other than plants, like ground bones or cemetery dust. This area of admixtures to San Pedro deserves further study.

**Active Principle**

The active principle in San Pedro is mescaline, which is responsible for the visions and shapeshifting qualities of the experience. The alkaloids 3,4-dimethoxyphenylethylamine and 3-methoxy-tryamine have been reported from the plant.

**Ritual of Receiving the Plant Spirit, or Plant Medicine**

In larger, communal curing sessions the focal point of the ritual in ordinary reality is the shaman's mesa, activated and displayed on the altar. The shaman and the participants drink San Pedro and enter non-ordinary reality through the induced trance state.

San Pedro is the principal plant hallucinogen in the high Andes. The cacti that grow near Las Huaringas are believed to have extraordinarily powerful properties for curing and protection. Shamans go annually to these sacred lagoons for purification and rejuvenation; the sick make pilgrimages to seek healing. Shamans from other regions work with the powerful shaman of Las Huaringas who can open up one's supernatural spiritual powers with the help of San Pedro.

**Characteristics of the Induced Altered State**

The onset of trance is marked by a dreamy state, drowsiness, or slight dizziness. As the visions begin and the trance state deepens, there is a numbness in the body followed by tranquility. As the senses clear and release there is a sensation of detachment and a heightening of all the senses, including the telepathic sense of traveling across time and space and transforming shape and matter.
The primary characteristic of the trance state induced by San Pedro is soul flight. The ecstatic experience of the soul's movement in the spirit world was quite literal in the ancient Huachuma healing rituals. In contrast, the modern ceremonies of the San Pedro cult tend toward work ceremonially with preparations of San Pedro diluted to the degree that soul flight is merely symbolic. See also altered states of consciousness and Andes, South America.


Santo Daime
Santo Daime is a plant sacrament or entheogen. It is believed to be an experiential vehicle for the Divine Being that is present in all of creation. It is also known as ayahuasca.

Practitioners of the Santo Daime doctrine believe that the spirit of the rain forest sent Daime out into more mainstream Brazil because mankind had destroyed a large part of the forest and threatened to destroy what remains. They believe Daime can guide people to the light and truth through ecstatic trance states and can re-teach humans the sacred laws necessary for living in and with Nature.

The main teacher and guide is the Santo Daime itself, therefore, the Padrinho, or leader, serves more as an example or standard for students and initiates (fardado), those who have affirmed that Daime is their sacrament, guide, and Master Teacher. The Padrinho is usually in charge of the final steps in the preparation of Santo Daime when it “comes to life.”

Santo Daime is prepared in a ritual process called Feitio, in which the men prepare the jagube, Banisteriopsis caapi vine, and the women prepare the rainha, Psychotria viridis leaves. During the Feitio silence, concentration, and inner purity are required by everyone in the community.

The night-long ceremonies follow the calendar of the Catholic Church. After the participants drink the Daime, the hymns, instruments, and dances guide the journeys. Participants know that when they participate in a ceremony they are expected to use their trance state to work on themselves, to merge with the Divine, and to become a more perfect being. The concept of healing in the Santo Daime faith is holistic—body, mind, and spirit are healed in unity.

The Santo Daime doctrine was established by Raimundo Irineu Serra, an Afro-Brazilian rubber tapper who studied with Peruvian shamans during the 1920s. Serra was initiated into the process of making the sacred ayahuasca, journeying into the spirit world, interpreting his visions, and integrating them into his daily life.

In an ayahuasca-induced vision Serra was told to deepen his practice. He entered the rain forest, drinking only ayahuasca and eating only manioc for eight days. On the fourth day Our Lady of Conception the Forest Queen came to him in continuous visions and described to him the spiritual doctrine he was to go on to found. Drinking of ayahuasca was to be the central activity and sacrament of the ritual process.

In 1930 Serra founded Alto Santo church and began to receive the hymns, over 100 in all, that codified the foundations of the new doctrine. This doctrine is centered around the teachings of Christ and the collected hymnals are held to be the Third Testament, a revised and enlarged version of the Gospel of Christ.

Sanusi

The sanusi (master shaman) is the highest of three classes of traditional Zulu practitioners of the esoteric arts. The sanusi, sangoma, and iNyanga are all responsible for different aspects of maintaining a healthy relationship between the natural and supernatural realms for their community.

Traditionally, the sanusi are predominantly women. The sanusi has one foot in the spirit world and one in the physical world so that he can act as a conduit for spiritual realities. He or she is the uplifter of the people and a spiritual leader.

A sanusi is called to the role by the Amadlozi, the ancestral spirits. The role can not be inherited or chosen by the individual. Ukutwasa, the call from the spirits, often begins in a dream and progresses into an unexplained illness of the mind and body. This strange illness gradually progresses and remains untreatable by standard medicine, herbal remedies, or sacrifices.

The sanusi can be considered the most evolved and skilled sangoma. In training candidates must work their way up through twelve stages, or ranks. In each stage they learn to work with one of twelve “vessels” or types of spirits. Few sangoma succeed in mastering the twelfth and final stage to become a sanusi. This stage can only be reached with the help and blessing of the spirit world. See also Africa.


Sauel
(Also sauël, sawal.) Springs inhabited by spirits, which are considered power spots by the Wintun. They are visited, usually in the spring, by people who wish to gain power from the spirit of the sauel. Different sauel have different spirits and vary in the amount of power associated with them.

The most powerful sauel are visited only by shamans and are off limits to others. Less powerful sauel can be visited by anyone wishing to obtain medicine for gambling, hunting, warfare, invisibility, invulnerability, or love. Offerings are left at the sauel for the spirits, for example a common offering for hunting medicine is the afterbirth and the navel cord from newborn’s birth.

Shamans and novices visit a sauel to acquire helping spirits, and therefore, power. A sauel is often associated with a particular animal spirit, e.g., Deer, Wolf, Coyote, Grizzly Bear, etc., who visits the shaman in his or her dreams or visions while at the sauel. Some sauel are restricted by gender as well as power. For example, the Coyote sauel is reserved for use by female shamans and novices only.

A mentuli sauel, or “water-swimming sacred places,” is a sauel with a pool. To gain power from the mentuli sauel the shaman dives to the bottom in an attempt to find a charm stone or other power object at the bottom of the pool. These sacred pools are also the place where the Wintun can safely discard shamanic regalia.


Sauyit

The sauyit is the tungralik’s or shaman’s drum in the Alaskan Arctic region. The drum is the core of the tungralik’s practice and of the sacred rituals and ceremonies of the people. The tungralik plays the sauyit to induce trance or the assistant plays while the tungralik sings and beats a rhythm on the floor with a small baton.

The sauyit is an 18-inch, circular, wooden frame with a walrus or seal bladder stretched over it and held in place with a hide cord, or oklinok. The
sauyet is held aloft when played and beaten at the rim, not in the center of the drumhead. The beater, or mumwa, is a small stick adorned with a piece of white ermine or a fox tail. See also aghula; Alaskan; angakok; Eskimo; sacred.


Scapulimancy
A form of divination used to determine future events or to find lost persons. An animal bone, most often the scapula or shoulderblade, is held near enough to the fire to scorch it and then either the scorch marks or the fissures and lines created by the heat are read. This form of divination is practiced primarily in North America and Asia, which is believed to be the origin of scapulimancy. For example it is called matinik-ashauew among the Montagnais-Naskapi and masinisawe by the Ojibwa.


Scry
(Also skrie, skry.) Scrying is a form of divination in which the seer looks into a vessel of water with “second sight” to discover answers to questions. Often the seer covers his or her head and vessel with a cloth to better see beyond ordinary sight. Scrying is used in particular to see at a distance or into the future. The term is used generally to refer to any form of divination in which a container of water, a crystal, or an ordinary object like mirrors, tea leaves in a cup, a pool, or a well is used in divination.

Scrying is an ancient and widespread divination technique. It was used by Celts, Saxons, and other early Europeans to see into the future. The scrying bowl was hung from three chains and filled with rainwater collected before it touched the earth. The Celts placed a small, model salmon in the bottom of the scrying bowl to connect the seer to that sacred keeper of knowledge.

Scrying in many forms is widespread in North America. The practice of scrying in blood and water has been found from the Alaskan north down into the Southwest. The Ojibwa, for example, scry by looking into a cup of water or into mirrors.


Sedna
Sedna is the Great Goddess and the Mistress of the Beasts of the peoples of the Arctic region. She is central to the angakok’s (shaman’s) ability to secure food for the community. The wild animals are Sedna’s children, especially the seals, walruses, and whales. She gives her children to the hunters who honor their souls in appropriate rituals and withdraws them from those who show disrespect.

When the animals grow scarce the angakok must journey to the realm under the sea on behalf of the people to ask Sedna for more game. She is frightening and wild, wearing her long hair matted with the blood of all the animals the hunters have slain. Usually she is
angry that the people have broken **taboos**, both social and hunting, and dishonored the souls of her children. The **angakok** must first comb out her snarled hair and win her favor, asking what the people must confess and **sacrifice** to be worthy again of her children. In this way the **angakok** exchanges the sacrifice of the people for the souls of the animals the people need to survive.

Sedna is the goddess of destiny, death, and the afterlife. She oversees the three heavens of the **Eskimo**, including Omiktu, where the souls of humans and whales go after death. Thus the **angakok** meets Sedna’s rule again when functioning as **psychopomp** and conveying the souls of the deceased to this **Land of the Dead** and when retrieving lost souls who have strayed to Omiktu.

Sedna was a girl who defied her father and married a sea-bird. As Sedna’s irate father tried to take her home in a skin boat her irate bird husband created a storm. To save himself, Sedna’s father threw her overboard to placate the **bird** and stop the storm. As Sedna clutched the gunwale to climb back in the boat, her father cut off the first joints of her fingers. They fell into the sea and became the whales, seals and walruses. Sedna continued to struggle and her father continued to cut until she had no fingers to hang on at all and she sunk to the bottom of the sea.

This is how Sedna got to her home at the bottom of the sea and why she is unable to comb her unruly hair. The broken taboos and evil deeds of people only dirty her hair and tangle it further, leaving her irrate and angry with humankind. This is why the **shaman** must not only get to the bottom of the sea past Sedna’s guards, but he must calm her anger and win her favor every time.

Sedna’s companion in the watery Underworld is Qailertetang, the amazonian, **weather** goddess. Both goddesses are guardians of animals, hunters, fishermen, and **transformed shamans**. In ritual they are represented in ways that blend **genders**. Particularly the gynandrous Qailertetang, who is represented in ritual by a man wearing a seal skin **mask** and the clothing of a woman. See also **Amazonia**.


**Seer**

A practitioner of **divination** who uses his or her skills to see at a distance and into the future or past. A seer is commonly called on to locate game, locate the enemy and warn of their movement, and to find lost objects or people. **Shamans** are seers, however not all seers are shamans. Seers who are not shamans are **clairvoyant**.

**Sehrsartoq**

The **sehrsartoq** is a **bullroarer** used by West Greenland **Eskimo** **angakut** (**shamans**). The **sehrsartoq** was used during **healing** rituals; however exactly how is unclear. There is one report that a **sehrsartoq** was whirled close to the patient’s head to drive away the disease-causing spirit as part of the healing ritual. However, missionary efforts so effectively suppressed **shamanism** in this region that there are no clear accounts explaining how and why the **sehrsartoq** was used in healing. See also **Greenland**.


**Seidr**

A Norse **ritual** for **divination** and prophecy performed by the **volva** (seer and **shaman**) to see into the future of people, **weather**, abundance of crops, etc. Originally the performance of the **seidr** was the secret art of the goddess Freyja.
The *volva* was seated and entered a **trance** state induced by the ecstatic singing of her chorus. The *volva*’s soul traveled to meet Freyja in the spirit world, merged with her, and returned to the ritual space with Freyja. With the goddess present in the space and speaking through the *volva*, the audience was allowed to ask the goddess questions.


**Semen and Water**

Cross-culturally, semen and water are often associated in mythology. For example, the *Shuar* tell stories of young women who are impregnated while swimming in the river and later gave birth to mixed, human-spirit children. Conversely, the Sumerian god Enki, brought forth new life to the barren country of Sumer by allowing his semen to flow throughout the land.

Linguistic evidences shows that early humankind viewed **water** as a life-inducing, fertilizing fluid of conception, much like semen. The ancient Sumerian symbol for water also represented sperm, conception, and generation. Water symbolized the source of all things and was believed to harbor all potentiality for life and regeneration.

Much of the water supplies of the **earth** was more semen-like, unclear, muddy, and filled with organic matter, bacteria, and viruses. Much like semen carrying DNA, these waterways also carried information. Physically, water carried people, goods, and their messages. Internally, it carried other life-forms from animals to viruses. Spiritually, it carried the **animal spirits** and the messages of the living upstream (or downstream depending on the **culture**) to the **Ancestors** now residing at the Source. The association of semen and water as carriers of the information necessary for life to flourish is ancient.

Clear water, on the other hand, was held **sacred** for different reasons. It embodies the **spirit** of water that brings **purification**, **cleansing**, restoration, and reconciliation. Freshwater springs were often considered sacred sites, or power spots, and used differently than muddy, flowing water. Through clear water people connected to the spirit of water as an essential element (one of four or five) and a direct connection to the Source of All Things.


**Semen of the Sun**

*Epená* is an hallucinogenic snuff made from the inner bark of several species of *Virola*. For the **shaman**, it is a powerful tool for **diagnosis** and treatment of **illness**. *Epená* is an important **vehicle** of communication with the **spirit** world for many tribes in northwest **Amazonia**.

The Tukano people call *epená*, *viho*, or “Semen of the Sun.” They explain that in the beginning of time Father **Sun** was having sex with his daughter. She scratched his penis and thus acquired *viho* for the Tukano. In this way the **sacred** snuff came from the Sun’s semen and continues to be kept in containers called *muhipu-nuri*, or “penis of the sun.”

The Tukano shaman is not allowed to communicate directly with the **spirit** world. In an *epená*-induced **trance** state the shaman communicates with *Vihomahse*, the “snuff-person” who lives in the Milky Way and attends to all human affairs. Then through *Vihomahse* the shaman is able to communicate with the spirit world.
Seneca
One of the original five nations of the Iroquois who lived in the northeastern region of North America near the Great Lakes. The original medicine society of the Seneca was the Hadigonsashoon, the False Face Society from which all other Seneca medicine societies emerged.

The medicine societies performed curing rituals for illnesses and injuries whose origins were not obvious and physical, and therefore easily handled by the medicine people with plant remedies. When the cause of an illness could not be identified by the medicine people, the relatives of the patient consulted a clairvoyant or seer. The seer performed a divination to determine the cause of the illness and the healing ritual(s) necessary for a cure.

For serious cases several performances of the ritual might be necessary or the performance of several different rituals. However, these rituals failed to cure the patient, a shaman who could reverse the affects of sorcery, or witch doctor, was called on as a last resort.

To perform a medicine society ritual was to honor and apply the highest spiritual mysteries of the people. The societies performed their rituals continuously; however, after the coming of the white man, they found it expedient to do so secretly. The leaders of the same societies conferred to keep their rituals uniform from tribe to tribe.

There were no restrictions placed on membership, except the men who assist the Women’s Society. Candidates could join any society regardless of clan and were often invited to join a society after being cured by their medicine ritual.

The Seneca medicine societies are ancient. Their rituals have been transmitted by song with little change for many, many years. Each society has a legend of a founding hero that explains its origin and ritual practices. In general, the theme is the same in each society. The founder has a great adventure, with many trials that he or she could not have prevailed over had the animals or spirits not come to his or her aid. The hero then returns to the people to teach them the secrets learned from the animals and the rituals necessary to gain their favor and therefore their power. These secrets were preserved by the society founded by the hero.

The traditional Seneca Medicine Societies included several societies, described as follows.

The Little Water Society
The Little Water Society was organized to perform the rites necessary to preserve the potency of the secret medicine known as the little water powder. This medicine is sung for and empowered in this society’s rituals; it is not used in them. The empowered powder is stored for use by medicine people in healing ceremonies. Both men and women are members of this society.

The Pygmy Society
The rituals of the Pygmy Society are primarily to honor and communicate with the little folk, whose goodwill is sought by all native people. Translated as pygmy, these spirit beings are more like elves or small forest folk whom the Seneca believe are “next to the people” in importance and are therefore very powerful beings. These beings demand proper attention and punish those who neglect them.

There are many other spirit and magic animals, called ho’tcine’gada, of this society. In addition to the elves, the ho’tcine’gada include: Great Horned Serpent, Blue Panther, Exploding Wren, White Beaver, Corn-bug, Sharp-legs, Little Dry Hand, Wind Spirit, and Great Naked Bear. Members of this society keep charms of the ho’tcine’gada, some made from body parts of the animals.

The Dark Dance Ritual is designed to appease a ho’tcine’gada or to procure its power and blessings. This ritual is performed at any time for the purpose of appeasing the spirit of a charm that has or will become impotent. Non-members may call for the ritual when they
are troubled by certain sights and sounds that imply that a ho’tcine’gada is not pleased.

This society sings for all the medicine charms and all the magic animals. Some of the Seneca charms embody malevolent energies that bring harm or misfortune to their caretakers. However, they must not be destroyed under any circumstances. The harmful effects of these charms can be warded off by the rituals of this society. Most charms are only for benevolent purposes, but they can become angry and then harmful if neglected.

The Otter Society
The Otter Society is a women's society organized to honor and appease the otters and other water animals whose spirits influence the good health, fortunes, and destinies of humans. The Otter Society has no songs or dances. Its members preserve and perform the teachings of how to give thanks to the water animals, to retain their favor, and to cure illnesses brought on by transgressions against the water animals. In these healing rituals the members go to a spring and conduct a ceremony to gather sacred healing water. They then go to the patient's lodge and sprinkle him with the sacred water while affecting the cure.

The Medicine Animal Society
The members of the Medicine Animal (or Mystic Animal) Society preserve and perform the rituals necessary to maintain the good will of the “medicine” animals, the animals who joined with humans in ancient times to be of service to mankind. The powers of the medicine animals cure illness, relieve pain, avert disasters in Nature, and reestablish good fortune. These animals taught humans the rituals necessary to honor and please them so that they will continue to be of service to humankind. These rituals are kept strictly secret.

Each member receives a power song from spirit and a gourd rattle during their initiation into the society. During their rituals the members chant and dance while the shaman performs displays of power like, mastery of fire, animating inanimate objects, and seeing with "spirit eyes" through wooden masks that have no eyeholes. The rituals of this society are prescribed to treat fevers and skin diseases.

There are three masks used by the Medicine Animal Society in their rituals: the Conjurer's mask, the Witch mask, and the Dual-spirit's mask. These masks are made without metal eyes and are never used in the rites of the False Face Society.

The Eagle Society
The Eagle Society's ritual is considered the most sacred. Its songs are believed to be the most potent charms known to the Seneca. The Dew Eagle, also known as the “reviver of wilting things,” or oshadageaa, is called upon in this ritual to restore the lifeforce to the dying, the elderly, and those afflicted with wasting diseases.

Membership in the Eagle Society is limited to those who received specific dreams involving the Dew Eagle or who are healed by the rituals of the society. Members wear special costumes in the rituals, which involve singers and selected dancers. Those who dance assume a squatting position and dance like birds to induce a full possession trance by the Dew Eagle.

The Bear Society
The Bear Society's rituals employ dancing and chanting to cure the diseases of its members and candidates. The ceremony is particularly effective in curing fevers, rheumatism, and in bringing good fortune. The highest officer of this society is a woman who functions as the shaman in the healing rituals blowing the healing power of Bear into the head of the patient. The Bear Society uses the water-drum and horn rattles during their rituals.

The Buffalo Society
The rituals of the Buffalo Society involve many songs and dances accompanied by the water-drum and horn
rattles. When the ritual is complete, a buffalo pudding is taken home by the members. When eaten the pudding acts as a charm, “stamping off” illness and misfortune.

Chanter for the Dead
The Feast of the Dead, performed by this society, is called for when a member dreams of the restless spirits of deceased members, relatives, or friends. The ritual is led by its highest official who is always a woman. The large water-drum is played to accompany a specific set of songs and then the participants feast. The food is shared in a ritualized way to satisfy the hungry ghosts, who have become earth bound. The diviner of this society identifies the spirit who is troubling the dreams of the member. Any sickness or misfortune caused by the ghosts is dispelled by the healing forces of the ceremony.

The Women’s Society
The Women’s Society exists to preserve the rituals through which good fortune and health are obtained and maintained for women. The fourteen singers of this society are all men. During this ritual the men sing and are accompanied by the water-drum and horn rattles. The women dance and join in chorus of the songs.

Sisters of the Dio’he’ko
The duty of the all female members of this society is to preserve and perform the special offering of thanks to the Dio’he’ko, “these sustain our lives,” the spirits of corn, beans, and squashes. These rituals of thanksgiving honor and satisfy the spirits of growth that assure a good harvest and, by extension, the life of the people. The special rattle of this society is made from the shell of a land tortoise.

The False Face Society
The False Face Society, the eldest of the medicine societies, has three divisions and uses four classes of masks: the doorkeeper or doctor masks, dancing masks, beggar masks, and secret masks. The beggar and thief masks are not part of the paraphernalia of the true society. The secret masks are only used in society rituals, not open to the public, performed as part of the midwinter ceremony. All of the masks have names.

The paraphernalia of this society consists of the false face masks, rattles made from the shells of snapping turtles, hickory bark rattles, head throws, and tobacco baskets. The leader’s pole has fastened to it a small husk face mask, a small wooden false face mask, and a small turtle rattle.

The Husk Face Society:
The Husk Face Society members are water doctors who endeavor to cure certain diseases by spraying and sprinkling water on the patients during their healing rituals. The members wear carved, wooden masks, different from those of the False Face Society. During the rituals the doctors receive the power to heal from the spirit energies embodied in the masks. See also power displays and trance.


Serrat
Serrat is the West Greenland Eskimo term for spells used by angakok (shamans), qaninassoq (sorcerers), and serrassoq (witches). Serrat are sayings with magical influence that can be general in nature or addressed to an individual owner. They are things of value and are passed on through inheritance. See also Greenland and sorcery.

Set and Setting

“Set and setting” is a commonly used phrase in discussions of psychoactive substances, like the plant entheogens used by shamans in many cultures. Set refers to the psychological makeup of the individual taking the psychoactive substance. Setting refers to social and physical environment in which the psychoactive substances is taken.

Set and setting are two of three primary factors that influence the hallucinogenic experience, from the perspective of contemporary western researchers. The third factor is the pharmacological effects of the substance. Together these three factors influence the psychedelic experience such that the same psychoactive substances can produce varied responses.

Shadow

The Shadow is a psychological aspect of the self that has been disowned or judged unworthy of being an active part in the individual’s conscious life. Any aspect of the self, even a positive or powerful aspect, that is disowned and unintegrated as part of the whole self is relegated to the Shadow. These Shadow aspects invent ways to remind the individual that they are still there. When an individual is able to accept a Shadow aspect and re-integrate it, that aspect moves from the Shadow back into the conscious self.

The process of disowning aspects of the self creates holes or openings in an individual’s energy. These openings allow intrusive energies and the malevolent energies sent by sorcerers to enter the body. Once in the body these energies can create physical and mental illness. Shamans perform extraction healing rituals to remove these energies from the body. See also healing.

Shaking Tent Ceremony

(Also Conjuring Ceremony or Jugglery.) A version of the spirit intrusions ritual widely used across the northeastern woodlands, Plains, and Plateau regions of North America by shamans and seers for divination, information, diagnosis, and to a lesser extent healing. A special cylindrical tent, the djesikon, is built for the ritual. The name is derived from the characteristic shaking of the djesikon that occurs when the spirit powers arrive and exit during the ritual.

The djessakid, the shaman who performs this ritual, learns the skill from the manitou or helping spirit. The power to perform the ritual is given in a dream or vision by the manitou and then cultivated over time. This ritual requires levels of power and skill that can only be mastered by shamans with a great deal of personal power and maturity as well as a strong working relationship with powerful manitou.

The ritual is performed sparingly because the energy expenditure necessary depletes the shaman; however several questions can be asked in one ritual. The ritual is used for diagnosis and divining cures for illness, seeing the future or the movement of enemies, locating game and lost objects, and communicating with the deceased. In particular the ritual is used to capture the free soul of a sorcerer and to force that sorcerer to cease all malevolent acts causing illness, death, and injury to others.

The shaman and assistants prepare for the ritual with a sweat for purification and to strengthen their relationships with their manitou. The assistants them construct the djesikon as instructed by spirit in the shaman’s visions. The ritual usually proceeds at night.

The shaman begins singing as he approaches the lodge. The shaman’s power songs are used to induce trance and call the helping spirits to enter the lodge with the shaman. In some versions of the ritual the shaman is bound wrists and ankles with a chord or wrapped in a skin from head to toe and bound securely and then carried into the lodge. In most cases the tent begins shaking as the shaman enters, and
continues to do so quite violently indicating that the spirits are arriving and present. When the shaman is deep in trance and the tent is shaking violently the members of the audience put forth questions to the helping spirits.

Depending on the shaman and/or cultural expectations the spirits answer in a variety of ways. Some shamans simply translate while others speak in a shamanic language that must be interpreted by an assistant. The communication of some spirits is heard as whistles or other sounds while other spirits are heard speaking in voices. Some shamans work with Mikenak, Turtle spirit, who works as a mediator, taking the question from the shaman to the spirits and returning to the shaman with the answer.

When the ritual is complete, the shaman returns to ordinary consciousness free of his bonds. The magical liberation of the shaman is considered proof of the presence of spirit in the djesikon and one of many power displays associated with this divination ritual. See also language; Mishikan; Ojibwa; Spirit Lodge.


Shaltu

A Wintun term for a shaman’s helping spirit. Shaltu is also used to refer to the performers in dance rituals who dance in trance states in which they have embodied their helping spirit. See also embodiment; ritual; spirit.


Shaman

The shaman is a practitioner who has developed the mastery of:
1. accessing altered (alternate) states of consciousness, control of themselves while moving in those states, and returning to an ordinary state of consciousness at will and,
2. mediation between the needs of the spirit world and the those of the physical world in a way that can be understood by the community, and whose mastery of the above is used,
3. to serve the needs of the community which cannot be met by practitioners of other disciplines, like: physicians, psychiatrists, priests, leaders, etc.

This means that the shaman is a specific type of healer who uses a trance state, or alternate state of consciousness, to enter the invisible world (all aspects of our world that affect us which we can not see, including the spiritual, emotional, mental, mythical, archetypal, and dream worlds). Once in the invisible world the shaman makes a change in the energy found there in such a way that it directly affects the need (healing, hunting magic, weather, etc.) here in the physical world. Furthermore, the shaman learns what to do (what energy to change and how to change it) in the invisible world through direct contact with “spirits.” Spirits are energies with presence found in the invisible world. They may have form (animal, plant, mountain, ancestor, deity, element, etc.); they may be formless; or the spirit may be the presence of the universe as a being, often explained as That Which Created God. It is this direct contact with spirit and the use of the trance state that distinguishes the shaman from other practitioners. See also altered states of consciousness; animal spirits; elements; nonordinary reality; ordinary consciousness; plant spirits.

Shamanic Altered States of Consciousness

Altered states of consciousness are mental states which can be subjectively recognized as representing a difference in psychological functioning from the individual’s day-to-day, alert waking state. Altered states of consciousness are the tools of the shaman’s profession. What separates the altered states necessary for shamanic work from mental and spiritual illness is the intention, discipline, and concentration of the shaman.

Shamanic altered states of consciousness are a diverse range of states used by the shaman to perform the tasks of his or her profession. In altered states the invisible world of spirit becomes visible, allowing the shaman to communicate with helping spirits and to see the true source of the patient’s problem. The shaman’s experience of these trance states is often ecstatic, though the state remains controlled and intentional.

The shaman's ability to help a person to heal or to influence weather, game, or crops arises from his or her relationship with spirit. To exercise this relationship the shaman must alter his or her state of consciousness to connect and communicate with the spirit or sacred energy being called upon.

To establish a rapport with spirit the shaman will journey (intentional soul flight) or enter an embodiment trance, (intentional spirit possession). Practitioners caution against viewing the shaman's altered state as exclusive to either type of trance. The type of trance used by a shaman has a great deal to do with what the shaman is trying to accomplish through the trance. Any definition of the shaman’s trance must include both spirit flight and spirit embodiment, the full range of altered states between, and the understanding that these trance states can exist separately or coexist to various degrees throughout a shamanic healing ritual.

In his work mapping altered states, Roger Walsh, MD., Ph.D., professor, and author of numerous books and papers on shamanism, has shown that there is not one single altered state of consciousness sought by shamans, but many. Generally speaking there are three major classes of shamanic altered states of consciousness: embodiment, drug-induced journey, and journey induced by other means. While there may be significant functional overlap between these classes, there is no reason to assume that they comprise a single state. Furthermore, considerable variation may occur within each class, therefore it would be an oversimplification even to consider each class a single state of consciousness.

Shamanic altered states are often compared to the altered states achieved through other disciplines such as Buddhist meditation and yoga. There are some significant similarities: the ability to enter and exit at will, heightened concentration, initially negative experiences resolved into increasingly positive experiences, and a shift of identity from ego/body self. However, there are enough significant differences: the awareness of environment, ability to communicate, types and degree of concentration, control over content and experience, arousal, sense of self, affect, experience of the body, and content, that the states cannot be considered the same.

The altered state used by the shaman varies between cultures, shamans, and clients. Looking at diagnosis alone there are a variety of altered states and corresponding techniques. For example, using a tsentsak (invisible
Shamanic Counseling

Shamanic counseling is an experiential counseling method designed to facilitate the psychological and emotional healing of individuals and communities. This method was designed by Michael Harner, the founder and director of the Foundation for Shamanic Studies.

Shamanic counseling is based on the discipline of journeying into the invisible world to the sound of a monotonous drumbeat. Unlike shamanic healing where the shaman journeys on the client's behalf, in shamanic counseling the client journeys on his or her own behalf. The client's helping spirits are the "counselors" to whom the client goes for healing and guidance. The shamanic counselor teaches the journeying technique and serves the client as a resource in using the technique to facilitate the desired psychological and emotional healing.

Shamanic Healing

At the most essential level shamanic healing involves the movement of energies from a patient, or group, out into the spirit world or from the spirit world into the patient. This movement of energy occurs in the context of the shaman's healing ritual. The principles of shamanic healing are unchanging. The techniques change to some degree from culture to culture. The content changes from situation to situation based on the patient and the kind of energies being moved.

There are two aspects of shamanic healing that are similar in all sessions. First, the shaman enters a trance state, either soul flight or spirit embodiment, which allows him/her to become an energetic bridge between the patient and the invisible world. Secondly, the shaman moves energy across that bridge. From the shaman's perspective there are energies out in the spirit world that belong in the patient's energy body and energies in the patient's energy body that belong out in the spirit world. A typical healing session focuses on one primary problem and involves some additional movement of energies, both in and out of the patient.

The type of trance used by the shaman is determined by what needs to be done in the healing ritual. The techniques necessary for a particular healing depend on the diagnosis of where the source of the problem lies, the true nature of the energies involved, and what to do about those energies. This is determined by the shaman through divination.

There are different names for the different kinds of shamanic healing because there are different kinds of energy that need to be moved. For example, removing an energy intrusion from a patient is an extraction, while removing a harmful spirit from a patient is a depossessing, or exorcism.
In a divination the shaman retrieves information from the spirit world for the patient or group. In **power retrievals** or **blessings** the shaman retrieves **powers** or energies from the spirit world for the patient. In a **soul retrieval** the shaman retrieves lost **soul** parts from the spirit world for the patient. In a **cleansing** the shaman removes non-localized energies from a body or a **space**. In an extraction the shaman removes localized energy intrusions from the body of the patient. In a depossession or exorcism the shaman removes a spirit intrusion from the body of the patient.

Shamans work on at least five different levels simultaneously in healing rituals. These five levels are:
1. the physical-biological,
2. the emotional-psychological,
3. the mental-philosophical-moral,
4. the social-ethical, and
5. the spiritual.

For example, in a soul retrieval healing ritual as soon as the shaman has returned the lost soul part to the client, the source of problem is resolved on a spiritual level. The shaman then facilitates any physical-biological changes that result from the soul part’s return to the body. Finally, the shaman works with the client to establish a new equilibrium in and between the emotional-psychological, mental, and social levels.

The shaman is able to work on multiple levels simultaneously because he or she is aided by spirit. When in his or her working trance state, the shaman is guided in what to do directly by the **helping spirits** of the energy of the altered state, as with the **num** energy that guides the !Kung healers. Therefore every healing ritual is improvised, created on the spot from the needs of the patient, the abilities of the shaman, and the intervention of spirit.

During healing rituals shamans often retrieve lost souls, communicate with **spirits**, repair the interconnectedness of their patients with his or her community or with the **earth**, facilitate spiritual **purification**, interpret **dreams** and **visions**, and stress the importance of spiritual growth, life purpose, and being of service to humanity and to Nature.

The first act in any healing session is the diagnosis, or divination. From there the shaman may move into another type of healing like soul retrieval, power retrieval, extraction, or cleansing. If not done, the shaman remains in the act of divination and retrieves information, describing remedies, healing rituals, preparation for those rituals, the true spirit source of the presenting problem, how to restore harmony to all the energies involved, or the need for the patient to go to an allopathic doctor or another type of healer.

The structural principles of shamanic healing rituals are cross-culturally consistent. The healing **ritual structure** is simplified as follows:
1. The shaman opens the ritual space and enters his or her trance, which is necessary for healing. The trance is either a journeying state or spirit embodiment.
2. Diagnosis of the true source of the illness/problem is determined by spirit and involves both ordinary and non-ordinary reality factors.
3. Action is taken by the shaman, as the **vehicle** for the helping spirits, and energies are moved.
4. Gratitude and thanks are given to helping spirits and the ritual space is closed.

How these steps are carried out varies relative to culture, the skills of the practitioner, the healing needed, and the directions offered by the helping spirits. For example, an extraction by a Shuar shaman will involve using **ayahuasca**, a **plant hallucinogen**, to enter trance and a **tsentsak**, invisible dart, to remove the energy intrusion. An extraction by a Pomo shaman would involve **singing** and dancing into trance and sucking to remove the energy intrusion. Though these two healing rituals look different, they each involve the same steps in a ritual process that results in the same type of healing, an extraction.
Contemporary shamans are often called upon for an additional step in the healing ritual to compensate for the lack of community support for shamanic healing. After the ritual is complete the shaman helps the client integrate the healing experience into a new sense of self and to reintegrate that sense of self into his or her daily life.

Shamanic healing also involves work with the souls of the dying and the spirits of the dead. It is the shaman's task as psychopomp to escort the soul on its journey to the Land of the Dead. To complete its dying process a soul must be resolved with its entire life and free of emotional attachments to that life and the physical plane. The shaman may have to assist in the healing necessary for this detachment even at death's door.

By altering reality within the healing ritual, shamans create an opportunity for participants in that ritual to experience the Divine, to become One-with-all-things. This experience of ecstatic union is in and of itself a healing experience. By practicing and sharing the sacred technologies of ecstatic altered states, shamans maintain the possibility for humanity's healing and evolution of conscious well-being. See also altered states of consciousness; dance; death and dying; magical darts; soul loss.


Shamanic State of Consciousness

The Shamanic State of Consciousness (SSC) is a term used by Michael Harner, founder and director of the Foundation for Shamanc Studies, to refer to the altered state of consciousness and the learned perspective that characterizes shamanic work. “The SSC involves not only a 'trance' or transcendent state of awareness, but also a learned awareness of shamanic methods and assumptions while in such an altered state.”

The learned component of the SSC includes:

1. Information about the cosmic geography of the invisible world of spirit, or non-ordinary reality.
2. An awareness by the shaman that he or she must have a specific intended mission while in the SSC and the ability to hold the focus of that mission.
3. The basic methods for accomplishing the work of the shaman while in the SSC.
4. The ability to retain the information for the patient until the shaman's return to the physical world and to communicate that information clearly and completely.
5. The ability to maintain conscious control over the direction of his or her travels in the journey, without knowing what he or she will discover on that journey.
6. The ability to bring back his or her discoveries to help others and to build a body of knowledge about the invisible world, its geography, and the beings that inhabit it.

The SSC described above refers primarily to the shaman working in the altered state referred to as a journey or spirit flight. The journey and the embodiment trance are the two poles of a continuum of altered states used by the shaman.


Shamanic Symbols

Much of the art created by shamans is intended to communicate complex ideas through symbolic shorthand. These shamanic symbols create visual links that activate the energy and power...
contained in the more complex ideas which are derived from the shaman's experiential knowledge of the true nature of the visible and invisible worlds. The foundation of this knowledge is the understanding that all things are connected and interrelated all the way back to the beginning of the Universe.

Listed below are reoccurring, cross-cultural symbols that represent essential aspects of a shamanic worldview. They remain in our human psyche today as universal, archetypal symbols.

The Tree of Life (The World Tree)
The Tree of Life is a cross-culturally recurrent symbol for the opening and connection between the realms of the physical and the spirit world. The Tree of Life is used by the shaman and the helping spirits as the way to move between the realms. The branches provide a means to climb to the Upperworld and the roots a means to reach the Lowerworld. The Tree of Life is also known as the World Tree, World Axis, Great Tree, or Cosmic Tree.

The trunk of the Tree of Life is the axis (axis mundi) running through the Center of the World. Pillars, poles, large stone monoliths, mountains, or temples built like mountains are also symbolic of the Tree of Life. This symbolism can be recognized by the presence of seven notches or rungs, representing the seven layers of the Upperworld. In many cultures a particular type of tree is considered the Tree of Life, for example, the birch for the Tungus or the sycamore fig for ancient Egyptians.

Spiral of Creation
The Spiral of Creation represents the original emanations of life from the Void. The Spiral is the as yet unknown potential, alive and pulsing between occurring and reoccurring. The Spiral of Creation is recorded in the stone and clay remnants of the symbolic languages of people on every continent.

The Spiral of Creation is the interrelationship of space and time. It winds simultaneously upwards and downwards. The spiral exists in such a way that any one point can touch any other point at any time. It represents the infinite, simultaneous possibilities within the Kosmos.

The Circle
Time is represented in the circle, whose deceptive simplicity is symbolic of a much more complex relationship with time. The shaman experiences time as the simultaneous, creative expression of all that is, that was, and all that will be. Some shamanic cultures, like the Dagara of West Africa, have no concept for linear time at all. They are aware of linear time as an illusion accepted because we do not know time as it really exists. The shaman uses timing to move in harmony with the Whole and in synch with the rhythms of Nature and the Universe.

The Circled Cross
The Circled Cross is a shorthand symbol of the shaman's universe and is found in cultures as distant and unrelated as the Celts of the British Isles and the Mapuche of Chile, South America. The circle aspect represents both the circle of time and a foreshortened view of the Spiral of Creation. The crossed lines represent the four directions of the physical world and the movement of the shaman out into the other dimensions of the spirit world. The center point where the lines cross is the Tree of Life, the central axis from which the shaman can move in all directions in an infinite universe. This basic pattern of two crossed lines enclosed in a circle appears carved on stones, worked into jewelry, and painted on cave walls throughout the world.

Center of the World
The Center of the World is the axis mundi, an existential place or point where the sacred manifests in space and the dream unfolds, bringing the world into existence. The axis mundi joins the diametrically opposite forces of the universe as One. Creation and
entropy, the essential generative and destructive forces of the universe, exist simultaneously, mirror images of each other together within the Great Mystery.

The Center of the World is not just a metaphor for the shaman but an actual place. Shamans move through this place in altered states of consciousness to connect with all the other dimensions of the Otherworld.

Ascent and Descent
Themes of ascent and descent in stories and myths are symbolic of entering and traveling through the spirit realms. While the symbolism is important for all people, the means of ascent and descent are real and literal for the shaman. Movement in the spirit world and between the realms is essential for the shaman's work.

Different means of ascent provide access to the Upperworld. Common symbols of ascent are trees, poles, ladders, stairs, rainbows, cloud tunnels, and rising smoke. Stairways are seen in Thai murals and in Buddha's descent from Trayatrimsa Heaven. The Egyptian Book of the Dead refers to the ladder to heaven, the klimax is a seven rung ladder in Mithraic mysteries, and the Russian of Voronezh bake dough ladders with seven rungs to honor their dead. In China and Korea a ladder is literally constructed of swords for the initiate to climb during the final stage of shamanic initiation.

Different means of descent provide access to the Lowerworld. Common symbols of descent are trees, stairs, caves, and holes, for example the holes found in the center of the floor of kiva homes in southwestern North America.

Bridges
Bridge themes in stories and myths are symbolic of making a crossing, often a dangerous one, from one reality to another. Bridges, like the Rainbow Bridge, connect different realities and allow the shaman to cross from ordinary reality to non-ordinary reality. An example is found in Japanese initiations during which a bridge must be constructed upon seven arrows and seven boards.

Cosmic Rope
The Cosmic Rope appears in stories and myths. It holds heaven to the earth and the human soul to the body. The shamans of the Huichol of Central America, the Inuit around the North Pole, and the indigenous peoples of Asia and Tibet speak of a fine thread, as thin and silky as the thread of a spider, that connects the lifeforce (soul) to the body. In the Thai custom of tham khwan, that thread is tied to the body when the soul of a person is at risk of being lost.

Numbers
Certain numbers appear in shamanism and in other traditions including Judaism, Daoism (Taoism), Islam, yoga, and Tibetan Buddhism. The numbers seven, nine, and twelve represent the layers of the Upperworld and the levels of the Lowerworld. These numbers appear again and again, in shamanism where journeying is central as well as in other religious practices in which journeying is used, but is not central to the practice. The presence of the numbers in religious traditions belies the journeying that was fundamental to earlier forms of that religious discipline. See also Africa; Celtic; language.


Shamanism
Shamanism, both traditional and contemporary, is the practice of initiated
**Shamans**, who are distinguished by their mastery of a range of **altered states of consciousness**. Shamanism arises from the actions the shaman takes in **non-ordinary reality** and the results of those actions in **ordinary reality**.

**Trance** is the technology of shamanism. Shamanic methods use a range of trance states involving **journey** trances, during which the shaman's **soul** leaves the body and moves into the spirit world, and **embodiment** trances, during which the shaman calls a helping spirit into his or her own body to work on the patient in the physical world. The type of trance and the depth of trance are determined by what the shaman needs to accomplish during the **ritual**.

These actions are made possible through the shaman's relationship with **helping spirits** who are the source of the shaman's **information** and **power**. Shamans conduct rituals for **healing** and **divination**. Rituals cannot be repeated by rote if they are to be kept relevant and effective. Shamans use trance states to access helping spirits who direct the creation and adaptation of ritual.

Shamanism is not a **religion**, though it is the prototype for the later development of the mystery religions. In shamanism there is no dogma, no church, no cult, and no divine personification. There are **prayers** and **sacrifice**, but not in the abstract form of religious worship. They are common, daily actions that maintain balance and well-being.

Shamanism demands spiritual discipline. This path of service involves personal sacrifice and the opportunity for the highest stages of mystical development for the mature shaman. Shamanism accesses the power of the **transpersonal** experience of life and of the ecstatic Connection-to-all-things. For the master shaman, shamanism discloses nothing less than what is found in the higher mystical traditions. See also **ecstasy**.

---

**Shaman Pharmaceuticals**

Shaman Pharmaceuticals, Inc., is a traditional pharmaceutical company whose focus is to discover and develop novel pharmaceuticals in a way that is ethical and sustainable. By working with ethnobotany, isolation chemistry, pharmacology, and the people of the tropical forests, Shaman Pharmaceuticals hopes to create a more efficient means of discovering drugs than mass screening and genetic engineering.

Simultaneous goals include devising effective strategies for producing raw materials that sustain the forest people and their ecosystems, and developing sustainable and non-destructive harvesting methods for plant products that maintain the integrity, diversity, and productivity of the ecosystems.

King, S. R. *Cultural Survival Quarterly* 15, no. 3 (summer 1991).

---

**Shaman’s Death**

The result of shamanic **initiation** is the death of the initiate's ego self. This death occurs in an **altered state of consciousness**, and is experienced as real death. It is not a psychological metaphor. Shamanic initiation creates a fundamental change in the initiate's existential condition. The initiate becomes another person whose orientation in the world is totally different. Because the familiar self dies away, shamanic initiation is often called a "little death" or the "shaman's death."

The ego is referred to as the "little self" because, in its pre-initiatory form, the ego and its associated belief system, keep the individual small minded and immature in behavior. The aspects of the ego that die off in initiation are the aspects of the ego that limit the shaman's relationship with the spirit world. It is through this relationship...
that the shaman experiences a Connection-to-all-Things, or the “big self.” This relationship demands humility from the shaman and the ability to surrender the ego to the will of the spirit world.

With the death of the ego self, the shaman’s will is no longer controlled by the ego. The shaman gains the internal freedom to align his or her will consciously with the Will of the spirit world and receives his or her supernatural power. The shaman’s relationship with spirit, his own and that of the Kosmos, is transformed in such a way that there is no turning back. See also dismemberment and ego death.


**Shaman’s Ladder**

Ladders are found in shamanic rituals around the world. Generally the ladder has seven or twelve rungs, symbolic of the layers of ascent into the Upperworld or the levels of descent into the Lowerworld. Whether used as a means of ascent or descent, the ladder is symbolic of the Tree of Life and functions in the same way.

Like the Tree of Life, ladders are a means of communication between the worlds. They provide an alternate means of ascent for the shaman or the souls of the deceased into the Upperworld. They are also a means of descent for the helping spirits to join the shaman in the Middleworld. In some cultures a ladder is set up in the room in which the healing ritual will take place to allow an easy descent for the helping spirits who will aid the shaman.

The ladder functions whether or not it is created literally or is experienced only in non-ordinary reality during trance. A unique manifestation of the ladder is created by firing a succession of arrows into the sky for the journeying soul to use as a ladder. Ladders appear, for example, in the rituals of shamanic cultures in Tibet, Mongolia, South America, Southeast Asia, India, and Indonesia.

Often the ladder is an aspect of the final stage or highest degree of shamanic initiation. For example, the manang (shaman) of the Dyak of Borneo is initiated in three stages of increasing difficulty. The final stage demands that the initiate successfully enter an ecstatic trance of soul flight and climb into the Upperworld on a ritual ladder. Ladders used in initiation are found, for example, in South America, Asia, where the ladder is made of swords or metal blades, and India, where the blades are wooden. See also ecstacy and sword ladder.


**Shaman’s Sickness**

“Shaman’s sickness,” or initiatory illness, refers to the specific, physical and/or mental illness that results when spirit chooses a new shamanic candidate and possesses the candidate or takes his or her soul into the spirit world. The sickness does not respond to normal treatment, nor does it progress like a normal illness. It may advance and retreat without reason and defy our understanding of how similar symptoms normally function in the body.

This illness is cured only when the one stricken surrenders to the will of spirit, faces his or her fear of death, and cures his or her own madness or illness. The individual gains shamanic power in the process by finding meaning in the crisis and curing herself. As a result of this passage, the individual can work with the fears and madness in others having now crossed that emotional and psychological territory within her self. See also shaman.
Shapeshifting
Shapeshifting is the ability to transform physically into other shapes, usually those of animals who serve as helping spirits. This phenomenon is widespread in shamanism. Some scholars apply the term to aspects of shamanic rituals that involve only partial transformation. In these rituals the shaman assumes at least some of the animal's characteristics, usually while dancing in an embodiment trance.

The literal, physical transformation of the shaman is mentioned frequently in stories of past shamans. The power and skill necessary are rare today, though shapeshifting does occur for all shamans while they are in journeying trance states. Some past shamans were capable of shapeshifting in the presence of spectators, while others could only perform this act of power alone. Shapeshifting is also an aspect of sorcery, medicine, and various magics of deception.

Shapeshifting is one means of learning and gathering power from the animals, plants, or other forms that the shaman transforms into. Jaguar shamans of South America and bear shamans of Asia and North America are particularly renowned for their ability to transform into animals. These transformations give them enormous powers for healing.

Another aspect of shapeshifting is the transmutation of the transformed shaman, biologically male shamans who adopt female gender roles as a prerequisite for training as shamans. Overtime the most powerful of these transformed shamans succeed in physically shapeshifting into females to better serve their roles as shamans. It cannot be proven whether or not the ancient shamans could transform physical form. However, it is clear that they lived in a time during which the prevailing beliefs supported the abilities of shamans to physically change form at will.

Shapeshifting is the key component of the Celtic shaman's ability to access the power. As the shaman experiences life as animals, plants, elements, and fae folk, his or her web of awareness reaches out until he or she is ultimately aware from the perspective of all things and of the interconnectedness of all things. Those who have been all things experience the greatest universal truth: all things are made of the same energy, they share the same power, and that power and energy moves among all things, sharing the consciousness and the creative power of life. See also animal spirits; journey; power displays.


Shih-Niang
The male transformed shamans of ancient China. The shih-niang were described as “not male and not female,” referring to their gender-variant nature, and “not dreaming and not awake,” referring to their ability to move between the physical and spiritual worlds while in trance. The shih-niang dressed in a fusion of feminine, masculine, and sacred dress. They were employed by various cults, including Pan Hu of the canine warrior deity and Ta Wang Shen of the serpent king.

In ancient China the wu (shamans) were predominantly female. Trance states were considered a yin activity, used by all women as part of their personal spiritual practice. Because it was a
yin practice, any boy who demonstrated shamanic potential as a child was given a female name and dressed as a woman all his life. These boys became the shih-niang.


Shopan

The shopan is a transformed shaman of the Aleut and Kodiak peoples of the southern Alaskan regions. Their gender variance was recognized as children, sometimes as infants. These boys were raised as girls, wearing the feminine clothing and hair styles and plucking their facial hair. After adolescence their shopan training began as with all other Aleut angakok.

Mature shopan were highly respected angakut. As boys between the ages of ten to fifteen the shopan were often wed to older men, during their training. The Aleut considered it lucky to have a shopan as a partner. See also achnucek and gender variant.


Shuar

The Shuar, untsuri suara, live in the Amazon rain forest of eastern Ecuador in an area between the Rio Pastaza in the north, the Rio Zamora in the south, the Rio Pangui in the east, and the Andes to the west. There are four other primary Shuar tribes: the Achuara to the northeast, the Mayna to the east of the Achuara, the Huambisa to the southeast, and the Aguaruna to the south southeast.

Shuar, meaning “man” or “people,” is how the Shuar refer to themselves. In the literature the Shuar are also called the Jivaro, Jibaro, Xivaro, or Shuara. The Shuar are the only group of peoples in South America to remain unconquered by the Inka (1527) or the Spaniards (1549), nor have they ever signed a treaty with the Spaniards.

The first mission was built in Shuar territory in 1870. Contact with whites and colonization increased steadily from that point for the Shuar living on desirable land. For the Shuar living in the interior, east of Cordillera de Cutucú, little changed in their traditional way of life until contact with the outside world in 1956.

The Shuar word for shaman, uwishin, means “someone who knows all the secrets.” Uwishin are healers and sorcerers who work with medicinal plants, spirit powers accessed through drinking natem (ayahuasca) and tsentsak (magical darts) to benevolent and malevolent ends, respectively.

For the Shuar, knowing how the world really is and how to manipulate its processes is power. Magical phlegm,
helping spirits, and tsentsaks are three traditional aspects or manifestations of the shaman's power. These manifestations of power can pass through many objects, substances, forms, and actions.

The First Shaman
The First Shaman of the Shuar was Tshunqui, goddess of the waters. A woman of white skin and long hair, she was able to transform herself into an anaconda. She lived underwater protected by crocodiles and anacondas and using a turtle as a stool. This is why chumpis (stools), symbols of the shaman, are carved as turtles.

From time to time Tshunqui supplied certain shamans with particularly deadly tsentsak of quartz crystal. Thus the origin of the power and knowledge of the use of the tsentsak is attributed to the Tshunqui, who is believed to still be alive today under the water. An important part of the training of an uwishin continues to be going for a time to live under the waters of a river with a Tshunqui. The uwishin makes a pact with Tshunqui who becomes his wife and mentor for this period of training.

An uwishin's knowledge comes from the teaching of other uwishins, dreams, rituals, and from the spirits he accesses when he drinks natem. Knowledge also comes from practical experiences like spending the night on beaches with dangerous animals and other tests and making many sacrifices such as experiencing prolonged hunger and thirst, extreme heat and cold, and sexual abstinence. The uwishin will spend years, on and off, learning from living alone in the jungle.

The path for gaining shamanic powers is the same for benevolent or malevolent uwishin. They are distinguished from each other by their use of that power. The yahauci uwishin, or wawek, is the sorcerer who derives his social rank primarily through the fear of what he might do. The pener uwisin is the shaman healer who derives his social rank primarily through the power of his healing and by being an asset to his neighbors.

Though the Shuar no longer shrink heads, jealousy continues to be a danger for successful uwishin. A shaman of a different Shuar family may be moved by his jealousy to lash out through an act of sorcery to kill the successful uwishin.

Payment for services is expected by shamans and sorcerers, usually with highly valued goods. The payment or sacrifice from the patient or petitioner performs a function; it closes the circle of energy that is opened by the shaman's work on the individual's behalf. Without this energetic closure the illness or energies removed during the session would be free to linger and enter other people, re-creating disease and illness in a new person.

Plant Hallucinogens
The Shuar believe that normal life is an illusion and that the true powers behind daily life lie in the spirit world. Therefore, true reality is revealed with the uwishin's potent hallucinogenic plant preparations. Even infants, within a few days of birth, are given a hallucinogenic drink to assist the infant in entering the "real" world and connecting with an Ancestor spirit who will help the child survive the hazards of infancy.

At six years of age Shuar boys must acquire an arutam wakani, the soul that can journey into the spirit realms and communicate with the ancestors. The corresponding initiation for young girls is unclear. Training as a shaman is based on the successful completion of this initiation into adulthood.

To get his arutam vision the boy and his father travel to the sacred waterfall, the origin of the Shuar people and a gathering place of spirits. They travel together in a sacred way, bathing and fasting to cleanse and drinking only tobacco water. When they arrive they bathe in a ritual way in the falls by day and call the spirits to them at night.

Natem (ayahuasca) or maikoa (Brugmansia or Datura) may be added
to the tobacco water to induce an alternate state of consciousness that will induce the boy’s contact with the spirit world. Once in the spirit realm, if the boy has the courage to reach out and touch the spirit that comes to him, the arutam will enter his body as a pair of jaguar or anaconda. The vision then explodes and the boy, having made contact, returns home. If he does not speak of his experiences the arutam returns in his dreams in the form of a human Ancestor and begins to communicate with him.

Natem induces a much less violent intoxication and is used more frequently. However, if natem is not successful in revealing the boy’s arutam, maikoa will be used. Maikoa is the most powerful and also the most dangerous hallucinogen used by the Shuar. They distinguish six types of maikoa, all of which are stronger than natem.

Shamans prefer to use natem in their healing sessions because the potency of maikoa is too great for the shaman to be able to function deliberately, singing, sucking, and interacting, during the healing ritual. The uwishin’s achievements are directly connected not only to his or her ability to enter the “real” world but to his or her ability to use those energies and spirits with intention.

Training
The first act of formal training with a master uwishin, who may be a man or a woman, is to receive the master’s breath into the crown of the head. This transfer of energy enables the apprentice to be more at peace and healthy. During the years of apprenticeship that follow, the master and apprentice will fast and drink natem many times. The apprentice will also drink malikawa, a plant hallucinogen with powerful cleansing properties that help the body to heal and to integrate the changes brought on by the training.

Periodically during training the apprentice will live a simple life, alone in the forest. During that time he drinks natem to contact the spirit world and acquire helping spirits for protection. Datura may also be also be consumed to develop spirit vision. An uwishin properly trained can become one with the jaguar spirit allowing it to enter his or her soul and transform his or her body. These powerful uwishin are known to run through the forest as jaguars.

The master uwishin experiences the inner reality of his or her apprentice the first evening they drink natem. In training the master, who appears under the influence of natem to have a gold, red, and greenish “crown” above his head, creates an evolutionary process in his apprentice that induces an existential change from which the apprentice cannot go back to his or her former self. During this time the apprentice must have a spontaneous dream vision of the future that marks the spirit world’s acceptance of the new uwishin.

More often women train female uwishin. Men do not readily agree to train women who ask because the Shuar believe that, though men and women are equal, women can be more powerful than men. Women have access to secrets that men do not have.

Acquiring Power—Tsentsaks
Tsentsaks, or invisible darts, are the essence of the uwishin’s power. They have a dual nature and an almost infinite variety of forms in both their material object form and their helping spirit form. Tsentsaks reside in the uwishin’s body and are only visible when he or she has ingested natem. Sorcerers send a tsentsak into the body of the victim to create illness, pain, or death. Shamans send a tsentsak into the body of the victim to recover the sorcerer’s intruding dart and to aid the shaman in its removal.

The power of a tsentsak varies according to the type and the power of the master uwishin who originally supplied it. The most powerful, and therefore the most valued, tsentsaks come from the uwishin of the Quechua-
speaking Canelos tribe. It is also important to note that the tsentsaks from a sorcerer can only create another sorcerer, while those from a healing uwishin can create either sorcerers or healers.

Any adult male or female who presents a sizable gift to an established uwishin can receive instruction and a supply of tsentsak helping spirits. Neither a sorcerer nor a shaman can expect to become a successful practitioner unless the power of his or her tsentsak exceeds the power in those he or she is working against.

The tsentsak power is transferred to the lesser uwishin in magical phlegm, that appears as a brilliant, translucent substance under the influence of natem. The master uwishin regurgitates the phlegm containing the tsentsaks, cuts part of it off with a machete, and gives it to the lesser uwishin who swallows it. The receiving uwishin experiences stomach pain and must stay in bed for ten days, repeatedly drinking natem. The master uwishin periodically camays (blows into) and rubs the body of the receiver to aid in the integration of the new power.

Taboos must be followed if the powers of the tsentsak are to integrate properly. The receiving uwishin must remain inactive and abstain from sex for several months. The end of the first month is a critical time. The first tsentsak emerges and with it a tremendous desire to misuse the power and perform sorcery. If the uwishin acts on this impulse he or she will become a sorcerer. If he or she controls this impulse and swallows the first tsentsak, he or she can become a curing uwishin. Either way, to gain the power to kill or heal a man, the uwishin must follow the taboos and abstain from sex for five months. To become a truly effective shaman or sorcerer the uwishin must abstain for a full year.

During this period of taboo and abstinence, the new uwishin collects and consumes pairs of all kinds of insects, plants, and other small objects. The greater the variety of these objects, the greater the uwishin's ability. These objects are transformed into the material forms of the tsentsaks. Because of their dual nature, each tsentsak also has a spirit form, such as a giant butterfly, jaguar, or monkey, who assist the uwishin in his tasks.

The ability of the uwishin to perform successful sucking healings depends largely upon the quantity and strength of his or her own tsentsaks. Under the influence of natem the tsentsak do many things simultaneously. As magical darts they directly assist the uwishin in sucking healings. As helping spirits they cover his body in a protective shield and remain on the lookout for any enemy tsentsaks headed toward the shaman. When an enemy tsentsak appears they close together around the point of entry and repel it. Uwishin constantly drink tobacco water to keep the tsentsaks fed and ready to repel the tsentsaks of sorcerers.

Power Loss
Any uwishin who gives tsentsaks to another uwishin can draw them back at any time without notice, regardless of the distance separating them. This sudden loss of shamanic power may result in serious illness or death, so it is not done frivolously. Typical reasons are a personal offense or a compelling bribe from a third party. As a safeguard against this type of power loss it is common practice to obtain tsentsaks from several master uwishins.

Though the uwishin may have hundreds, the tsentsaks are gradually used up through curing, sorcery, or passing them on to lesser uwishins. Every few years the uwishin expects to visit a master uwishin to have his supply of tsentsak replenished. At death a uwishin's remaining tsentsak fly back to the uwishin from whom they were originally received.

The Soul
The Shuar recognize three kinds of souls. The nekás wakanï is the original or ordinary soul. The arutam is an
acquired soul and is significant in many aspects of Shuar culture, particularly relative to men and their sense of power and maleness. The third type of soul is a muisak, or avenging soul, which is central to the traditional practice of head shrinking.

The nekás wakanî is born at the same moment as the person, male and female. The material presence of this "true soul" is primarily in the blood and bleeding is perceived of as process of soul-loss. At death the nekás wakanî leaves the body, returns to the site of its birth, and lives there, an invisible "human demon" in an invisible spirit house. Over time it transforms into a "true demon" and into a giant butterfly, and finally into water vapor.

The arutam soul does not exist at birth; it must be acquired at the sacred waterfall as described above. A person may possess two arutam souls at a time and endeavors to do so. The uwishin always possess arutam souls, which appear as an inverted rainbows in the person's chest when viewed under the influence of natem.

The Shuar believe that a man cannot die while he possesses an arutam soul. Therefore, it must leave before he can die. At the moment of death, the arutam wakani comes into existence for the first time and, once created, is eternal. This transformation is said to generate strong winds, thunder, and lightning at the site of the death.

The muisak is closely related to the arutam soul. The sole reason for the existence of a muisak is to avenge a death and only a person who possesses an arutam soul is capable of forming a muisak to avenge his death. The muisak exists in the corpse and subsequently in the shrunked head, or tsantsa. The completion of the head-shrinking process forces the muisak to enter the tsantsa and binds it there.

If the human head is not taken and the tsantsa prepared, the muisak is able to travel from the corpse and transform into any of three types of demons, or iwancî, to avenge the death. These three demons take forms of the natural world that can kill, e.g., a particularly dangerous poisonous snake, the water boa constrictor or anaconda, and a large tree which falls on its victim. Cause of death by these means is considered supernatural.

Illness
Uwishins diagnose one of two causes of illness: an act of sorcery by a malevolent uwishin or a microbes or other infectious agent from the environment. Both types will respond to the uwishin's treatment. "White man's diseases," normally of an epidemic nature, such as whooping cough, measles, colds, and some mild diarrheas, are normally the only diseases not attributed to sorcery. Sorcery is believed to be the cause of the vast majority of illness, pain and non-violent deaths. Tsentsaks are therefore the main supernatural cause of illness and the cure. Tsentsaks can only be seen by uwishin while under the influence of natem and are otherwise normally invisible.

Healing
The healing sessions are held almost exclusively at night or at least in a darkened room so that the uwishin, in a natem-induced trance, can see the non-ordinary reality aspects of the illnesses. An uwishin can cure five to ten patients during a single session. Those who are to be healed gather in the early evening and drink natem with the uwishin, as the spirit of natem is believed to be a healer in its own right.

The uwishin alerts his or her tsentsak helping spirits by whistling his or her personal curing song. After about fifteen to twenty minutes he or she starts singing his or her icaros. There are many different icaros and no one uwishin knows them all. The icaros come from the particular spirits and forces of nature the uwishin is in working relationship with. Therefore the icaros a uwishin uses depends on the knowledge and discoveries he or she has made with the spirits.
At first the *icaros* are sung to the spirits from whom the *uwishin* will draw healing power. Eventually, those spirits present themselves and begin to *sing* through the *uwishin*. The *uwishin*, and/or the assistant, narrates the healing process, announcing the helping spirits as they arrive and reporting on the progress and success of the healing as it transpires.

First the shaman will “look” into the patient to diagnose the true nature and cause of the illness, sometimes blowing a diagnostic *tsentsak* in to see more clearly. The *natem* enables the *uwishin* to see into the body as if the patient were transparent. If the illness is due to sorcery, the *uwishin* will see the intruding object within the patient’s body clearly enough to determine whether or not he can cure the illness.

When the *uwishin* is ready to suck out the offending object, he or she regurgitates two of his or her own *tsentsaks* that match the object seen in the patient. If he or she sees a bone fragment or bug, he or she must regurgitate two bone fragments or two of the same kind of bug. The *uwishin* holds one of these *tsentsaks* in the front and one in the back of the mouth and then sucks on the area of the body where the offending object is located.

The pair of *tsentsaks* are expected to catch the offending object as it is sucked from the patient’s body. The *uwishin*’s *tsentsak* pair trap the sorcerer’s *tsentsak* and incorporate its essence into themselves. The *uwishin* then vomits out this incorporated object and displays it to the patient and family. The *uwishin* does not swallow it because it would make him/her ill and could kill him/her.

The offending object, once removed, must be disposed of carefully because it can enter an innocent passerby and cause illness again. It is either thrown into the air so that it flies back to the sorcerer of origin or it is shot into the forest where the energies of Nature will consume it and render it harmless.

If the offending *tsentsak* has been shot with such force that it passes all the way through the body then there is nothing to suck out and the patient will probably die. If the *tsentsak* only lodges in the body then it is possible for the *uwishin* to remove it if his or her *tsentsaks* are as powerful as those of the sorcerer.

When illness is diagnosed as something other than sorcery the *uwishin* may suck out foul or stuck energies, for example the essential energy of a tumor, perform a cleansing, or send the patient to the white doctors for antibiotics. If *soul loss* is diagnosed the *uwishin* will enter the spirit world with his or her helping spirits and retrieve the lost soul. The Shuar believe that soul loss is caused by *espantu*, a sudden fear or trauma.

**Song—*Icaros***

Song is used regularly by the Shuar, shaman and non-shaman alike, to communicate directly with the spirit world. For example, the women sing every morning to Nunkuí, the goddess of the *earth*, plants, gardens, and protector of women, so as not to startle her as they go to the gardens to dig up tuberous crops. Successful potters were given songs by the spirits to sing to prevent their pots from cracking when firing. The shaman sings *icaros* throughout the healing sessions to empower the healings and to guide the *natem*-induced experiences of the patient’s.

**Instruments:**

The *uwishin* accompanies himself during the healing session on the *tumank*, a *bow* that is plucked while held between the lips. It is made of monkey gut or fishing line strung on a three to four foot long piece of bamboo. The Shuar also play a *kiittar*, a violin carved from a single block of wood. See also *Brugmansia aurea*.


Sahtouris, E. “Talking with Shuar Medicine Men.” *ReVision* 19, no. 3.
Siberia

The vast Northern Asiatic region from the Pacific Ocean to the Ural mountains and from the Arctic Ocean in the north to Kazakhstan in the south. It is the general consensus of scholars that the peoples living in this vast region express enough common cultural traits to be treated as one large group, the Siberians. Siberian peoples were chiefly hunters and reindeer herdspeople, near the coast hunters and whalers, and on the steppe herdsman and breeders all with some degree of nomadism.

The term “Siberian shamans” encompasses shamans from the Saami of Lapland to the Chukchee of the Chukchee Peninsula. The primary groups are the Tungus, Mongols, Chukchee, and Samoyed. The word “shaman” comes from the Evenk (Tungus) language. The shamanism of this region (Siberia and Mongolia) is referred to as “classic shamanism” in the literature. However, the “classic shaman” is an academic ideal which only partly reflects reality and is no longer universally believed to be true.

There is rich variation between tribes in the specifics and forms of their shamanic practices. However, there are also overall patterns in the functions performed. The dominant trance state used for divination and healing is soul flight, during which the shaman’s soul leaves the physical realms and enters the spirit world. The spirit world is made up of many layers all connected by the Cosmic Tree, Cosmic Pillar, or World Mountain. New shamans are chosen spontaneously by spirit and this call usually manifests in a prolonged, unexplained illness. The blacksmith is often fundamental in shaman's transformation during initiation.

Most Siberian tribes recognized several different kinds of healers, e.g., herbal healers, diviners, and those who work exclusively with the souls of the dead. Among shamans there are two general types: There is the shaman who uses his or her mastery of trance to work with souls, spirits, and illness. These practitioners are shamans as defined in this volume. There are also “clan shamans” who care for the spiritual and reproductive well-being of the family through prayers and sacrifice. These practitioners do not use trance states and are priests as defined in this volume.

This distinction is often referred to as “black” and “white” shamans. The Buryat and Yakut people, for example, consider those shamans who enter trance and work with the spirits in ritual, “black shamans.” Those practitioners who conduct ceremonies of prayer and/or sacrificial offering and do not use trance are “white shamans.”

Cosmology

The Siberian peoples of North Asia conceive of the spirit world as a world exactly like the physical world only inverted or in reverse. This is why rituals that involve the spirits often begin at sunset. It is morning in the spirit world and the spirits are waking. Siberian shamanism was greatly influenced by Buddhism in the Middle Ages. The cosmology became more elaborate and the shamanic practices more institutionalized.

The spirit world is comprised of an Upperworld, a Middleworld, and a Lowerworld. The Upper and Lowerworlds are experienced by the shamans as having layers, the numbers of which vary between six, seven, nine, and twelve usually, depending on the cultural group or tribe. For example the Samoyed shamans journey in six levels under the sea, like the Eskimo, while the Tungus conceive of levels under the earth, but not the sea.
The Cosmic Tree

All of these worlds are connected by the limbs, trunk, and branches of the Tree of Life, or Cosmic Tree. The shaman travels along or through the Cosmic Tree to find safe passage to and from all the realms of the spirit world. The Cosmic Tree itself has many layers of rich meaning. It describes a universe that is in continual regeneration as it draws on an inexhaustible spring of cosmic life from the Source, the great reservoir of the sacred that is the source of all things.

The Cosmic Tree is the source of wood for the shaman’s drum and is often part of the designs painted on the drum head. Symbolically, the shaman climbs the Cosmic Tree each time he or she climbs the sacred birch in ritual. Replicas of the tree are placed inside and in front of the shaman’s yurt.

First Shaman

The creation mythology of the different Siberian peoples refers to an earlier time when relations between the people and the spirits, and the Supreme Being and shamans, were more intimate. Events occur that cause a distancing in the relationships between the physical and spiritual worlds. Humans struggle with disease and death and the Supreme Being sends the First Shaman or another surrogate to defend and heal humans.

Souls

Siberian peoples conceive of the human soul as a multiple soul. A persona can have anywhere from three to seven souls, depending on the culture and the person. These aspects of the soul have different destinations at death. One aspect remains in the grave with the body and goes into the earth, another descends to the Land of the Dead, and a third aspect ascends to the Upperworld. There is variation across Siberia in the number of souls and where they travel at death.

The Call—Dismemberment

Siberian shamans are called spontaneously by the spirits. The call usually manifests in an unexplained physical and/or mental illness that does not respond normally to treatment. This is often referred to as an initiatory illness, however this illness is more a test of the candidate’s readiness to train than a final initiation. In many cultures there are initiations later when the new shaman has displayed the power and ability to practice.

While the candidate lies in a state of “illness,” he or she is also in an altered state of consciousness, during which his or her soul travels in the spirit world. The candidate experiences a dismemberment death at the hands (claws and teeth) of spirit, and recovering from that, instruction in how to heal and perform ritual. The experience often ends with the understanding that the candidate must now become a shaman or he or she will get sick and die.

There are many variations in the specifics of who the spirits are, where they take the new shaman, and the exact nature of his or her dismemberment or ego death. In some cultures the initiate must pass a test like having a certain number of bones or kind of bones.

Divination

The shaman’s function in the community is healing and divination. Divination is used to diagnose the cause of illness, to find game, lost objects, and people, to observe things at a distance or in other times, and to discern the meaning of particular tribal events. The shaman uses the drum to induce trance for the kamlanie, a shamanic healing ritual used for healing and/or divination.

Other tools and methods are also used for divination. The drum itself is used in one method of divination, in which the movement of small objects across the drum head indicates the answer. Other methods vary with shaman, tribe, and culture. For example, scapulimancy in which the shaman reads the cracks of a heated scapular bone, or Buddhist cubes or dice which are cast and read.
**Healing**

Illness is believed to be caused by soul loss, which is caused by the soul wandering and getting lost or being stolen by a spirit or sorcerer with malevolent intent. The shaman must enter trance to find the lost soul and capture it or convince it to return to the patient's body. In some parts of Asia the energy intrusion or spirit intrusion (possession) is also a cause of illness. In this case the shaman must extract the intruding magical object or exorcise the spirit in the patient's body. Sometimes illness is caused by a combination of the above, for example, soul loss followed by spirit possession.

Some illness is caused by disrespect or an omission in respect shown to the spirit world. In these cases recovery is dependent on restoring balance between the human and spiritual forces. The shaman must divine the true cause of the illness and the ritual sacrifices necessary to restore balance.

**Psychopomp**

The shaman also serves as a psychopomp, guiding the souls of the deceased to the Land of the Dead. Among the Altaic, the Goldi, and the Yurak peoples, the shaman escorts the deceased to the beyond at the end of the funeral banquet. Among the Tungus, it is believed that only the souls of the deceased who linger in the land of the living beyond the usual period need the shaman's assistance.

In some Siberian cultures there are practitioners who specialize in handling the dead. Whether it is a shaman or a specialist the practitioner must be familiar with the road to the Land of the Dead and able to capture the soul and convey it to its new dwelling place.

**The Shaman's Drum**

Some scholars believe that the Tibetan double drum, a round, double-headed drum with a wooden handle, is the prototype for the drums of central and north Asia. The shaman's drum is a large round frame drum with one or two heads and a wooden handle. The drum's head is painted with the symbols of the shaman's Universe, a map of the spirit realms the shaman journeys through while in trances.

The drum functions practically as a means to induce trance. In many cultures the shaman describes riding the drum as a horse or a boat through the spirit world. The drum functions magically as the Cosmic Tree, allowing the shaman passage between the worlds.

The frame of the drum is taken from a tree that is the Cosmic Tree. The shaman is guided to that tree by spirit, just as he or she is guided to the animal whose hide will be used for the drumhead. Sacrifices of blood and vodka are offered to the tree and then the drum must be animated. During the various animation rituals the spirit of the tree and the spirit of the animal whose skin was used are embodied in the drum to awaken it.

When a drum is first constructed it is unusable because its spirit is not yet awake. The drum is given to a small child to play with for a few days. Then the shaman must look for the spirit of the animal who gave its skin for the drumhead. Sacrifices of blood and vodka are offered to the tree and then the drum must be animated. During the various animation rituals the spirit of the tree and the spirit of the animal whose skin was used are embodied in the drum to awaken it.

**The Shaman's Costume**

The costumes of Siberian shamans are elaborate and distinctly different district to district. Each garment is created with symbolic design in the structure of the garment as well as the decorations applied. The costumes include caps, which often denote rank, but no masks. In addition to an elaborate costume, transformed shamans often tattooed their faces, tattooing being a Siberian characteristic of feminine beauty.
The characteristics similar in the costumes of every Siberian shaman are: the basic caftan hung with iron disks and figures, often of mythical animals; a veil or blindfold to cover the eyes so that the shaman can more easily be guided by inner light; an iron or copper breast-plate, and a cap. The iron disks serve a variety of functions, the primary being protection against the intrusion of the malevolent spirits.

The costume often has characteristics of a bird, for example feathers applied like wings or the fur of the caftan is sewn into tufts. The feathers add to the image of the shaman dancing and embodying Merkyut, the Bird of the Heavens in the ecstatic flight through the spirit realms.

The shaman's costume embodies spirits and is therefore a power object. In many Siberian cultures the shaman cannot conduct rituals without the power of the costume. Some costumes embodied spirits of the clan and, in that sense, the costume belonged to the clan and functioned as part of the prosperity of clan.

A novice shaman must see his or her costume in a dream. If he or she sees the costume of a deceased shaman the novice will see where it is and travel to the people of its clan. The novice must buy it from the relatives of the dead shaman, however the costume is not allowed to leave the clan. The costume embodies clan spirits, and if worn by anyone who does not treat them with respect or who cannot control them, the spirit may bring illness and misfortune to the clan.

Costumes that were worn out were hung in the forest to allow the spirits to leave. There were also many different ritual procedures for the handling of a deceased shaman's costume when he or she died without passing the costume on. The costume inspires the fear and apprehension in non-shamans and there are ritual procedures for its storage, transportation, and movement in the overall ritual process.

A variety of caps completed the shaman's costumes. Generally they were feather crowns or metal caps with antlers. The cap like the costume embodies spirit. It is considered the most important part of the costume because a great deal of the shaman's power is hidden there. Without the cap, the Siberian shaman is deprived of all real power. Different caps may represent different helping spirits. Often a progression of caps marks the shaman's progression of skills and acquisition of power.

For example, in some regions the brown owl cap cannot be worn by a shaman immediately after his or her initiation. In the course of a kamlanie the spirits reveal to the new shaman when he or she will have acquired enough power to wear the cap and use other higher insignia without danger.

**Bronze Mirrors**

The bronze mirror, called küzungü (Turks), panaptu (Manchu), and toli (Mongol and Tungus), is used by shamans for personal protection and in diagnosis and healing. The copper mirror, believed by some to be a sun sign, is the only part of the shaman's paraphernalia that is not inherited or made new. In the past they were found, usually in the wilderness, in a ravine, or flying in the rays of the sun.

The use and meaning of the copper mirrors varies from tribe to tribe. For many it provides a means to see into the spirit world with “spirit eyes,” for example, the mirror enables the shaman to “see the (spirit) world,” to “place the spirits,” or to reflect the needs of mankind into the spirit world. Other tribes use the copper mirror to see the souls of the deceased, particularly ghosts.

**Plant Hallucinogens**

The amanita muscaria mushroom is possibly the oldest plant hallucinogen and the most prominent plant entheogen used in the Asiatic region of the world. Siberian shamans call it the
“mainstay of the Heavens” and use it to enter trance and fly into the Upperworld. While entering into and in the initial stages of trance the shaman dances for the spirit of the mushroom, to call in the helping spirits and to deepen the trance.

Gender
It is somewhat odd that many people, including anthropologists, assume that the earliest shamans were males given the linguistic evidence to the contrary. Russian anthropologists and linguists have shown clues hidden in the tribal languages of some parts of Siberia that the original shamans were women. Among the Siberian and Altaic tribal peoples the words for a female shaman (utygan, udagan, and udaghan) are linguistically similar, showing that they derive from the same root in a similar timeframe. In contrast the words for male shamans (saman, oyoun, bo, and kam) are linguistically unrelated, later developments.

Close
Siberia shamanism coexists to a great degree with the practices of Buddhism and Lamaism that first spread across Asia. However, it did not fare as well under the severe suppression of the Russian and Chinese governments during the 20th century. Shamans who continued to practice in order to serve their people and their spirits did so in secret and at terrible danger to themselves.

Many modern Siberian shamans have limited knowledge, an eclectic arsenal of techniques, and are often judged by members of their own groups to not be as powerful as the shamans, pre-suppression. However, the fact that any knowledge, power, and skills remain at all is a testament to a great strength of spirit and a true commitment to the good of the people.

Siberia, the land of classical shamanism, is also a land of dying shamanism. In Northern Siberia for example, an 83-year-old Nanay shaman is the last of the shamans in her village.

There is no one to pass on her lifetime of knowledge and skills to and the gift of power from her spirits. This tragedy repeats itself across Siberia and around the globe in the South America, North America, Australia, and Africa. See also black and white shamans; Buryat (Buriat); death and dying; Koryak; multiple soul belief; Tuva.


Silence
It is the wisdom of shamanic peoples to leave in silence the things we cannot talk about clearly in words. There are states of being and numinous experiences that are central to shamanic altered states of consciousness and shamanic healing experiences which defy description through words.

Choosing not to talk about sacred experiences is a way to contain and protect the energy. Though powerful, the energy of the sacred is illusive and easily contaminated. Silence is both a form of protecting the sacred and a means by which to hold the sacred while the non-rational aspects of a sacred experience are integrated.

Silence is often a necessary prerequisite to having an experience of the sacred. This is in part the reason for the traditional vision quest that lasts for three to four days in silence. The vision quest is time designated for silence in the hope that a message from spirit will be “heard.”

Silence is both a way to open to the sacred and to integrate the numinous aspects of sacred experiences. Silence is one of four universal healing salves.
(storytelling, singing, dance) employed by indigenous peoples to maintain health and well-being. Discomfort with silence, or any of the four healing salves, indicates a state of soul loss. See also altered states of consciousness and song.


Sima-Kade

Sima-Kade is the Zulu Tree of Life. Sima-Kade means the One who stands for all time, who has been standing for all time, and who will continue standing for all time. All people and things are connected to Sima-Kade and through Sima-Kade all things are connected to each other. This is the essence of the Tree of Life.

Sima-Kade fell in love with the All-knowing, Omniscient, Ninhavanhu-Ma, the silvery goddess. Ma, the Imperfect Undying One, was the very first Goddess of human form. She placed the heavens in order, the stars and the sun in the sky, and made the earth firm to live on. She created the pattern from which all life is formed and that is why we are all imperfect, born of the Great Struggle between Dark and Light.

Ma tried to escape the strange, knarled Sima-Kade by running across the great earth and shapeshifting through many forms. But Sima-Kade captured her in his twisted embrace. In this union, Ma became the first to accept a path in life that she, like the shaman, did not desire, but could not resist.

She gave birth to the first nation of humans who populated the barren Kalahari. The First People were all of one kind, sharing the same stature, ochre red skin, no hair, and the golden eyes of Ma. They lived in peace for more than ten thousand years.

As Sima-Kade watched the birth pains of his beloved Ma, helpless and awed, he transformed into the first spring. Green buds burst forth. Seeds spewed from his body and grew immediately in the rocky plains. Lush green began to spread across the earth. Forests grew and in their search for water the clouds began the cycle of water on earth. Together, Ma and Sima-Kade gave birth to all life.

Sima-Kade’s roots sprouted reptiles, while animals snarled and howled and burst from his branches. Insects emerged in clouds of humming and whining. Birds flew and waddled from his trunk and the song of life began where there had been no life. See also Zulu.


Sing

A sing or chant is a lengthy and complicated ceremony that is prescribed for healing among the indigenous peoples of the southwestern North America, particularly the Dineh. See also hatááld.

Singing

Singing is a tool used by shamans and shamanic peoples to open their hearts and minds to spirit and/or to embody spirit. Most shamans have a personal power song. By singing that song the shaman gathers and focuses his or her own soul in his or her heart, mind, and body.

Helping spirits each have their own song. These spirits teach their songs to people in dreams, altered state of consciousness experiences, or during vision quests. Singing these songs calls that spirit into the shaman’s body, inducing an embodiment trance. Or the shaman can use the song to call the helping spirit into the sacred space of the ritual.

Both songs and dances are traditionally considered sacred in origin because
they are revealed directly by spirit. Singing as instructed by spirit is a form of prayer. It is also a way to gather power from non-ordinary reality for use in ordinary reality. For example, Lakota shamans take years to learn the songs and rhythms necessary to hold particular spirits in sacred space once they have entered the shaman's ritual.

Singing is one of four universal, healing salves (storytelling, silence, dance) employed by indigenous peoples to maintain health and well-being. To stop singing, or to start feeling discomfort in any of the four healing salves, indicates a state of soul loss. See also trance.


Sioux
See Lakota.

Si.Si.Wiss
Si.Si.Wiss means sacred breath or sacred life. It is one of many traditional medicine practices of the Pacific Northwest Coast region. Within the Si.Si.Wiss tradition there are several different kinds of medicine. Some people heal with medicinal plants, some heal hands-on, while other heal with singing, drumming, or dancing.

Traditional healing ceremonies are group experiences in which people work together with the help of spirit to heal each other. The person doing the healing gives themselves over to the “healing spirit” and allows that spirit to enter their heart and guide what they do.

Singing and dancing are important tools in the Si.Si.Wiss tradition. They are used to pray and to heal and to gather personal energy before beginning healing work on others. Ancient songs are central to Si.Si.Wiss healing practices. These songs do not change. Healers learn the ancient, time-tested songs first to build their strength before learning and using their own, new songs.

It is common to see Si.Si.Wiss healers work with candlelight and firelight to cleanse and clear energies around the body. Another common technique is brushing energy off with the hands and releasing it upwards. The drum and bell are tools used to support journeying. See also dance.


Skull
In many shamanic cultures, the head (or the skull) contains the wisdom, truth, and power of a being, as well as a part of the soul. For some cultures the head contains the point of passage, or portal, between the physical and spirit worlds. Skulls were preserved as power objects and often handed down through family lines.

The Shuar of the Amazon Basin shrink the heads of their enemies to capture the arutam, or warrior soul of the dead. This practice honors the eternal power of the warrior spirit to avenge its death. By capturing the arutam and ritually securing it in the head through the shrinking process, the victorious warrior and his family are protected from harm. The heads are cared for generation after generation, to contain the avenging arutam and protect the family line.

In Northern European cultures the head is a mystical source of truth, wisdom, and healing for warriors and shamans. A common theme in Celtic mythology is the severed head that guides warriors to victory against impossible odds. In Teutonic myths the god Mimir’s head guards the well at the base of the World Tree, Yggdrasil. Hanging from this tree by one leg the great Norse shaman, Odin, received wisdom and understanding from the spirit world and brought forth the secrets of the runes to his people.
The Yukagir people of Central Asia believe that ancient knowledge and information about the afterlife gathered during a shaman's life through his or her journeys is retained in the skull of the shaman after death. The skulls of dead shamans were preserved and cared for as sacred power objects. They were used as divination tools by living shamans. The simplest method was to present the questions and then note the changing weight of the skull, light indicating yes and heavy indicating no.

The Huichol believe that all life came into being through the neirika. It is the portal that unifies the spirit of all things and all worlds and is found in the human head. It is both a passageway and a barrier between the worlds. Huichol shamans activate or awaken the neirika to use it as a passageway to move between the worlds.

Beyond these qualities, the role of sky is defined specifically by culture. See also elements; healing; journey; ritual.

Smudge
To purify or cleanse a power object, person, or ceremony with the smoke from a burning plant, like cedar, or plant resin, like copal. Plants commonly used include sweetgrass, wormwood, tobacco, sage, juniper, etc.

Soft Shaman
Transformed shamans, or soft shamans, are biological males who transform their gender from masculine to feminine to become shamans. “Transformed” refers to the gender metamorphosis that occurs within the male as he becomes female. Transformed shamans are also called “soft shamans,” which refers to the fluidity of their sexual and gender identification. Soft shamans are seen by their culture as belonging to a third or alternate gender. This transformation is expected of men becoming shamans and is sanctioned by their culture.

Soft shamans emerged in the Paleolithic era (2,500,000–10,000 B.C.E.) particularly among the Chukchee, Koryak, Kamchadal, Asiatic Eskimos, and throughout much of northeast Asia. These gender-variant shamans represented for their communities a sphere of spiritual powers that exists beyond the male-female polarity. In dress, behavior, gender role, sexuality, and spirituality they are androgynous, blending aspects of masculine, feminine, and the sacred.

Soft shamans excelled in shamanism because their mixed nature allowed a close association with the spirit world. Their power was respected by untransformed shamans. A soft shaman was never treated badly because his helping spirits would retaliate on his behalf. See also gender-variant male.
Soma

A plant deified in the Vedic text, the Rig Veda, by the early Aryan peoples who invaded what is now India. The divine Soma is described as a non-flowering plant with cap and stem that is non-leafy, fruitless, rootless, and grows in the high mountains. It is also described as a powerful entheogen that induces visions resulting in mental and physical enhancements.

Soma was recently identified as the amanita muscaria mushroom, possibly the oldest hallucinogen used by shamans to facilitate their entry into trance. Amanita muscaria is the most prominent plant hallucinogen used in the Asiatic region of the world. The Soma of the Rig Veda was regarded so highly as to be held holy. The very idea of “deity” may have originated from the entheogenic experiences induced by this sacred plant. See also altered states of consciousness.

Song

Songs and chants are one of the most important tools of the shaman. They are used to access spirit power, enter trance, empower remedies and cures, and in some cases as a remedy. Songs are sung to cure the sick, to find game, to make crops grow, to confuse enemies, and to aid people in all kinds of trouble or danger.

Through songs the shaman speaks to his or her helping spirits and accesses the power of that spirit. Song is believed to give any voice power, not just the shaman’s. The power of the song is not in the words themselves since power songs do not translate into ordinary speech. The power in a song is in the access it provides to spirit.

In some cultures the shaman’s song is spontaneous; it comes to the shaman directly from spirit. In other cultures, for example in southwestern North America, the songs used are traditional medicine songs handed down through medicine societies. These songs were originally received from spirit, however that was long ago. In either case, singing a power song is not an act of self-expression. It is a act of magic which calls upon the powers of Spirit and Nature to aid the people.

In rituals shamans use songs to access power and to contain the energy of the ritual. For example, the Wakuénai, a northern Arawakan society in Venezuela, consider sound and song to be the very source of shamanic power. In Wakuénai healing rituals the shaman uses song to name that which is out of balance within an individual, the social order, and the surrounding natural environment. The shaman then uses a different song to guide the restoration of harmony in those relationships.

Different types of songs can be used to enter different types of altered states of consciousness. For example, the Wakuénai recognize both shamans and chant owners. Chant owners use their songs to create a numb, dream-like altered state in which the perception of contrasts is either minimized or shut out entirely. While chanting they travel to the celestial home of the bee spirits, which gives chant owners powers of divination to detect the presence of sorcerers, locate missing persons or objects, and predict future events.

In contrast, the songs of the Wakuénai shaman are intended to awaken the senses and heighten the
shaman’s sensitivity to contrasts. Using songs and hallucinogenic snuff, shamans travel to íyarudáti, the Land of the Dead where the dangerous spirits and work with lost souls demand an alert and highly sensual altered state.

Shamans also used songs to contribute to the efficacy of remedies. Throughout South America, the words and song of the payé (shaman) are essential to all plant remedies. Shamanic plant remedies derive their healing properties from the biology, from the spirit of the plant itself, and from the song the shaman sings into the remedy. From the practitioners’ perspective, the remedies will have no healing properties if the shaman doesn’t sing to them.

Spirits continue to reveal songs to humans in dreams or during vision quests. These songs and dances are sacred in origin and performing them is a form of prayer. These new healing songs, if effective, may be preserved with the culture’s traditional healing songs. The performance of these traditional songs may be personal sacred acts or, if the song belongs to a medicine society, a long, complex ceremonial prayer.

Songs are the property of either an individual shaman or a medicine society. In general, the songs of the medicine societies describe a desired event in the magic of beautiful speech. Sung or spoken, these complex songs were intended to make the event take place. It is believed that if the description is vivid and the recitation is as it should be at the right time with the right behavior, and on behalf of all the people, the act of singing will make it so.

In cultures where the traditional songs belong to an individual, they are handed down, generation to generation, shaman to apprentice, or they are purchased. For example, a Lakota shaman may spend years learning the songs and drum rhythms that go with each spirit. Though the effort is painstaking, it is worth it. The shaman who can master the songs can bring the spirits into a ritual and hold them there for the duration through the power of the songs and the rhythm of the drums. See also music.


Songlines
Songlines are magnetic, vital forces that naturally emanate from the earth and flow, crisscrossing the continent. Aborigines believe that they can project their psyche or inner consciousness along these songlines as a means of communicating. In this way, songs, stories, and knowledge are shared over great distances and with people they never meet in person. The knowledge and use of songlines was once a sacred tradition that stretched across the entire earth and in this way cultural knowledge was shared worldwide.

For an Aboriginal Australian to become a socially responsible adult, he or she must learn the songlines of his or her dreamtime region. Knowledge of songlines allows a person to travel over the earth without maps or compasses. They tell those who know the nature of the land, desert, mountains, etc., what the land offers by way of water and resources.

Learning the songlines of a place creates an emotional attachment to the spirit of that place. The Dreamtime Ancestors are alive in the land. For example, a jumble of boulders is the Hare Wallaby men because they contain the essence of the Hare Wallaby men, not because the rocks resemble Hare Wallaby men. Learning the songlines connects the human spirit to the spirit of the land. See also Australia and storytelling.
Sonic Driving

Sonic driving is the use of a monotonous rhythm that resonates at three, four, six or eight beats per second to induce altered states of consciousness. This is one of many techniques used by shamans to enter into their trance states. The sound may be produced with drums, rattles, other percussion instruments, like click sticks or hollow logs, singing, chanting, a stringed bow, digerido, bells, or Tibetan bowls. The trance response occurs when any of the above are played or sung at the correct frequency.

This frequency facilitates the production of brain waves in the low alpha and theta ranges which are related to states of creativity, vivid imagery, and states of ecstasy. A link has been shown between this type of shamanic drumming and an elevation in the production of theta waves in the brain.

There are four major types of brain wave frequency patterns, as measured by the electroencephalogram (EEG), an instrument that produces drawings of brain wave patterns of humans while they are engaged in various activities. EEG waves are classified according to wave frequency which is measured in cycles per second, or Hertz (Hz).

Delta waves, less than 4 Hz, are associated with sleep or unconsciousness. Theta waves, 4–8 Hz, are associated with the twilight consciousness between waking and sleeping that is difficult to maintain without training. Alpha waves, 8–13 Hz, are associated with a conscious state that is alert but unfocused or focused internally—relaxation, and well-being. Beta waves, greater than 13 Hz, are associated with normal, everyday activities with the focus on the exterior world.

Jeanne Achterberg, Ph.D, author on shamanism, explains that it is possible for sonic driving to filter out ordinary awareness and take shamans into trance. The auditory nerves from the ear pass directly into the reticular activation system (RAS) of the brain stem, which is a massive nerve net that functions to coordinate sensory input and motor tone. The RAS also alerts the cortex to incoming information. Strong repetitive sound becomes strong repetitive neural firing in the brain. This strong, repetitive neural firing could compete successfully for cognitive awareness in the cerebral cortex. Successful competition would filter out ordinary reality stimuli and disturb the baseline stabilization of ordinary consciousness. The consciousness is then free to expand into altered states.

Humanity may have been using sonic driving as far back as prehistoric times. It is possible that cave paintings show us that our ancestors used sound, chanting, and song as sonic drivers for their journeys into the spirit realm. Légó Rezínoff and Michel Dauvois, French archaeologists, surveyed three caves in southwest France by singing as they walked through. They commented on the impact of the stunning resonance. Their research resulted in a resonance map that showed that the cave areas of highest resonance were also most likely to harbor a painting or engraving. See also chants.


Sorcery
Some define sorcery as the use of sympathetic magic for personal gain or malevolent purposes; however others believe that when used properly sorcery can allow one “to taste infinity.” The training of the shaman and the sorcerer are nearly identical. How and why that training is used in the world differs. The sorcerer’s path is exclusively the path of personal power and liberation.

In practice sorcery is most often manifest as a projectile, like a tsentsak, shot into the victim or another object, like a tupicks, sent to attack the victim or an outright act of soul theft. The sorcerer may perform the soul theft with his or her own spirit through the victim’s dreams or through a spirit agent sent by the sorcerer. All of these conditions cause the victim to become ill in some manner and eventually to die, usually by wasting away.

Historically scholars have confused sorcery and shamanism, often treating them as the same profession. Sorcery is distinct from shamanism, but in most indigenous cultures of South or North America, it is accepted—if not expected—from otherwise benevolent shamans. Acts of sorcery practiced as a means of survival, protection, or healing of the tribe particularly against outside enemies are appropriate and perceived of as necessary.

Therefore, sorcery can be defined as that which disturbs the natural order of things, that is malevolent in intent and manipulative, but not perforce “evil.” Sorcerers are those people who perform acts of sorcery consistently, for personal gain, with disregard for the good of the community as a whole.

In shamanic cultures illness is frequently diagnosed as soul loss or the presence of an energy intrusion. Since both of these conditions can be caused by sorcery, accusations of sorcery are often associated with illness. However, both conditions can be caused by means other than sorcery. Accusations of sorcery are often leveled when a North American shaman is unsuccessful in healing a patient. However, a shaman’s failure to heal is more often the fact that he or she and his or her helping spirits are less powerful than the source of the illness and they sincerely cannot prevail.

There is always a price for sorcery, however it is not always apparent what or how high that price is. For example, in Africa it is believed that for every power gained through sorcery, or unnatural means, a natural power of the people is lost. When shamans use their power to do harm, it is said that their relationship with spirit becomes polluted. The shaman must decide if the benefit to the community outweighs the cost and whether or not the resulting contamination can be cleansed and the relationship with spirit salvaged for the future.

Consistent, intentional misuse of power cannot be cleansed. The accumulated pollution brings misfortune or a painful death to the sorcerer. However, more often it is the community or the sorcerer’s loved ones, who are not as power-filled and protected, who suffer. Even if the sorcerer uses power to keep death at bay, over time the disconnection from a right relationship with spirit means the sorcerer must draw on more and more of his or her own power until there is nothing left but the “perfume of power” that the shaman once had.

Shamans and sorcerers both work with the energies of the visible and invisible worlds. It is the intent of their actions is different. The shaman seeks to restore harmony between the humans and the flow of the Universe for the good of his or her people. The sorcerer seeks personal gain with disregard for the harmony or disruption created relative to the flow of the Universe.

The life’s work of a shaman changes and develops over time. In general it is a
path of mastery wherein the shaman’s skills and spiritual evolution develop in direct relation to each. All shamanic skills are neutral; the benevolence or malevolence of any act results from the intent through which the shaman sends the act forth. The shaman is usually held by others in a combination of fear and respect because of the ever-present possibility of acts of sorcery. See also extraction; magical darts; soul retrieval; soul thief.


Soul
The soul is the animating and vital principle in a person often conceived of as an immaterial entity that survives death. The soul is a living reality, not a belief or tradition. However each culture describes the structure of the soul in its own way.

The primary and most universal factor of human existence is the recognition of soul as the experience of a life-giving energy that is independent of the body and directs or guides each individual. The existence of a soul and its connection with life before and after death is the ground of all traditional spiritual philosophy.

Soul, for the purposes of this book, is defined as the vital life giving force of the living human—the human spirit. This is to distinguish the soul of the living, for example the soul of the shaman or the patient, from the souls of the dead, the helping spirits the shaman works with, or the malevolent, misplaced spirits the shaman works on.

For example, a shaman’s grandmother’s lifeforce is referred to as her soul while she is living. Once she is dead and her soul passes on into the spirit world where it re-emerges with the Source. There her soul is referred to as a spirit. If her spirit were to return to aid the shaman, it would be an ancestral helping spirit. However, if upon the grandmother’s death her soul did not pass on, but stayed in the physical world where it no longer belonged, it would be referred to as a misplaced spirit. See also ancestors.


Soul Calling
A variation of a soul retrieval healing ritual practiced by various shamanic peoples in Asia and Southeast Asia. In a standard soul retrieval the shaman enters the spirit world, locates the lost soul, captures or secures it in some way, and conveys it back to the patient and replaces it in the patient’s body. In a soul calling ritual the shaman enters trance to talk the soul back, often in song, by describing the way back to the body, by enticing the soul back with descriptions of the people and things the soul loves, or by negotiating the return of the soul with the spirits who have stolen it.

Hu Plig is the soul calling ritual performed by the Hmong. The Hmong conceive of the human soul as a multiple soul and of illness as the loss or dispersal of one or more of an these soul aspects. In the soul calling ritual the shaman summons the soul aspects that have left the body, whether due to theft or of their own volition, and directs them to return to the body, re-integrate with each other, and restore integrity to
the lifeforce of the body. See also healing; multiple soul belief; spirit.


Soul Catcher
Soul catchers are tools used by shamans to aid in the soul retrieval process, which is a type of shamanic healing ritual. Some of these tools are power objects in ordinary reality while others exist only in non-ordinary reality. Some soul catchers are defined culturally while others are the personal creation of the individual shaman.

Tsimshian shamans of the Nass River region in British Columbia, Canada, use soul catchers carved from hollow bone. These soul catchers are traditionally decorated with a two-headed beast, like a wolf or snake. This mythical beast opens its mouths at either end of the bone while a humanoid face stares out from the center.

Shamans use a variety of other power objects as soul catchers. For example, some shamans have soul catchers among the secret objects in their medicine pouch. Southeast Asian shamans have a box containing magical objects, including quartz crystals, or “stones of light,” used in soul retrievals. A Tungus shaman is reported to have used a noose. See also ritual; soul loss; Southeast Asia.


Soul Dance
See lehstconos and Wintun.

Soul Flight
Soul flight is another term for the shaman’s journey. The journey and the embodiment trance are the two poles of a continuum of altered states used by shamans in their work. The journey is the shaman’s experience of his or her soul leaving the body and entering the invisible world to join forces with the helping spirits there on behalf of the patient or community. Embodiment is the shaman’s experience of allowing the helping spirits to enter his or her body in the physical world to perform healing work for the patient or community through the shaman’s body.

The terms journey, soul flight, and spirit flight describe the shaman’s experience as his or her soul travels in other realms while in this altered state. For example, it is common understanding among Siberian tribal peoples that the shaman’s soul leaves the shaman’s body to travel to other parts of the world or to the spiritual realms of the Kosmos, typically described as flying up to an upper world, climbing down to a lower world, or swimming down into an underwater realm. See also altered states of consciousness.

Soul Loss
Soul loss is a spiritual illness that causes emotional, physical, and psychological disease. When the soul is lost, crucial parts of the individual that provide life and vitality split off and become lost in non-ordinary reality. The greater the degree of soul loss the more severe and life threatening the condition. If the soul totally vacates the body, the patient will die.

Soul loss is the gravest diagnosis in the shamanic nomenclature. It is seen as a major cause of illness and death and often arises from the demise of relationship with loved ones, career, or other significant attachments. Soul loss manifests in despair, immunological damage, cancer, and a host of other very serious disorders.

In Central and North Asia there are several conceptions of the cause of illness, but soul loss is by far the most widespread. The shamanic people of this area attribute disease to the soul
having strayed away or been stolen. The shaman is called on to find the lost soul, capture it, and convince it to return to the patient's body. In these cultures, only the shaman recognizes that the soul has fled, and is able to overtake it in non-ordinary reality and return it to the body of the patient. This healing ritual is called **soul retrieval**.

From the shaman's perspective, the human soul is an undifferentiated energy that enters the body at birth. The soul transcends the individual, existing before birth and after death. It is the nature of the soul to flow, undifferentiated, like a river of lifeforce in the body. At the moment of soul loss the part that splits off becomes differentiated, assuming the age, emotions, pain, details, and distortion of the experience. That fragment of lifeforce energy, the soul part, crystallizes around this information, solidifying like a rock and no longer flowing like a river. In this form the lifeforce energy is no longer available to the individual.

Soul loss is an adaptive strategy. It can be caused by whatever a person experiences as traumatic relative to his or her soul, even if another person would not experience it as such. When a person experiences trauma, a part of his or her vital essence separates in order to survive the experience by escaping the full impact of the pain. Normally, as the individual deals with manageable amounts of pain over time the vital essence eventually reconnects and the person "gets over it."

However, when the pain is so overwhelming or the fear so terrifying, or the person is unable to deal with manageable amounts of pain for lack of support or skills, the vital essence is lost. In the case of abuse, the single experience alone may be tolerable, but the cumulative effect of these experiences over time is more than the soul can take. The incident becomes "the straw that breaks the camel's back" and the vital essence is lost.

When the soul part slips into non-ordinary reality and out of time, it becomes lost or stuck. This leaves a hole in the soul that remains within the body in ordinary reality. Many addictions and habitual behavior patterns can be seen as coping mechanisms for living in a state of soul loss. They are attempts to gather energy to fill the hole created by the soul's leaving.

The primary reasons for soul loss in the past are: soul theft by a sorcerer, magician, or wandering spirit, straying from the body and getting lost, particularly while dreaming, and being frightened or living in chronic fear.

The primary reasons for soul loss today include all of the above. However theft by a skilled practitioner of magic is much less common because those skilled enough to steal a soul are less common. Soul parts can be lost through trauma (a single experience) including loss of a loved one, divorce, surgery, accident, illness, miscarriage, abortion, rape. Soul parts can be lost through abuse (a pattern of traumatic experiences that repeat in a pattern over time) including physical, sexual, psychological, or spiritual abuse, incest, abusive intimate relationships, the stress of combat, addiction, and cultural conditioning. In some cases individuals give their soul parts away due to behavior patterns set up by chronic low self-esteem, shame, and sense of self as a victim.

Possible symptoms of soul loss include feelings of chronic depression, alienation, a hole or incompleteness, emptiness, being cut off from a deep connection with life, or living a life that is without meaning or purpose. These feeling may be experienced as intense suffering or as a dull chronic ache masked by drug and alcohol use, entertainment, compulsive sex, or other addictions. However, an active addiction can be both the sign of the original soul loss and a reason for further soul loss, for example, an overdose is extremely traumatic for the soul.

There is a distinction between a lost soul and a lost soul part. A lost soul leaves the patient weak and vulnerable,
without the vital force needed to live. The patient will die in a number of days or weeks if the soul is not brought back. It takes a severe trauma or a skilled soul thief to truly damage a soul to this degree.

A lost soul part is a fragment of the soul. The absence of a part may go basically unnoticed as anything more than a sudden mood, attitude, or behavioral change. Though the patient has died a bit inside, literal death from a lost soul part is not eminent. However, soul loss makes an individual vulnerable to further soul loss. The cumulative effects of several lost soul parts can evolve into a state similar to that of the lost souls described above.

Both situations are life threatening, though in different time frames. They are both more significant than psychological dissociation or the dissociation of an aspect of the personality. Soul loss is literal damage to the inviolate core that is the essence of the person's being. It is not a psychological metaphor.

Prominent Jungian analyst Marie Von Franz wrote that soul loss can be observed today in the everyday lives of the human beings around us. Loss of soul appears in the form of a sudden onset of apathy and listlessness and the feeling that joy has gone out of life, initiative is crippled, life is empty, “I” am empty, and everything seems pointless. See also ritual.


Soul Retrieval

Soul retrieval is the process by which the shaman enters non-ordinary reality to track and retrieve lost souls, or soul parts, for a patient who has experienced soul loss. The soul retrieval process is the most difficult and dangerous of the shaman's tasks. The following steps, observed in Siberian soul retrieval rituals, describe the soul retrieval process.

1. The shaman connects with a helping spirit and enters his or her working trance state, thus entering non-ordinary reality.
2. The shaman discovers the cause of the illness and where the soul of the sick person can be found (divination).
3. The shaman finds the lost soul in non-ordinary reality with the help of the helping spirits and returns with it to the ritual space.
4. If necessary the shaman drives out the spirit of the illness from the patient's body (extraction), as indicated by the helping spirits.
5. The shaman returns the lost soul to the patient's body, usually by blowing it into the patient's heart and the top of the head.
6. The shaman thanks the helping spirits for their assistance, exits the trance state, reenters ordinary reality, and closes the ritual space.

After the soul part is returned to the patient's body, it is traditional to recount some of the events that occurred in the shaman's journey. In some cultures the shaman is expected to report or narrate the events as they unfold in the journey. The dynamics of the journey further explain the exact nature of the soul damage and what the patient will now need to do to complete the healing and reintegration of the lost soul.

There is a traditional relationship between soul retrievals and extractions. Soul loss creates a hole in the patient's soul which leaves the individual vulnerable. Spirit intrusions and other illness-inducing energies can enter that hole. Therefore, it is often necessary to take
out what has filled the hole in the soul before placing the soul part back in it.

Some practitioners can perform soul retrievals long distance, without actually being in the physical presence of the patient. In this case the shaman tracks the soul part, secures it, and then travels through the Middleworld to the patient, while still in the journey, to return the lost soul parts.

Sandra Ingerman, shamanic healer and author of Soul Retrieval, explains that where lost soul parts go is crucial information for the shaman to succeed in the soul retrieval. From a shamanic perspective, the soul parts go to a specific place in non-ordinary reality where they exist out of linear time. These soul parts are not simply aspects of the personality which split off, or dissociate, and get lost in the undifferentiated, no-man's land of the unconscious. They are specific energies in a specific place which can be accessed in the altered state of consciousness of the shaman's journey.

Scholars have discussed possible reasons why the shamans of different cultures, for example Siberian and Indonesian shamans, journey to the same three places for soul retrievals. They suggest that the places either originate in the religious traditions in the heart of the same people or that the different religious traditions belong to different cultures who met and joined within one culture. However, practitioners explain that the commonality is a result of simply following the souls to where they go when they are lost or taken. In soul retrieval work the shaman must go to wherever and whenever the soul part is waiting in non-ordinary reality as directed by his or her helping spirits.

The Role of Helping Spirits
Helping spirits of all kinds help the shaman locate lost souls in non-ordinary reality and successfully retrieve them. If the lost soul was stolen by spirits of the dead, helping spirits are dispatched by the shaman to bring the souls back to the shaman, who will then complete the retrieval. However, if the shaman determines that the soul was stolen by malevolent spirits then the retrieval is considered more difficult. The shaman journeys with his or her helping spirits, working together to track, secure, and retrieve the lost soul.

Once the soul is found, the shaman may be forced to use trickery, theft, or engage in battle to get the soul away from the malevolent spirit or other soul thief. At times it is the lost soul itself that doesn't want to return. In this case the shaman may barter, cajole, or trick the lost soul into returning.

For contemporary shamans, soul loss is often caused by loved ones engaged, unintentionally, in soul-damaging behavior. In these cases, the perpetrator is usually passing on patterns of abuse that were inflicted on them. The patient often has compassion for their perpetrator and trickery or battle with the perpetrator may upset the patient. Persuasion, debate, and engendering trust are often the appropriate course of action.

In these cases the soul part may not want to return. The shaman explains that the situation has changed and/or that the part is now an adult in ordinary reality. Learning that they are out of danger and/or free to act on their own behalf as adults, soul parts are usually willing to attempt a return.

Tools of the Trade
The essential tool for soul retrieval is the shaman's journey. The drum and rattle, basic tools for supporting the journey, are therefore the basic tools for soul retrieval. Some shamans also take soul catcher tools into their journeys specifically for soul retrieval. Some of these tools are defined culturally while others are the personal creation of individual shamans.

Soul catchers are used by shamans of the Nass River region in British Columbia, Canada. Soul catchers are carved from a hollow bone and usually decorated with a two headed beast, like
a wolf or snake. This mythical beast opens its mouths at either end of the bone while a humanoid face stares out from the center.

Shamans use a variety of **power objects** as soul catchers. Some shamans have objects that aid them in soul retrievals among the secret objects in their **medicine pouches**. Southeast Asian shamans have a box containing magical objects, including quartz **crystals** or “stone’s of light.” A **Tungus** shaman is reported to have used a noose. Some of these tools are power objects in ordinary reality while others exist only in non-ordinary reality.

**Integration**

When the shaman returns the lost soul part to the patient, the source of problem is resolved at the level of spirit. Then the shaman must facilitate the process of resolving the original reason the part left and restoring harmony between the patient and the soul part. If the soul loss was recent then the integration process is relatively simple and harmony restores itself. If the soul loss occurred in the past, not only does the original trauma need to be expressed and released, but the behavior patterns formed to cope with the soul loss must be replaced with healthier behavior patterns.

The behavior patterns formed to cope with living in a state of soul loss occur on three levels. The first level is at the patient’s core were the hole was left in the soul. Right after a soul part leaves, the individual must begin protective behavior to guard the hole from intrusions. These behavior patterns effect the persons ability to express and receive intimacy.

The second level is composed of patterns of behaviors the individual engages in to fill the hole. These behaviors are habitual, compulsive, or addictive. They may fill the hole temporarily or they enable the person to enter an altered state in which they feel as if the hole is filled for the duration of the altered state.

The third layer of behavior is the chronic repetition of the original trauma. The hole carries the shape, or resonance, of the original trauma in the same way that a puzzle holds the shape of a piece that has been removed. The resonance of the trauma, still within the body, attracts new versions of the original trauma. In this way the patient chooses to repeats the pattern, again and again, until the lost soul part is retrieved.

These behavior patterns are chronic stresses on the individuals well-being. They affect the physical, psychological, emotional, and spiritual health if the individual as well as how he or she perceives of the world (mental-philosophical), how he or she relates with others (social-ethical), and how he or she relates to herself (moral).

In soul loss and the sicknesses or death arising from it, healing is available through the shaman’s journey, the **power** of the helping spirits, and the cleverness of the shaman herself. The shaman sees the soul, its form, and its destiny. Where the shaman is at hand and the fate of the soul is the issue. The shaman guards the soul of the community and the souls of the individuals within the community. See also **shamanic healing** and **Southeast Asia**.


**Soul Substance**

A substance carrying the unique vibrational signature of the soul adheres to all things which have been in contact
with the soul. Soul substance adheres in particular to fingernails, hair, excrement, and saliva. These can be used for a variety of different kinds of diagnostic purposes for the person in question. They can also be used as ingredients in acts of sorcery intended to harm that person.


Soul Thief
A soul thief is a person or spirit who steals the soul, or soul parts, of others. Traditionally, soul thieves are sorcerers or magicians, who are skilled in the magical manipulation of the soul, or malevolent spirits and spirits of the dead, who are able to pull the souls of the living into the spirit realm. Soul theft leaves the victim in a state of soul loss.

Soul theft by a practitioner of magic is less common today, as are skilled sorcerers and magicians able to perform it. However, the theft of soul parts is quite common. Soul parts are often stolen unintentionally in divorces, abusive or dysfunctional relationships, relationships with the chronically ill, and by exhausted parents. Rapists, child molesters, and people who prey on others of lesser power, rank, or privilege are often soul thieves.

Sound
Sound is the movement or vibration of energy moving at vibrations per second within the auditory range. Sound is an essential aspect of shamanic work. Shamans use rhythm and percussion, song and chant, music and instruments, and silence and meditation. Sound is used by shamans to access spirit power, enter trance, induce trance in the patient, empower remedies and cures, and as a remedy in and of itself.

The body is affected differently by different sounds. In particular, shamanism makes use of the fact that the body responds to repetitious sounds occurring at 6 to 8 beats per second by altering its ordinary state of consciousness. In this way shamans have used drums and percussion to induce journeying trance states for 40,000 years.

Percussive sound, probably accompanying chanting or dancing, appears to be the oldest form of music. Though drums are not found in excavations, it is assumed that this is due to the rapid degeneration of wood and hide. Excavations do reveal bullroars, bone and ivory flutes, whistles, and rattles of strung beads or bone scrapers and rock art depicting the use of drums along with these other instruments.

Shamans understand that the human body responds to sound in a myriad of ways. There is evidence that certain sounds and rhythms affect both our physical and spiritual well-being. Positive physical health effects related to sound have been shown in contemporary medical studies involving meditation, the repetition of mantras, and the cultivation of silence.

Yet indigenous peoples have a much more fully developed understanding of the use of sound in healing that extends all the way back to the beginning of time to the original Ancestors. The creation stories of indigenous peoples around the world explain that in the beginning was the Sound, and the Sound was the sound of Spirit who caused the world of matter to take form. Sound is associated with the essential Ether out of which the other elements: Air, Fire, Water, and Earth unfolded during the evolution of the universe.

Lao-tzu, philosopher of the Tao, speaks of the Great Tone that is “the tone that goes beyond all usual imagination,” and the Hindu speak of Nada Brahma, the tone from which God made the world. Religious scholars have searched for centuries for the word that the Christian God spoke that created the world.
Similarly, our language reflects the ancient idea that a person, like his universe, is created from a tone. Musicologist and writer, Hoachim-Ernst Berendt, observed that the Latin term personare means “to sound through something.” Thus the person is as the shaman sees him, a body through which the sound of a soul resonates. See also journey and sonic driving.


South America
South America is a continent of vast and enormous natural wonders. These natural wonders are powerful spiritual forces in the shamanism of the continent. Thus, shamans in the Andes work in deep relationship with the spirits of those mountains and shamans in Amazonia work with the spirits of the rain forest and the plethora of plant medicines it offers.

South America is home to shamans who, like those of the Q’ero and the Shuar, have lived relatively untouched by the outside world until just a few decades ago. In contrast, across the continent in Brazil, there are many spiritist movements, like Candomblé or Santo Daime doctrine, that have merged the trance techniques of indigenous people with African and European religions.

Power distinguishes the South American shaman from ordinary people as it does around the world. In South America power is acquired through the mastery of ecstatic altered states of consciousness, the acquisition of helping spirits, and the acquisition of power songs.

The shaman’s ability to mediate with the spirit world and affect change in the physical world defines his or her power. Many different techniques are used like the extensive energetic training of the Q’ero, the drumming trances of the Mapuche, or the dreaming work of the Avá-Chiripá. In much of Amazonia plant entheogen are the most common means to enter ecstatic states and ayahuasca or yage is the most frequently used.

Throughout South America the plant entheogens are believed to have spirit power in and of themselves. Ayahuasca in particular is considered a shaman. It has its own force, power, will, and knowledge. It is known to enter the bodies of the initiates and patients who drink it and to inspire altered state
experiences in which they heal without the intervention of the shaman.

It is prevalent in South America for shamans to be paid for their services. In many cultures it is expected that the helping spirits will determine the appropriate sacrifice on a sessions by sessions basis. The patient's sacrifice completes the cycle of energy opened in the spirit world by the shaman on the patient's behalf. If payment is not made the illness itself will remain vital and able to enter other people or the helping spirits may harm the shaman. See also Andes, South America; drum; ecstasy; medicine; Quechua; spirit.


Southeast Asia

Southeast Asia is defined by a massive arc of mountain ranges that separates it from Afghanistan and Iran to the west and from Central Asia and Tibet to the north. Vast oceans define the southern and eastern parameters. Thousands of dialects of the main language families are spoken and several of the world's principal racial types are represented in this region.

The religious life of people in Southeast Asia is extremely complex. Buddhism, Hinduism, Confucianism, Daoism, Shintoism, and regional forms of Islam and Christianity are practiced formally while daily life is filled with spirit possession, exorcism, shamans, sorcerers, oracles, spirit mediums, energy healers, and various other practitioners who use trance states. The lay population is both religious, following one of the above formal doctrines, and spiritual, turning to shamans and seers to assist with the influence of demons, deities, and spirits on their health and livelihood.

Two of the world's major religions developed in South Asia: Hinduism and Buddhism, which sprang from Hinduism in 1000 B.C.E. retaining some ideas and innovating others. Both religions greatly affected the shamanic rituals and practices of the indigenous peoples. Buddhism exists alongside Hinduism in Nepal, is the major religion of Sri Lanka, and has all but died out in India.

Across the region the shamanism of the indigenous people has been deeply affected by religious and governmental centers of power. Nonetheless, shamanism adapts and is still practiced across the region among, for example, the Tamang, Hmong, Koreans, Indonesians, and Malay. See also Daoism (Taoism); Korea; sorcery.


Space

The shaman is often described as "a master of both worlds." In practice this means that the shaman is able to be in everyday space and non-ordinary space simultaneously. In everyday space the shaman is bound by the laws of physics. In non-ordinary reality the shaman enters the multi-dimensional reality of the spirit world and is no longer bound by the laws of physics.

The shaman cultivates this ability through developing a mastery of altered states. Shamans must be lucid and active while in the altered state of consciousness to be able to move energy from the infinite dimensions of the spirit world into the three dimensions of the physical world and vice versa.

While the everyday world is permeated by spirits, they do not have form in the everyday world. Since they have no form they are hard move because they are hard to contain or hold. The shaman uses altered states to enter the space where spirits and intrusive energies have form. Different altered states give shamans access to different spaces in non-ordinary reality and to the different spirits who inhabit them.

Some physical places are both ordinary and non-ordinary spaces. These
physical spaces contain naturally occurring portals which allow mortals and spirits to pass between the worlds. These power spots are highly valued by shamans as passages to the otherworld and as sources of rejuvenating energies.

Physical spaces, like power spots, serve to remind us that the multi-dimensional realms of the spirit world are not geographically removed from the everyday world. All the worlds occupy the same physical space, but the spirit world spaces are only accessible to some of us some of the time. To gain access humans must enter altered states of consciousness. The mastery of these altered states comes with great effort, personal sacrifice, and skill. However it is through this that the shaman becomes “a master of both worlds.” See also sacred space and time.


**Spells**

Spells are magical incantations that govern the behavior of the target for better or for worse. Spells can be cast on others or on oneself. Spells are usually cast with intention, however they can be cast unconsciously. Malevolent spells are problematic suggestions of what the target of the spell can and cannot do that manipulate his or her actions. Benevolent spells, also called blessings or prayers, are non-problematic and often empowering suggestions that also manipulate the actions of the target.

**Spiral**

The spiral, an ancient symbol of the sacred, is found carved into and painted on stones, homes, power objects, and shamanic paraphernalia on every continent. In general the spiral represents the earth’s womb, a core image of the wisdom and the lifeforce inherent in the earth.

In Neolithic Europe the spiral represented the flow of energy from the earth, through the cycle of life and back to the earth. That sacred cycle is physical and spiritual, solar and lunar, feminine and masculine, and of death and rebirth.

The spiral can represent different ideas depending on how, and in what context, it is used. For example, the Zulu use a single spiral to represent the heat and force the high shaman can harness for healing people. A double spiral is a symbol of rebirth, called “the Path of the Many Returns.” Rebirth itself is a symbol of the secret road between the stars that was taken by humans between earth’s and other solar systems.

The spiral represents the path of the soul from the unknown point of origin in the cosmic womb to the point of return in the Hereafter. The spiral describes the infinite process of life that resonates with the vibrations and rhythms of the Kosmos, moving from and returning to The Source.

The spiral is related to the labyrinth which represents a path to the Center and, in a mystical sense, to the Source. Death and a return to The Source is the objective of the shaman’s initiation journey and the terrain of every journey thereafter. The shaman’s conception of the labyrinth as a return to the womb of the Source has been demonstrated by anthropological field research.

Spirit

Spirit is the animating and vital principle often conceived of as an immaterial entity that survives death. It is experienced as a life-giving energy that is independent of form and directs or guides the being it animates.

With our present tools, science can neither prove nor disprove the existence of spirit. Nor is it within the scope of this book to continue this debate. However, to understand shamanism, a working definition of spirit is necessary. In this volume, spirit describes the vital energies and entities shamans work with in the invisible world. Soul describes the vital energy of a living human, in particular. Spirit and soul both have form in the invisible world, and are therefore, real to the shaman.

From the perspective of a shaman working with a patient, spirits are either helpful or harmful. The interaction of a human with helpful spirits can create harmony and well-being and is a source of wisdom and healing power. However, even helpful spirits may appear malevolent under certain conditions, for example, when their messages are unheeded or rejected.

Harmful spirits are usually misplaced, not malevolent, like spirits of the dead who remain attached to the living or souls of the living who are lost in the Land of the Dead before their time. Other spirits are vengeful or malevolent, often because an act of sorcery has engaged them in a malevolent mission. Interaction with harmful spirits can create disorientation, disharmony, illness, and possibly death.

For the most part, spirits are neutral and formless. Some spirits take a physical form like a human, a place, a lake, or a mountain. Other spirits inhabit different forms in the physical world, for example ancestor spirits who were human may take the form of a rock or an animal. Other spirits may take the form of beings that no longer exist in the physical world like gods, goddesses, and mythical beasts, like dragons and dinosaurs.

Through spirit the shaman makes a Connection-to-all-things. Spirit is the shaman’s way into the unquantifiable Emptiness, the Unknown. Held in this way, all spirit is a manifestation of Divine Spirit. When used in this transcendent sense, Spirit will be capitalized. See also interdependence and Kosmos.


Spirit Boat

The Spirit Boat is a shamanic healing ritual used by a group of shamans to retrieve the lost soul of a person who is suffering from soul loss. This technique is used when the lost soul has been stolen by the spirits of the dead and taken to the Land of the Dead. The ritual is used by shamans of Australia, the Upper Amazon, and the northwest coast of North America when the power of more than one shaman is necessary to retrieve the lost soul.

This particular healing ritual was highly developed among the people of the Puget Sound region. Each tribe had its own name for this ritual, for example Chinook call the ritual qlaqewam and the Snuqualmi call it sbetedaq, but in practice these rituals are very much the same. The form of the ritual and the participation of more than one shaman are both a response to the danger to the shaman involved in retrieving a lost soul from the spirits in the Land of the Dead. However, if the shaman does not go, the patient will become ever weaker, lose everything, and eventually die.

In the Pacific Northwest, the Spirit Boat ritual is held in a house where invited guests and friends gather. The
ritual begins at sundown and will last for up to four days. The sick person is placed on a pallet in a corner of the room. Three to four shamans take their places in the center of the room in the “boat,” each armed with a long pole, or touchtd. The friends gather around, rattles and beat the drums. The shamans begin to sing their power songs.

The shamans begin movements with the poles, as though they are propelling and paddling the boat along. The helping spirits begin to join them and the shamans gradually enter their trance. This continues all night as the shamans travel in their boat to the Land of the Dead, searching for the lost soul.

The shamans will encounter at least nine familiar locations as they travel through the Lowerworld to the Land of the Dead. Some of these locations are dangerous. The shaman who spots the danger sings his power songs to announce it. If one of the shamans falls into the stream or is caught off guard by the dangers in the journey, the corresponding shaman in ordinary reality will drop dead in the middle of the ritual. This is interpreted as a severe loss of spirit power.

Once the lost soul is located, the struggle in the Lowerworld can last a day and a half. To prevail a shaman must stay connected to his helping spirit and possess an unusually strong will. If this first rescue attempt is unsuccessful, the patient will die and the shaman may die.

When the shamans have prevailed and the lost soul is secured, they must retrace their path to return safely from the Lowerworld. When the shamans have returned to the room in ordinary reality, sometimes a full four days later, the sick man is lifted into the “boat” with the shamans. Together, using all their remaining strength, the four shamans lift the soul of the patient, place it on his body, and force it if necessary back into the body in which it belongs. The ritual is then complete and the patient will recover quite quickly. See also soul retrieval.


Spirit Canoe
The Spirit Canoe, or Spirit Boat, is a shamanic healing ritual used to retrieved a lost soul for a person who is suffering from soul loss. The technique is used for healing or divination by the people of aboriginal Australia, the upper Amazon, and the northwest coast of North America. See also ritual.

Spirit Flight
See journey and soul flight.

Spirit Hands
Spirit hands refers to the helping spirit’s hands, paws, hooves, etc., working through the shaman’s own hands in extraction work and other hands-on healing. The shaman experiences expanded sensory awareness and powers to heal while in trance. See also helping spirits.

Spirit Intrusions
Spirit intrusions are complex energy intrusions, which are considered spirits of the dead (deceased humans) or some other malevolent spirit or minor deity. The diagnosis of the true nature of a spirit intrusion depends to some degree on the cultural definitions of the beings of the spirit realms.

The intrusion of a spirit into a living being is considered a spirit possession. In this state the intruding spirit will compete with the host for the host’s own lifeforce and control of the host’s body. Depossession, or exorcism, is the
type of extraction used to remove spirit intrusions.

**Spirit Lodge**

The Spirit Lodge is a shamanic ritual performed widely across North America for the purposes of diagnosis, divination, and to a lesser extent healing. Versions of the Spirit Lodge are found in the American Arctic, areas of South America, and among the Semang of the Malay Peninsula. This ritual in all of its variations is characterized by a sudden confusion of spirit voices that can be heard by everyone within the ritual space, the shaking of the tent and/or other objects in the ritual space, and the magical liberation of the shaman from restraints with which he was bound in the beginning of the ritual.

The spiritual beliefs and ritual elements that make up the Spirit Lodge practice constitute a complex whole. It is performed by shamans primarily of the Eskimo peoples across the Arctic and indigenous peoples throughout North America from the northeastern woodlands to the Plains and Plateau regions. Though it is not present in all cultures, the Spirit Lodge practice is clearly widespread. The different ritual elements of the practice occur in a fixed order that is surprisingly consistent given its vast dispersion and clearly delineates this as a unitary practice among other shamanic performances.

The ritual is used for diagnosis and divining remedies for illness, seeing the future or the movement of enemies, locating game and lost objects, and communicating with the deceased. In particular the ritual is used to capture the free soul of a sorcerer and to force that sorcerer to cease all malevolent acts causing illness, death, and injury to others. In addition to its literal functions, participation in the ritual reaffirms the powerful presence of spirits in the lives of those people.

Performing the Spirit Lodge requires levels of power and skill that can only be mastered by shamans with a great deal of personal power, maturity, and a strong working relationship with powerful helping spirits. The practice is primarily one of divination in which spirit flight is not as important as the presence of the spirits and the accurate interpretation of the communication with those spirits.

There is some scholarly debate as to the exact nature of the shaman's trance state during the Spirit Lodge ritual. However, the activities of the shaman, singing, rattling, and drumming, to induce trance and the wide range of power displays that result from the shaman's trance clearly distinguish the Spirit Lodge ritual as an ecstatic performance.

There are many displays of spirit power, witnessed during a typical Spirit Lodge ritual. When it is performed in a tent, the tent shakes, often violently, throughout the ritual. The top of the lodge, regardless of the structure, fills with voices and shining lights with no apparent origin other than spirit. In response to spontaneous questions posed by the audience, complex answers come through the shaman, whole, at a speed quicker than thought. In some cases the language of these answers is unintelligible and has to be translated by the shaman.

The shaking of the tent is absent in areas where the cylindrical tent, or djesikon, is not used for the ritual. When the ritual is performed inside a lodge or home, as with the yuwipi of the Lakota, the construction of the ritual space does not allow for shaking. Nonetheless, a range of the other signs that spirit power is present are witnessed, like sounds of tapping and steps on the ground, objects flying around the room, and the shaman's liberation from his bonds, are characteristic of these versions of the ritual.

In some performances of the Spirit Lodge, the shaman is not only freed from bonds he cannot untie himself, but he is found suspended from the top of the ritual space. Often the suspended shaman hangs precariously from one foot, completely naked.
The spirits who participate with the shaman in the Spirit Lodge rituals varies between cultures and shamans. However the spirits of Nature and spirits from the Land of the Dead are the most common in North America. The spirits of Nature are most common in the east where Thunder is prevalent as is Turtle, or Mikenak, who serves as a go-between with the shaman and the spirit world. The spirits from the Land of the Dead or the Ancestors, who often appear as Owl, are prevalent in the Plains. Often the Master/Mistress of the Animals or the Master/Mistress of the Dead is invoked in the ritual, as is prevalent in Eskimo Spirit Lodge performances.

The shaman does not invoke spirit flight into the spirit world during the Spirit Lodge performance, except among the Arctic peoples where the shaman's journey is a regular part of this ritual. The function of the ritual is to summon the spirits to answer questions and perform tasks to get information. Therefore the practitioner of the Spirit Lodge is not necessarily a shaman, but may be a conjurer or seer with the power and skill to perform the ritual.

Curing during the Spirit Lodge is rare. It is more common to use the ritual to diagnose the cause and treatment of illness. However, when curing does occur it is often because the answer to the question is a healing or the response to a request for healing is an answer or information.

Soul loss is sometimes cured through the Spirit Lodge when the helping spirits summoned for the ritual are able to retrieve the patient's soul from the Land of the Dead. Illness caused by the transgression of a taboo can be healed in the Spirit Lodge if the patient is able to perform the confessions and amends demanded by spirit for a cure. It is also possible to cure illness caused by sorcery through the Spirit Lodge if the helping spirits summoned for the ritual are able to capture the sorcerer's free soul and force the sorcerer to confess and desist. See also drum; rattle; Shaking Tent Ceremony.


Spirit Marriage
Shamans in many parts of the world gain shamanic power through marriage to a spirit mate in the spirit world. For example, in Burma female shamans marry a male nat and male shamans, a female nat. The spirit husband or wife becomes a primary helping spirit in the shaman's practice. These spirit marriages not only empower the shaman's healing work, but they often produce offspring (spirit) and develop other qualities attributed to ordinary reality marriages.

Sora shamans, who are primarily female, acquire their shamanic powers around puberty through marriage to an underworld spirit. With the aid of this spirit, the girl begins to develop the ability to enter trance at will and to journey around the Lowerworld without fear.

The family tree of Sora spirit marriages serves to pass shamanic power down through the family line. A shaman's spirit husband is the offspring from the union of her predecessor (human) and that predecessor's mate (spirit). The spirit husband is also her spirit brother. The offspring from this union will marry the shaman's successor and so on, effectively accumulating shamanic powers and keeping them in the female lineage.

Though the Sora live a separate life from their Hindu neighbors, some Sora shamans receive their power through marriage to Hindu spirits. This creates an interesting re-balancing of powers socially. These Hindu spirits are from high warrior or king castes who wield economic and political power over the Sora and have for centuries. Through spirit marriage that power is accessible to the shaman in non-ordinary reality.
Spirit marriage may preclude marriage to a human spouse, depending on the demands of the helping spirit to whom the shaman is married. Spirit husbands and wives are quite lusty. They are able to bring their shaman mates to orgasm during dreams and trances. However, given the ecstatic nature of the shaman's trance state in general, this is not surprising. The spirit marriage is another way of describing the intimate merging of the shaman's power with that of his or her helping spirit. See also ecstasy.


**Spirit of Fire**
See fire.

** Spirits**
In the invisible world the shaman experiences the infinite nature of the Kosmos; a Kosmos which is alive, ever-expanding, and creative. The Kosmos in its totality is a challenge for the human mind to grasp. Therefore, the shaman enters an altered state of ecstasy, so that he or she can experience the true nature of the Kosmos. Even in an altered state of consciousness, the shaman's experience is not always easily described or comprehended, particularly by others not in an altered state.

Spirits are one of the ways shamans “see,” or give form to, the energies of the invisible world. Just as each human learns to identify a certain energy patterns as “tree” and another as “cat” in ordinary reality, the shaman must learn identify energy patterns in non-ordinary reality. Metaphorically speaking, spirits are tendrils of the Kosmos reaching out to the shaman in forms he or she finds easier to comprehend and communicate to others.

Shamans explain that the experience of spirit while in trance is an interaction with what is felt to be an intelligent, non-material entity that is separate from the ego or self. Furthermore, this entity may provide information that shamans believe they cannot access alone, without this connection.

Spirits may be seen in the form of an animal or a personage from the past including ancestors, gods, goddesses, or other deities. Shamans also see the spirits of nature, of the geography, the elements, and mythical creatures, like dragons and griffins. While these forms may be symbolic representations of what a shaman experiences during trance, these trance experiences are real in another dimension. Spirits are pictographic representations of the ineffable in terms the general public can understand.

Piers Vitebsky, author and anthropologist with twenty years of fieldwork with tribal shamans, explains that in the shaman's view of the world all things—the humans, the animals, the weather, the elements, the geography—have spirit. Understanding the nature of spirit is a profound theological and psychological problem in any system of beliefs. In shamanic thinking, spirit sometimes seems better translated as the essence of something—what makes an animal an animal, or a drum a drum. At other times spirit can be better translated to mean the consciousness of something, like tree consciousness or rocks consciousness, since everything can have a consciousness similar to our own in the shaman's worldview.

Spirit is experienced by shamans in three general ways. It refers to the human spirit, like that of the shaman or the client. It refers to the beings who populate the invisible world who are capable of taking actions that affect humans and other things in the physical world. Spirit also refers to a Divine Spirit, the Spirit of the Kosmos through which the shaman feels a Connection-
to-all-things. Shamans experience spirit to be at times formed, at times formless, and in moments of ecstasy, both everything and nothing. See also helping spirits.


Spirit Senses
The spirit senses refer to the expanded sensory awareness the shaman experiences while in trance. This pertains to the shaman’s awareness of non-ordinary reality while in spirit flight and of ordinary reality when the shaman’s soul remains here and merges with his or her helping spirit.

Similarly, spirit hands refers to the helping spirit’s hands, paws, hooves, etc., working through the shaman’s own hands in extraction work and other hands on healing. See also soul flight.

Spirits of the Dead
Spirits of the dead are the spirits of deceased humans who have left the realm of the living and crossed over into non-ordinary reality to return to the Source from whence they came. In many cultures they then inhabit the Land of the Dead while in others they inhabit the rocks, plants, animals, and geography surrounding their descendants.

Shamanic cultures make a clear distinction between people who have only just died, ghosts or haunting spirits, and the spirits of the dead. A ghost is a lost or roaming soul who remains with the living longer than is natural, never crossing over and completing its return to the Source (a general term for where souls come from and return to).

The souls of people who have just died normally linger after death, then complete their journey of return to Source. Different cultures have different beliefs about the number of days and why the soul lingers. However, it is generally believed to be normal to linger for three, four, or seven days at the grave site or near the place the soul lived. The soul is not believed to stay longer than it takes the body to begin to decompose.

Souls that successfully complete their journey to the Source are considered spirits of the dead. In some cultures spirits of ancestors or loved ones are awaiting to accompany the soul on its journey. In other cultures the soul sets out alone, or with an animal spirit guide, after lingering with the living for a few days.

The soul’s movement from the physical body into non-ordinary reality represents a temporary state for the soul and is only part of the full transition of death. In this state the soul can enter people and possess them or get lost or distracted from its journey.

Once the soul has completed its return from the life that has just ended, it must pass through further states of existence (reincarnation) in order to develop itself spiritually or dissolve completely (depending on cultural beliefs). Many shamanic cultures believe souls must take on the forms of animals, plants, and places, in addition to human forms, to fully develop spiritually. See also death and dying; helping spirits; plant spirits.


Spirit Vision
Spirit vision is the ability to see the “spirits” or the true nature of things, with and without form. The “spirits” are usually invisible to the untutored eye.
The awakening of spirit vision marks an essential stage in the novice's development of shamanic skills. If necessary a considerable effort may be invested in acquiring and cultivating spirit vision. There are a variety of specific techniques used in different cultures to develop spirit vision, some of which are extremely demanding.

Spirit vision is usually cultivated in two stages. The most basic is to catch an initial glimpse of the images and sensations. However, for some individuals this ability is quite natural. Nonetheless, all novices must cultivate the second stage, which is to deepen and stabilize the fleeting images and patterns into a permanent visionary capacity in which the spirits can be seen at will.

In an ordinary state, there is an almost continual flux of images that can be seen when the eyes are closed. In altered states of consciousness, these images can become clearer. The meaning and interrelationships between images become more apparent. The shaman's ability to interpret and communicate what he or she experiences in an altered state depends on his or her ability to organize this flux of images into spirits and other meaningful elements. In part, gaining spirit vision is learning to expand the senses while in an altered state. Once the novice has learned to remain conscious while expanding his or her senses, he or she must learn how to interpret the vision accurately. The discovery of the meaning of different images can be a long process of trail and error. This process is similar to the way children learn the difference between the floor, table, stairs, sky and the dog in the language of their parents. The novice must learn through experience to organize the flux of visual images seen during trances and to interpret them in accurate and meaningful ways.


Spirit World
See non-ordinary reality.

State Shaman
A state shaman uses trance states and other shamanic skills on a communal scale in state rituals to govern the people as a whole. The state shaman is expected to lead in ordinary reality based on his or her connection to non-ordinary reality. The state shaman's responsibilities are to manage the universal energies that effect his or her people, maintain the state's harmony with those energies, and in this way, to serve as healer for the people as a whole.

When state shamans occur, they do so in cultures where ordinary and non-ordinary reality are inextricably interwoven in the culture's worldview. In such cultures journeying and trance are part of everyday life. The state shaman is expected to gain wisdom in trance from the ancestors of the people, particularly past rulers and sages, and to use that wisdom in guiding his or her decisions for the people.

This term was used by Schele and Freidel to describe the ahau, or god kings, of the Maya. The ahau entered a trance state induced by a bloodletting vision ritual. In that ritual the ahau becomes the wacah chan, the central axis or Tree of Life, connecting all dimensions of the Maya world, allowing the ancestors to speak, and the gods to materialize in the human world.

China may also have seen the rise of the state shaman in the Zhou dynasty, 1122–256 B.C.E. It is possible that shamanism played a strategic role in the development of early Chinese political culture. For the ancient Chinese the Upperworld is where all the wisdom is. Those who controlled access to that wisdom had the authority to rule. Shamans became a crucial part of every state court; and scholars of ancient China agree that the king himself may have functioned as a state shaman. See also energy and journey.
Storytelling

Storytelling has been used by the native peoples since the beginning of human time to teach people about spirit and their connection to the sacred. The native peoples of North America, Australia, and Lapland, for example, each have a wealth of stories that teach about the sacred, its true nature, and of the people’s relationship with this Great Mystery.

Storytelling itself is a shamanic act. Shamans tell stories to call in particular animal spirits, gods, goddesses, or Ancestral heroes and heroines who possess the energies the patient needs to heal. In this way spontaneous stories are crafted to create something new in the patient, a kind of medicine to aid the healing.

Stories can also be used to reinforce traditions when stability and order are needed to restore balance and harmony. The traditional stories of indigenous peoples contain shamanic imagery that illuminates the obvious, mythic patterns in the situation at hand. Listening to how the characters rise to meet the mythic challenges reminds people that their traditional values can help them to rise above their current troubles.

Clarissa Pinkola Estés, Jungian analyst, author, and award-winning storyteller, explains that hearing a story allows the listener to experience it as though he or she were the heroine/hero who either falters or wins out in the end. “Among storytellers, it is called sympathetic magic—meaning the ability of the mind to step away from its ego for a time and merge with another reality, experiencing and learning ideas there it can in no other form of consciousness and bringing these back to a consensual reality.”

Storytelling becomes a healing process when the story transforms the advice being given. The information given through a healing story is given in a form that becomes inseparable from the soul of the listener. Stories weave awareness into the soul. That is why stories can heal when advice is quickly and often forgotten.

Angeles Arrien, a cross-cultural anthropologist, explains that cultures transmit their values, ethics, history, traditions, and spiritual beliefs through storytelling. Indigenous people who relied on oral traditions in this way trained and developed their memory. The storytellers of these cultures, who were often shamans, had to work for years to precisely memorize the culture’s stories. Graduation from one level to the next required flawless recitation of a large body of stories as well as the development of a storytelling style that captured and enchanted the listener.

Storytelling is one of four universal healing salves (dancing, singing, and silence), which are ways indigenous peoples maintained health and well-being. The inability to be enchanted by stories indicates a state of soul loss. See also ancestors; dance; energy.


Sucking Shaman

A sucking shaman is one who performs extractions by sucking the energy extrusion from the patient’s body. In a majority of cultures the sucking shaman sucks and bites the body directly with his or her mouth. In some cultures the shaman uses a tool to suck, such as a cupping horn, hollow bone or
tube. Energy intrusions are also removed without sucking with feathers, hands, or cleansings, often depending on the nature of the object needing removal.

In most cultures the intrusion, once removed, is momentarily displayed, then ritually destroyed or sent back to the sorcerer who created it originally. Intrusions are sent into the forest to be absorbed by Nature, thrown into the fire, buried in the ground, placed into a bowl of medicine water, or left at a cross roads to be devoured by lesser spirits. The one exception is the shaman of the California region who extract intrusions called "pains" and then keep them in their body as a source of power. See also sorcery and water.


Sun

The Sun is a helping spirit of great power for the shaman. In some cultures the sun is perceived of as male, for example, Inti, of the Quechua and, Etsàa, of the Shuar. In other cultures the Sun is perceived of as female. For example, the Celts associated the Sun with the Goddess and many South American myths tell of a female Sun who was assaulted by her brother the Moon.

Male or female, or perhaps both, the Sun is a spirit being from the dreamtime. Through relationship with the spirit of the Sun the shaman reconnects to the dreamtime. In an altered state of consciousness the shaman can draw power from the Sun to rejuvenate a patient's flagging lifeforce or to re-ignite a spark of life extinguished by a sorcerer. See also South America.

Sun Dance

A major spiritual ritual that spread across the Plains in the nineteenth century. The Sun Dance was held at mid-summer by tribes of the Plains, including the Teton, Crow, Ponca, Omaha, Pawnee, Shoshone, and Ute. This ceremony involves self-sacrifice rather than the sacrifice of others.

At the Sun Dance men offer themselves by dancing for days in the brutal glare of the July sun, without water or food, calling out for visions. A small piece of wood is inserted beneath the dancer's pectorals and attached to long thongs. The dancer is then suspended by the thongs which are attached at the other end to the central Sun Dance tree. The dancers dance, looking steadfastly at the sun, until they are released by the tearing of their flesh. In this way they offer a blood sacrifice.

Dancers choose to dance to fulfill vows made in time of distress or danger, for healing of themselves or their people, or because they are guided to by spirit. They are supported by singers who sing the Sun Dance songs and the shamans who conduct the ritual. The secret part of the Sun Dance is carried out in the preparation and the search by the leaders for tree that will become the Sun Dance pole, a symbol of the Tree of Life. See also Lakota.


Susto

Susto, the Spanish word for “fright,” is a common illness brought on when experiences of extreme of fear, usually fear of punishment or death, create soul loss. The symptoms are both mental, anxiety and disequilibrium, and physical, loss of appetite and energy. The payé (shaman) treats both aspects of the illness. He uses tranquilizing plants (Marcgraviaceae), chanting to call in spirit help, and often trance states to journey to find the frightened soul and bring it back to the patient.
Sweat Lodge

The sweat lodge is one of the most widespread traditions for purification of the mind and body in indigenous North and Central America. With the exception of the tribes native to the southwestern United States, the sweat lodge was a universal custom practiced by almost every tribe. To sweat is a sacred act and the sweat lodge ceremony is usually performed in a sacred context. In this context the shamans of many tribes used the sweat as a healing tool in their practices.

For example, Maidu shamans from the California region used their sweats, *weni otatai*, in different ways to heal different problems. To heal chills or fever, medicine was placed in the water that turned to steam on the hot rocks, allowing the patient to breathe in the medicine. In treatments of muscle strains the injured area was covered with warm mud and the patient spent the night in the sweat lodge. Paiute shamans from the Basin region used sweats, *tuzinobi*, as a powerful cleansing ritual to remove the source of sickness from the patient's body.

The power of the sweat in both physical (sweating) and spiritual (praying, chanting, mediation). The sweat lodge is performed as a purification ceremony in and of itself. For example, upon the arrival of puberty, to induce a vision, before going on a hunt or to war, or after killing an eagle or a human. The sweat lodge was also used as preparation before other rituals and ceremonies. For example, an individual would sweat before beginning a vision quest or dancing in a Sun Dance ceremony.

The sweat lodge is also a means of preventative medicine. In some tribes a sweat could be performed simply to cleanse and refresh, to get rid of all that makes the mind and body feel bad, and to simply rejuvenate and feel good again. Though the performance of the sweat in these situations might appear more casual, the sweat is still a sacred ceremony.

Three Types

There are many different correct ways to construct the lodge, and this varies from culture to culture. However, there are three basic ways to bring the heat into the lodge. In the first, stones are heated in a fire outside the lodge and then brought in. Water is then poured or sprinkled on the hot rocks producing steam. In the second type the fire is built in the lodge to heat the rocks and then the fire is removed. The hot rocks may be covered with fragrant boughs, but no water is used. In the third type, used primarily in Central America, a duct is used to convey heat from an outside fire into the lodge.

Types of Lodges

In much of North America the lodge is constructed on a frame of flexible poles, like willow, that are bent and tied together to form a four to five foot high dome, seating roughly ten to fifteen men. Today the frame is usually covered with blankets or tarps, while traditionally the cover would be found in nature. For example, in the Northeast the cover would be birchbark and in the Plains, buffalo skins.

Far north, the Inuit sweat lodge is either a large structure made of cedar planks, called a *kashim*, or the sweat is performed in an igloo. Either way it is central to the spiritual and social life of the village. In the southeast, lodges were dug into the earth or into the side of a hill by a stream. For example, the Navajo created an earth-covered, mound structure and framed the entrance with cedar planks. In the California region, the sweat house could serve as a dwelling place and a ceremonial place.

Purification by sweating was also practiced by many of the indigenous peoples who populated Europe and the British Isles. For example the *savusauna* of Finland, still practiced today, is similar to the North American sweat lodge ceremony when used in a sacred way to cleanse the body, mind, and soul.
In Central America the Mayan and Aztec practices of sweating for purification are continued in temezcalli, practiced by the native peoples of Mexico. The name comes from the indigenous Nahuatl language, teme, to bathe, and calli house. The lodges are low huts into which heat is channeled from an outside fire. People enter, crawling one-by-one, through a narrow entrance and squat inside in the darkness. There they pray and chant as they sweat.

**Inipi**

The Lakota practice of inikagapi wójeya, or inipi for short, is the most widespread sweat lodge tradition in North America. The Stone People Lodge, as it is also known, was brought to the Lakota by the spirit teacher, White Buffalo Calf Woman, with directions for building the lodge and instructions for using it. If done properly, all the powers of the Universe are brought into play in the ceremony and to the aid of the participants.

Each piece of the lodge and part of the ceremony is connected with a greater power. Where the lodge is placed, the source of the water, the number of sticks, the rocks, the placement of the fire and the wood that is burned, etc., all have meaning and power. The lodge is built on the earth and with materials that grow from the earth. Water is a connection to the Thunderbeings who bring goodness to the people. The rocks bring in the Fire and the Air is made apparent in the purifying steam.

Traditionally, every stage of building the lodge is sacred work during which prayers are said and pieces are purified. For the Lakota lodge twelve to sixteen willow sticks are placed in a circle, bent to create the dome frame, and covered with buffalo skins. The floor of the lodge is covered with sage before entry.

Outside the fire is built and the rocks heated. The hot rocks are passed into the lodge with a forked stick or deer antler and placed in the center. An altar is created near the rocks on which the sacred pipe rests. The altar is often in the shape of a buffalo skull with sage placed in the eye sockets.

The leader of the sweat is responsible for sprinkling the rocks with sweetgrass, that fills the lodge with a smoky, fragrant or water, that fills the lodge with steam. Cold water from a spring is set in a bucket by the rocks with either a ladle or a bundle of sage for the leader to use to douse the rocks with water. The leader is also responsible for calling the spirits into the lodge to hear the prayers of the participants.

The number of rocks used determines how hot the sweat will be and the number of rounds determines how long. The sacred pipe is passed around clockwise, usually within each round. Traditionally there are four rounds, though not always. When the ceremony is complete, participants may plunge into a river, if nearby, or rub themselves dry with sage. See also Dineh and Maya.


**Sword**

The sword is used by shamans in some cultures to display their full embodiment trance. When the shaman has reached the appropriate depth of trance, he or she can slash and stab his or her own body without harm, though the blades are razor sharp. When fully embodying spirit the shaman is protected from all harm.

Old accounts tell of Asian shamans dancing up the seven rungs of a ladder made of swords as their soul journeyed into the spirit world. In the final test of the kut, the traditional initiation of a Korean mudang (female shaman), the
initiate must dance barefoot atop a tower of seven balancing layers which culminates in a pair of sharp *chaktu* (heavy, large cleavers) blades. Her success is proof that she has allowed her soul to die and be reborn with the warrior spirit.

In healings, swords are brandished by shamans to frighten off malevolent spirits during extractions and exorcisms. The offending spirit is attacked and threatened, often quite violently, and since the spirit is inside of the patient, the patient may be physically harmed in the process.

The *mudang* uses different swords in various forms of divination. A set of small, six-inch swords are used as a set. During prayer they are thrown to the ground. When they all fall pointing in the same direction it is a sign of good fortune. A large sword or a moon-shaped sword are also used in divination. The *mudang* clarifies the divination question. She then holds the sacred sword upright in her hand so that it touches the table or bowl and then releases it. When it stands, it is regarded as a good omen. When it falls, it is a sign of misfortune. See also journey.

The final initiation of the apprentice *wu* is a public ceremony during which the initiate enters a deep trance through ecstatic dance. While in trance she must physically ascend a ladder of twelve sword blades in her bare feet while her soul ascends into the Upperworld. Sometimes she must descend by another ladder. She must not only succeed in communicating with the spirits, which is the purpose of the journey, but she must do so without injury.

The initiation ceremony of the sword-ladder is practiced in several Southeast Asian cultures. The ladders are usually seven or twelve rungs. In some cultures, India for example, the sword blades are wooden. See also ecstasy; shaman’s ladder; Southeast Asia.


**Sycamore Fig**
The sycamore fig is the Egyptian Tree of Life. It connects the Lowerworld, the realm of the serpent, with the Middleworld, the realm of the cow, and the Upperworld, the realm of the vulture. Its fruits are believed to be the blood and body of Hathor, the mother of all gods and goddesses. Therefore, eating the fruits of the Tree of Life is considered a rite of sacred communion.


**Symbolic Language**
A symbolic language is the interconnecting system of symbols and meanings a shaman uses to interpret his or her altered state of consciousness, or trance, experiences. The symbols and their meanings emerge from a number of complex sources. These sources include culture, personal history,
nature, brain neurochemical function, transpersonal images like collected thoughts, dream scapes and figures, visions, and autonomous images from alternate realities which produce themselves, and thus have a life of their own.

Some symbols are universal, or nearly so. This may be explained by an innate ability in the human brain to recognize and respond to certain images. However, the nature of the response and the meaning accorded these symbols are not universal. What an image symbolizes depends on a complex interconnectedness of the sources listed above. The resulting symbolic language is unique to each shaman and to all individuals to choose to develop awareness of their own inner language.

Shamans use their symbolic language to transform their experience of the invisible world, which has no fixed meanings or forms, into useful information and power that can be directed with intent. Carl Jung explained that symbols are psychological mechanisms that transform energy. Symbols are by their own nature real and unreal, rational and irrational. This dual nature is their power and the reason they are the only medium that allows actual communication and translation of energies between the physical and spiritual worlds.

The meaning of the images and energies the shaman experiences in trance are not absolute or fixed. The experience is always relative. It must be interpreted relative to the shaman’s question or reason for entering the trance. For example, the trance experience is interpreted relative to the shamans request to heal the ill, to know the source of a drought, or to find game.

The shaman must maintain focus on his or her reason for being in the trance to accurately interpret the meaning of the trance experience. The symbolic language is crucial; it is the bridge between the worlds. The symbols and meanings brought forth from the shaman’s trance must be both transformative for the shaman, the patient, and empathic for the audience. A successful shaman trusts implicitly in his or her symbolic language and interpretation, while adapting his or her presentation to the expectations of the community and the role the shaman fulfills within it. See also ecstasy.


Taartaa
The taartaa is a torngraq, or helping spirit, used by angakok in East Greenland who live below the ground. When the angakok enters his trance and his soul journeys out into the spirit world, the taartaa gradually enters the empty body of the angakok. The taartaa are believed to enter via the anus and exit in the same way when the angakok’s soul returns.


Taboo
Taboos are the precautions humans take when dealing with strong supernatural powers. Shamanic taboos carry no negative or positive implication in and of themselves. They are instructions that, when followed, allow humans to enter more fully into relationship with the sacred and remain in right relationship with these mysterious energies. The existence of a taboo implies the need for caution, respect, and for honoring the spirit powers being called upon.

In the broadest sense, “taboo,” a Polynesian word, refers to a prohibition against certain actions. There are actions, like entering an altered state of consciousness, that allow an individual to come into contact with the sacred. These actions are regulated so that the sacred energies of the spirit world are not polluted or violated by the disrespect, disregard, or ignorance of humans.

When a taboo is violated, disharmony, blockage, or dissonance is created, which pollutes the relationship between humans and the spirit world. Famine, illness, sterility, accidents, or a breakdown in social structure may result. The pollution must be cleansed, usually through ritual, healing, banishment, or death, depending on the severity of the violation.

The exact nature of a taboo varies from culture to culture and is always relative to the specific healing or ritual being conducted. Typical taboos for patients are restriction for several days to months from eating pork and lard, engaging in sexual activity, or sudden, jarring physical contact with others. Typical taboos for shamans include restrictions on types or amounts of food and abstinence from sexual activity, particularly during training or before and during healing rituals.

Taboos are often defined by the spirit world and communicated to the people through the shaman. Taboos arise from an awareness of the interrelated nature of our relationship with the sacred. See also death and dying and energy.

Taique
Taique is a hallucinogenic tea used by Mapuche shamans of Chile. Taique is made from the leaves of Desfontania spinosa, a shrub with holly-like leaves and red flowers with yellow tips. D. spinosa grows in the highlands of Central and South America.

Talasi
Corn pollen used as a sacred offering by the Hopi. Homngunni, or cornmeal, is also used. See also sacred.


Talisman
A talisman is a power object created for protection of the soul. The talisman
itself is a home for the spirit who is called on for protection. That spirit plays a part in deflecting and dissipating negative energies and maintaining a protective field of spirit energy around the wearer.

In Africa, a talisman is created by using magic and art to engage spirit in the task of protection for the owner, either shaman or patient. Ritual may be necessary to bring the spirit into the physical talisman after it has been created. The talisman is then “alive” with spirit and in some cultures it must be “fed” and cared for to keep its energies vital. The presence of the living talisman provides protection in the home or on the wearer.

A talisman can be in the form of a necklace, ring, belt, hat, or shoes. The most common talisman is a small pouch, filled with power objects and invocations whose energies together are the talisman. Depending on the actions of its bearer, the power of the talisman may be used to help or to hurt. Talismans are treated with great respect and care. Talismans belonging to shamans are often feared for their power.

In North America a talisman is a charm created to bring good fortune to its owner. The energies of some talismans may be absorbed into the energy of the owner, effectively generating good fortune even when the object is not with the owner. Other talismans must be present to be effective. Some talismans generate good fortune by deflecting harmful or malevolent energies. See also fetish and medicine.

Tamang
A Tibeto-Burmese-speaking people who live in the mountains to the east and west of Kathmandu Valley in Nepal. They comprise the largest ethnic group in Nepal and are of Tibetan origin. The Tamang practice a form of shamanism paralleling that found farther north in Siberia and Central and North Asia. They are Buddhists, though few lay people meditate, know the Buddhist doctrine, or read the sacred texts. Animism is the underlying religion and the Tamang understand spirits to be accountable for the goings on and misfortune of their lives.

The Tamang have developed a unique blend of Buddhism and Hinduism combined with their own much more ancient pre-Buddhist Bön-po shamanic tradition. The Tamang, never having allowed their belief system to be overcome by Buddhism or Hinduism, are noted for their powerful shamans who are a strong spiritual force in contemporary society. The basis of the shaman’s willingness to help the patient is compassion and the related belief that by taking on the suffering of others the shaman heals him/herself. The shamans are consulted by everyone, rich and poor, educated and illiterate.

Tamang shamanism developed from Bön alongside Lamaism (Tibetan Buddhism) as compatible and autonomous spiritual paths. Many of the important elements of the Bön system have remained intact, while others are thinly veiled or censored to subscribe to the Buddhist worldview. There is some overlap of functions of shamans and lamas. In an adaptation to cultural changes over time, the basic function of the shaman is to heal and of the lama to conduct the funeral ceremony and act as psychopomp.

The Tamang bompo (shaman, from the ancient Bön-po) enters trance states to influence the spirits, combat malevolent spirits, exorcise spirits, and otherwise help those being affected by spirits. The bompo uses soul flight to...
communicate with the Supreme Being of the Sky and **embodiment** trance states for **divination** and **extraction**. The **bompo** utilize their **sakti**, **power**, primarily for **healing**, secondarily in **sorcery**, and infrequently in securing food.

There are a number of different types of **bompo**. The **dunsor boms** perform clan rituals, which are performed during the day, and previously performed funeral ceremonies, a function taken over by lamas. The **munsor boms** perform healing rituals which are always performed at night. Some **bompo** perform both day and night rituals.

Another distinction is made between shamans who are called, trained, and taught **mantras** directly by spirit and those who are called by spirit, but trained and taught mantras by a human **bompo**. The **aph se aph** shamans who have no human intervention in their **training** are believed to be the most powerful. These **aph se aph** shamans are called spontaneously and initiated by the **yi dam** spirit of former shamans or by **Banjhakri**, the **Forest Shaman**. The latter are called **rang shin tugba** and they are typically considered the most powerful of the **aph se aph**.

**Cosmology**
A small portion of the vast Tamang cosmology explains that in the first age humans lived free of sickness, aging, or “bad qualities.” In the second age **sacrifices** and rituals developed. In the third age passions and **illness** arose from conflicting and contradictory ideas. In the fourth age the “poisons” arose: greed and cruel rulers, slavery, suffering, death, danger, war, **pain**, and material obsession.

The **First Shaman**, **Nara Bön Chen**, appeared inspired by humanity’s need. **Nara Bön Chen** battled the disharmonious spirits and sorcerers who were the cause of the poverty and sickness. In his final battle he fought with nine witch sisters and came to a truce agreement. In that agreement the witches could continue to cause illness for humanity, but could no longer extract payment and **blood** sacrifices. In exchange, the shamans would be able to heal humanity of these illnesses.

**Soul**
**Bhla**, meaning **soul**, is used interchangeably with **sakti**, meaning life-force **energy**. The Tamang conceive of the **bhla** as a multiple soul. The **chi wa** is associated with wisdom, light, and consciousness; it transmigrates to the **Upperworld** after death and is reincarnated. It is the soul that is lost and retrieved in **soul retrieval**. The **yi dam** is associated with love, the heart, and kinship; it transmigrates with the **chi wa** and is reincarnated. It is the soul that shamans pass on at death to their favorite **apprentice** for whom it becomes the “chief guru” or **teacher** in their shamanic work. The **sem chang** is associated with anger and prone to attachment to the physical world, especially in cases of violent, accidental, or unnatural death and improper burial. However, when a person’s life is properly resolved at death, the **sem chang** will transmigrate along with the **chi wa** and **yi dam**.

The **yi dam** of a shaman belongs to the people because it is full of mantras and techniques for healing the people. Usually a shaman passes his or her **yi dam** on at death through the family lineage to a descendant who shows a natural inclination for shamanic abilities. At a shaman’s funeral ritual, an effigy is dressed in the shaman’s gear and his or her **power objects** are laid out. The shaman’s **yi dam** is then called on and asked to empower the effigy.

As the **yi dam** arrives, a rainbow light descends from the **Upperworld**. The effigy and power objects begin to shake with the power of the shaman’s soul. The **yi dam** can be addressed through the effigy with questions to clarify, for example, who is to receive the **yi dam** (if that is in question) and the mantra needed to invoke the **yi dam** in the body of the chosen individual. Once embodied, the
yi dam serves as a guru or teacher for the novice, providing healing mantras and access to the other tools and techniques used by the deceased shaman.

**The Calling**
The initial calling is considered a "crazy possession"; it is an involuntary state specific to those chosen to become shamans. The possessing spirit may be either the soul of a deceased shaman or that of Banjhakri, the Forest Shaman. The yi dam of powerful bompo that are not passed on at death search for a candidate with a pure heart to whom they can transmit their soul force, mantras, and healing knowledge. Banjhakri also searches for candidates of pure heart to initiate.

These spirits enter the body of the candidate spontaneously. This trance state is uncontrolled, a "crazy possession." Often violent, this possession state may last or reoccur for several days. If resisted or misdiagnosed and treated as mental illness, it may last for months or years.

The characteristics of this uncontrolled possession are anxiety, hallucinations, convulsions, and desire for solitude, which are all considered abnormal in Tamang society. This altered state is an involuntary spirit possession and loss of soul. The candidate who overcomes this crisis and masters the symptoms will become a bompo.

Surviving the initial calling demands an expansion of consciousness of the candidate. Whether it is the acceptance of the shaman's yi dam or the successful completion of Banjhakri's initiatory adventures in non-ordinary reality, something new must rise from within the candidate in response to this challenge.

Not all who experience this initial uncontrolled possession can master the intense emotions and bizarre experiences that are characteristic of this calling from spirit. Some are ejected by Banjhakri because their hearts do not prove to be pure. Others do not possess the necessary balance of inner strength and openheartedness that would allow the awe, mystery, and sacredness of the experience to open new ways of understanding and perceiving reality.

**Training**
Apprenticeship can last for many years. There are numerous mantras and myths to memorize, and learning to master trance, ritual methods, and healing techniques is an arduous process. Training continues as long as it takes the candidate to progress through the three remaining stages of initiation. There are four stages of initiation overall, the crazy possession being the first. After this experience every Tamang shaman must find a teacher to complete the training and initiation.

Apprenticeship with a human guru is often necessary to master the ability to work with one's inner guru. Training is both didactic, learning ritual forms, methods, and myths, and ecstatic, learning to master different trance states and their uses. Mastery is nothing less than the ability to control the initiation of and exit the trance state and oneself throughout the duration of the trance.

The second stage of initiation, lha khreba or possession, involves the preparation and performance of guru puja, in which the possessing spirit guru speaks out and identifies itself through the apprentice. When successfully performed the spirit guru begins to visit the apprentice in dreams and teach. The apprentice advances in his or her control of trance, but has not yet developed full mastery.

The third stage of initiation, lha khresi, marks a level of mastery over the possession trance. The apprentice can now use the trance state to perform divination, diagnosis, and healing puja (rituals). The apprentice is now a bompo, and many never progress beyond this stage of initiation.

The fourth stage of initiation is achieved in two stages of initiatory ritual: the pho wang lung and the gufa. In
completing the pho initiation ritual, the bompo has raised his or her consciousness to the degree that the fontanelle on the top of the head opens and the chi wa soul flies free of the body into soul flight which gives the bompo access to clear visions.

The gufa initiation lasts for seven days, during which the bompo drums continually in a hallowed shelter made of rice straw erected in a cemetery. The bompo must succeed in fighting off the malevolent spirits and calling on the gods using mantras and drumming day and night. If successful the bompo is rewarded with a journey first to Yama lok, the Land of the Dead, where he or she surrenders to death and then on the final day to the highest heaven where he or she meets Ghesar Gyalpo, the Supreme Mother/Father deity of the bompo, and is reborn.

Apprenticeship is systematic, with precise psychological goals and methods for attaining them. In the formal application of this guru-disciple relationship the apprentice is transformed psychologically. The training is not merely therapeutic for the apprentice. It enables the future shaman to perform the most important function of his or her vocation, the community psychotherapist.

In his or her psychotherapeutic role, the bompo is called on to heal social conflict. Tamang shamans are keen observers of social interactions, frequencying the tea shops and taverns where local gossip abounds so that they can learn about the community's social problems. The information obtained is used later in the rituals that heal and release social tension.

The curing rituals for social conflict bring about a catharsis and rally group support around the patient. Selections from Tamang mythology are often retold in these rituals. The myth and its cultural heroes provide a template for the patient to see themselves in the heroic acts and qualities and to realign with the dominant cultural symbols of health and well-being. The myth arouses in the community faith and hope in the patient. Through the healing ritual and cultural mythology, the bompo reorders the chaos inspired by the illness and provides a path for the patient and community to heal.

Trance
Control, communicative rapport, and memory are the three significant and characteristic elements of the Tamang shaman's trance. The bompo often invokes his or her trance with drumming and a frenzied dance that induces a passive, hypo-aroused state from which they narrate visions. The shaman's trance is outwardly oriented toward the community with the goal of serving as a medium of communication and action between the spirit world and that of humankind.

The purpose of the shaman's trance is to "beg for power." As the spirits arrive to grant the request for power, the shaman's physical body may shake and become possessed by the spirit. It is essential for the shaman to know the spirits of the environment and all the spirits of power so that he or she knows what spirit she now embodies. In addition, the shaman must be able to identify who or what is possessing or otherwise interfering with the patient.

Divination
The process of divination is unique to each bompo; however the responsibility is the same. Divination must determine the cause of the illness: spirit-caused, which are subdivided into attacks, sorcery, soul loss, or spirit possession, energy intrusion, sorcery, or natural causes. The bompo must also determine what type of spirits are involved in creating the illness, the appropriate remedy or healing ritual, and what type of spirits to involve in the healing.

When an extraction healing is called for, the bompo must determine the nature of the intrusion itself, where it came from, how it was able to enter the patient, and by whom it was sent, which includes the possibility of self-infliction.
The above information may be divined from the energy intrusion itself after it has been removed from the body.

Healing
Tamang healing occurs in a complex philosophical context. The various agents of affliction involve a complex hierarchy of spirits whose actions affect the living. Furthermore, those effects are not accidental; there is a reason for and an underlying meaning in every event and illness. When intervening in this spiritual context on the patient's behalf, the shaman is protected by his or her purity of heart and the compassion expressed through the act of healing.

The bompo perform extraction healing rituals in a embodiment trance state. They are merged with their helping spirits, often bears, wolves, tigers, leopards, jackals, or fierce divinities. Embodying the helping spirit is a means of gaining that power and it demands a mastery of this trance state. Generally, bompo perform sucking extractions. Extraction tools, like a goat's horn, metal straw, or tube are often used as aids in sucking out the poisons.

There are many possible sources of harmful energy intrusions. Intrusions can be sent by deities who have been dishonored, spirits of the dead who died unnatural deaths or who did not receive proper funeral rites, spirits of a location like a cemeteries or crossroads, spirits of Nature or the elements, malevolent animal spirits, malevolent spirits, semi-malevolent spirits, spirits of diseases, and various disease objects that do not possess a will or consciousness. Furthermore, any of these spirits can be used by sorcerers to inflict harm.

Particular to Tamang perspective, intrusions are the result of “poisons.” These poisons are envy, lust, pride, hatred, and lying and any of the spirits listed above can send these poisons. Through divination the shaman reveals the true nature of the poison and the reason the patient was attacked with that particular poison. The presence of an animal spirit may imply the nature of the intrusion, for example, a pig spirit is associated with the poisons ignorance, lying, and denial; the serpent is associated with anger, hatred, malevolence, and guilt; and the cock is associated with greed, lust, and insatiable wanting.

After the extraction is complete and the healing ritual is closed, the extracted intrusions are fed to “hungry spirits.” Hungry spirits are lesser spirits who gain the energy/ability/consciousness to move up in the hierarchy of spirits by consuming the harmful energies, which is considered an act of compassion. Feeding the spirits is also an act of compassion because it gives them the opportunity to aid in restoring balance in the world.

A bucket full of intrusions, sticks, stones, blood, hair, wood slivers, other small projectiles, and various undefined substances, is collected during a full night of extractions by a powerful Tamang bompo. A ritual is performed on the intrusions, magic (directed intentions and/or herbs) is added to the bucket, and then it is left in an area where hungry spirits collect, like crossroads or cemeteries. This procedure is followed for all intrusions, whether or not they manifest in physical form.

Soul loss is caused by fright or another experience that forces the soul to leave the body, allowing it to be stolen by a lagu (spirit). Soul retrieval, or gunnasera utthar puja, the going to bring back the heart/mind soul ritual, is more often than not combined with other healing processes by the bompo. These other healing processes include extraction, divination, spirit invocation, and psychopompic work. The healing ritual as a whole is known as karga puja, the spirit weapons ceremony.

Psychopomp
Both shamans and Buddhist lamas perform psychopomp rituals to convey the souls of the dead. They escort these souls in two different ways. The bompo is called to convey the soul of the recently deceased if a lama is not available, if the lama is not powerful enough,
or if the deceased is another bompo. The bompo performs all the psychopomp work in areas remote to the monasteries.

Traditionally, the dead are buried three days after death and the funeral ceremony is performed within forty-nine days. The bompo then guides the passage of the soul on to the Kosmic Mother/Father deity, Ghesar Gyalpo, using spontaneous visions or a trance state. When the soul being conveyed feels that its life is resolved and is ready to move on, a nine-rung ladder falls from the Upperworld. The bompo and the soul ascend the ladder to Ghesar Gyalpo who sits, awaiting the soul's return, on a throne covered with soul flowers.

When souls of the dead remain stuck in the human realm where they don't belong, the bompo performs a ritual. The purpose of the ritual is to enable the soul to resolve its attachments to the last life so that it can move on to where it now belongs. In the ritual the bompo allows the soul of the deceased to speak through his or her body and communicate to the living why it is angry or unresolved about its passing. The bompo then asks how the soul can be helped in its resolution and transition to Ghesar Gyalpo.

**Altar**

At the center of the bompo's ritual is his or her altar. In the center of the altar is the candle, which is lit for the Sun and Banjhakri. A water vessel is placed on the altar in connection with the First Shaman, the son of the Kosmic Mother/Father deity, who fashioned a vessel to carry sacred water and to attract lost souls back to the physical world.

**Paraphernalia**

Tamang shamans work with a specific set of power objects that includes: drum, a trumpet made of a human thigh bone used to call on the spirits, a peacock feather headdress worn to create a temporary bridge between heaven and earth allowing communication with the spirit world, rosaries, bells, and a magical dagger or phurba.

The peacock's feathers come from a time after sorcery broke the Rainbow Bridge that connected heaven and earth. When the bridge broke the humans became mortal and began to suffer. The daughter of the Kosmic Mother/Father deity looked down at the suffering and felt compassion for humanity and its need for healing. She sent the peacock with its iridescent feathers that, when worn by the bompo, allowed the healer to create a temporary bridge to the spirit world and to get the healing humanity needed.

**Mantras and Offerings**

Mantras, offerings, and trance are the three prominent elements in Tamang shamanic rituals. Mantras allow the shaman to use his or her voice to focus the power they have been given by the helping spirits. Mantras are used to compel, restrain, and transform energies. To this end they are often worded as imperatives that define how things will be. Mantras are spoken or blown like a dart. Mantras are a tool to gather and direct power and, as with all tools, bompo are often secretive about their mantras, speaking their mantras in a whisper to protect them.

Typical offerings in Tamang rituals are rice, which is the staff of life in Nepal, lights, incense, flowers, and herbs. Rice is often thrown, overhand to cast energies or spirits away and underhand as an offering. See also altered states of consciousness; death and dying; ecstasy; exorcism; lhamo/lhapa; mediumship; multiple soul belief; psychotherapeutic practices.


**Tapel**

A traditional Balinese mask created as a home for spirit energy. The *tapel* is a power object that is *tenget*, or possessed by spirit energy. The *tapels* used in dramas and processions depict humans, mythological animals, and spirit beings, usually witches and low spirits. The masks are granted powers as beings in Bali society.

In Bali the spirit world and the natural world are One. The gods and goddesses are present in all things. Every element of nature possesses its own power, which reflects the power of the gods. Everything is potentially a home for spirits whose energy can be directed toward benevolent or malevolent ends.

*Tapels* are made in a sacred way of wood from a *tenget* tree to be used in specific rituals. When the *tapel* is danced in ritual, the dancer enters a trance state induced by the spirit in the *tapel*. The spirit embodied in the mask enters the dancer and lives again in the ritual drama and battles of positive and negative forces of Balinese mythology.

The most sacred masks are carved only by a consecrated *undagi tapel*, mask carver, in a prescribed manner. The sacred aspect of the mask comes from its treatment by the *undagi tapel*, the wood that is used, the magic letters inscribed inside it, and the spirit power embodied in it.

The tree itself is *tenget* and the choice of tree is important. Only a small amount of wood is taken by the *undagi tapel*, accompanied by prayers and offerings that ask the permission of the spirit of the tree and the spirit of the place where the tree grows. The wood is cut only on propitious days and the carving itself may take over four months.

The carving begins with two offerings to ask for blessings for success, one to Bhata Surya, the Sun God, and one to Taksu, the spirit of inspiration. The final purification process involves three steps: purifying the mask (and costume) from indignities suffered during the building process, uniting the mask and the costume, and enlivening the mask.

For sacred *tapel*, the initial *pasupati* ritual follows the purification to awaken the spirit in the *tapel*. During the *pasupati* ritual the mask claims its spirit power and receives it in full view of the villagers. The spirits are drawn to the mask with such power that even masks that are not made in a consecrated way are known to spontaneously become *tenget*.

*Tapel* may lose some of their spirit energy over time. Initiations of renewed or new masks can involve as many as ten days of feasting, dance, shadow puppets, cock fights, and processions. First, the spirit is released from the old *tapel* and sent home during a ritual in which the “head” or spirit inhabiting the mask separates from the “body” or wood mask. When the new *tapel* is ready it is sent to the temple where a *pasupati ceremony* is held to invite the spirit back into its new *tapel*.

Sacred *tapel* are never displayed. They are kept in fabric bags of particular colors chosen for their effect on the spirit in the *tapel*. The masks in their bags are placed in baskets and stored in the temple complex. See also embodiment and magical alphabet.

Teachers
The helping spirits are the shaman’s true teachers. Most teach while the shaman is in an altered state, either dreaming or journeying. More experienced shamans may also receive teaching from helping spirits in ordinary reality. All helping spirits teach the shaman how to use their power, gifts, and specific skills, e.g., the knowledge of the plants in how to use them as medicines, the skill of the rhinoceros to heal sexuality, the tiger to extract malevolent energy, the snake to shed the past in one piece, etc.

The helping spirits bring the novice into the shamanic work, teach skills through experiences in non-ordinary reality, and create the initiation experiences necessary for the initiate to emerge from the ordeal a shaman.

“Teacher” often refers to helping spirits in human form, e.g., gods, goddesses, angels, ancestors, etc. However, since all helping spirits teach and all are capable of shapeshifting between human and animal forms, this distinction is unnecessary. See also altered states of consciousness; dreamtime; journey.


Techniques of Ecstasy
Shamans use a variety, and often a combination, of techniques to induce ecstatic states. These include: seclusion, silence, solitude, sleep deprivation, visual and/or sensory deprivation, dehydration, fasting, pain stimulation, repetitious actions, like grinding or weaving, jumping, running, sexual activity, visualization, drumming, dancing, instruments like bowstrings and bells, chanting, and ingesting psychotropic plants.

Many of these techniques set up a monotonous rhythm with an instrument or through the body. These regular, monotonous rhythms function as “vehicles” for the shaman who rides this thread of rhythm into and out of the altered state of consciousness. For example, percussion instruments like the drum may facilitate trance states when beaten at certain rapid rates. Psychotropic plants also serve as vehicles for the shaman to enter trance.

The shamans of some cultures use focused concentration or meditation-like means to enter trance. These shamans, like the Australian aboriginal shamans for example, sit or lie in quiet contemplative states when communicating with the supernatural and performing magical acts.

Shamans are masters of techniques that allow them to access and exploit their own normal, human potential. The capacity to experience altered states of consciousness is a psychobiological capacity of the species, and thus universal. Its use, institutionalization, and patterning are features of culture, and thus variable. Control of the ecstatic state is universal to shamanism; the means to invoke the state varies.

Humans have a biological propensity for experiencing a range of altered states, including ecstasy. Humans cannot tolerate ecstasy deprivation forever. Nothing can change the biological capacity and deep desire for experiences of meaning and contact with the Divine. Humans deprived of ecstasy spontaneously create new religions from the content of their own ecstatic experiences and bits and pieces passed on via oral traditions, dreams, and folklore. See also Australia; chant; dance.


Tembetá
The tembetá is an ornament of yellow resin inserted into the lower lip of
young Avá-Chiripá males as part of their traditional initiation into adulthood. The tembetá serves as a connection to Tupá, a sky god and the spirit of the west wind and the whirlwind. It is believed to both symbolize and produce lightning, Tupá’s signature power.

The Avá-Chiripá are one of three large subgroups comprising the Guarani people of South America.


Teonanácatl

Teonanácatl, which means “divine or wondrous or awesome flesh,” is the Nahua name for several species of hallucinogenic mushrooms. They have been employed as sacred hallucinogens since ancient times in Mexico and Guatemala. Teonanácatl was revered for its role as a plant entheogen by the Aztecs and other Nahua tribes. Though they are a non-flowering fungi, these mushrooms are known as “little flowers of the gods,” a term of endearment and respect for the divine ecstasy that is characteristic of the trance state they induce.

Teonanácatl is found throughout the Americas and Europe. There is evidence that shamanic practices with the sacred mushroom flourished in northwestern Mexico in prehistoric times (100 B.C.E. to 400 C.E.). Traditions among contemporary Huichol also suggest the use of Teonanácatl in ancient times. These mushrooms continue to be of great importance in shamanic healing rituals primarily in Mexico and Guatemala today. It has not been determined whether the modern mushroom use in the Maya regions of Mexico and Guatemala is a vestige of former Mayan use or a recent introduction from the native peoples of Oaxaca.

These mushrooms are naturally occurring throughout the vast northwestern region of South America. Though there is evidence of their former use in South America, there is no apparent use today. Archaeological evidence of the ancient use of this plant entheogen is found in the Yucatan, Costa Rica, Panama, the Sinú an Calima regions of Colombia, and as far south as the Peruvian Amazon. However, evidence is not proof, and there remains a absence of modern use of mushrooms and a lack of reference to such use in the colonial literature to support the archeological information.

At least twenty-four species of fungi are employed in southern Mexico today. The most important belong to the genus Psilocybe and contain the psychoactive component psilocybine. Shamans use a wide range of different mushrooms depending on the season, weather variations, and specific purpose of the healing. The choice of mushroom is also determined by the shaman’s relationship with the spirit of the different mushrooms and the shaman’s personal preference.

Psilocybe mexicana, one of the most widely used of the “little flowers of the gods,” is found nearly worldwide growing in limestone regions at altitudes of 4,500 to 5,500 feet. Psilocybe mushrooms are found in wet meadows and fields, in oak or pine forests, and at times in mossy areas along trails. Psilocybe is one of the smallest of the sacred hallucinogenic mushrooms, growing from one to four inches high with a conical or hemispherical cap from a quarter to just over one inch in diameter. The cap is usually a weak straw color, though it ranges from greenish to brick red along the red/green color spectrum. The hollow stipe is yellow to yellow-pink in color and brick red at the base. The spores are darker, from sepia to purple brown.

Stropharia cubensis, another important hallucinogen in Mexico, is found nearly worldwide. Not all shamans will use Stropharia. It is known as Hongo de San Isidro by the people of Oaxaca, and as Di-shi-tjo-le-rra-ja, “divine mushroom of manure,” by the Mazatecs.
Stropharia grows from one and three quarters to five and three quarters inches in height and the conical cap is usually from three quarters to two inches in diameter. The cap begins as an onion-shaped dome whose outer circumference curls up with age, inverting the outer edges of the cap. The cap is chocolate brown to brown-orange in color which blends to tan or white at the outer edges. The hollow stipe is white to yellow to ashy red and strongly lined. The gills range from white to deep purple grays and browns. The spores are purple-brown.

Conocybe siligineoides is another of the sacred hallucinogenic mushrooms of Mexico found growing worldwide. Psilocybine has not been isolated in this species and the active principle is not yet clear. Conocybe siligineoides grows to three inches in height with a cap one inch in diameter and is found commonly in rotting wood. The cap is deep orange in the center and fawn-orange-red toward the edges. The gills are saffron to brown-orange and the spores are chrome yellow.

Panaeolus sphinctrinus, found worldwide, is used in northeastern Oaxaca for shamanic rituals and divination. Panaeolus sphinctrinus is used by some Mazatec and Chinantec shamans who call it T-ha-na-sa, She-to, “pasture mushroom,” and To-shka, “intoxicating mushroom.” Panaeolus sphinctrinus is a delicate mushroom that grows up to four inches in height, usually in cow dung. The obtusely pointed, ovoid cap is yellow-brown to tan-gray and approximately one and a quarter inches in diameter. The stipe is dark gray, the gills brown-black, and the spores black.

The Spanish invaders who conquered Mexico found the sacred use of mushrooms offensive and set out, rather successfully, to eradicate the practice. The Spanish ecclesiastics, particularly intolerant of any cult other than their own, condemned Teoanácatl and its use outright. Illustrations from a seventeenth-century missionary guide depicted such scenes as the devil dancing on a mushroom or the devil enticing a native Mexican to eat a mushroom.

The campaign of persecution carried out by the church fathers drove the use of Teoanácatl into hiding in the mountain villages of central and southern Mexico so completely that neither anthropologists nor botanists could find a sign of it for four centuries. In the late 1930s, Teoanácatl was identified as several species of hallucinogenic mushrooms and was then associated with contemporary mushroom healing ceremonies.

Use
Quetzalcoatl instructed their nine Ancient Ones of the Aztecs in the origin and use of Teoanácatl. From that time forward these sacred mushrooms have been consumed in pairs in rituals. The Teoanácatl mushrooms are used for divination, shamanic rituals, and religious practices by the Mazatec, Chinotec, Chatino, Mije, Zapotec, Mixtec of Oaxaca, the Tarascana of Michoacan, the Nahua, and possibly the Otomi of Puebla. The Mazatec practice the most intensive use of Teoanácatl, which they call Nti-si-tho.

Mazatec shaman Maria Sabina humbly describes how the sacred mushrooms enable her to do her shamanic healing work. “It is they, the sacred mushrooms, that speak in a way I can understand. I ask them and they answer me. When I return from the trip that I have taken with them, I tell what they have told me and what they have shown me.”

Gathering and Preparation
In pre-conquest times the mushrooms were gathered by men of status (whether shamans or priests is unclear) who went into the hills to pray and chant all night long. At dawn if the mushrooms spoke to the men through a gentle breeze, they were gathered and brought back to the village. In contemporary times the mushrooms are gathered by the shamans who use them.
For the Mazatec, the mushrooms that sprout erratically are spontaneous gifts from the Divine Spirit. The mushrooms embody that Spirit and proclaim that Spirit through the qualities of the trance state that they induce. For the Mazatec then, it is literally the grace of the Divine Spirit that allows individuals who eat the mushroom to experience the Divine Spirit while in the ecstasy of trance.

Active Principle
The psychoactive constituents, psilocybin and psilocine, are indole alkaloids. They are unique to the Teonanácatl mushrooms and are not found in other plants. These compounds are closely related to the neurotransmitter serotonin, a chemical substance found in the brain that regulates the biochemistry of psychic functions.

Ritual of Receiving the Plant Spirit, or Plant Medicine
In a healing ritual, the shaman ingests the mushroom, in many cultures always in pairs. He or she begins at the altar on which is placed the shaman’s power objects, copal incense, candles, and the fresh mushrooms. After cleansing the mushrooms in copal smoke, the shaman eats several mushrooms and begins to chant, invoking the helping spirits and the spirit of the mushroom. The shaman presents the questions pertaining to the patient’s illness and then prays in a long chant calling forth the spirits of the plants, earth, mountains, rocks, rivers, thunder, sun, moon, and the stars who will answer his or her questions.

The shaman then makes his or her act of divination. The tools of divination, if any are used, are particular to each shaman. The true nature of the illness and the necessary remedy are diagnosed, healing work is done and/or medicines are prepared, and the ritual is closed. In some rituals the participants are also invited to consume the sacred mushrooms.

In the modern mushroom velada (night vigil), the Mazatec shaman praises the spirit of the mushroom as she cleanses the fungi in copal smoke. They are distributed in pairs to the participants if they are also to eat the mushrooms, and ingested while facing the altar. All lights and candles are extinguished and silence is called for.

The shaman begins to hum in a way that evolves into a chant as she begins to enter trance. The chanting will continue throughout the night, accompanied by clapping or thumping the chest over the heart. In this trance state the shaman chants for hours, speaking to the spirit of the mushroom and allowing the spirit to speak through them.

While Mazatec shamans chant they maintain a rhythm, through clapping or other percussion, during the entire nighttime ritual. Pre-Christian artifacts from Mexico show a shaman beating a mushroom-shaped drum, presenting the possibility that ancient shamans also used drums to accompany their rituals.

Throughout the night in the mushroom-induced alternate state, the shaman feels him/herself in full contact with the invisible world of spirit. From this experience the shaman develops complete and sincere faith that the mushroom will reveal the spiritual truth to all of the shaman’s questions.

With great reverence and love expressed toward the sacred mushrooms, the shaman closes the nighttime ritual with a final request for blessings from the spirit world for those who are gathered. All participants must now live with the truth gained from this audience with Spirit made possible only through the sacred powers of Teonanácatl.

Characteristics of the Induced Altered State
The mushroom-induced trance is characterized by visions of geometric patterns, rich colors, and movement, the feeling of the soul leaving the confines of the body and floating or flying, occasionally auditory hallucinations, and a sensation of the Divine presence.
Mazatec shaman Maria Sabina eloquently and reverentially describes the world she enters while in a mushroom-induced trance: “There is a world beyond ours, a world that is far away, nearby, and invisible. And there is where God lives, where the dead live, the spirits and the saints, a world where everything has already happened and everything is known. That world talks. It has a language of its own. I report what it says. The sacred mushroom takes me by the hand and brings me to the world where everything is known.”

See also altered states of consciousness; alternate states of consciousness; embodiment; persecution of shamans; plant hallucinogens; plant medicines.


The Call

Shamans experience a calling to their profession. The nature of this call from spirit can be as dramatic as a seven-year illness or as simple as a dream. Either way, there is an overwhelming feeling that the profession chooses them or that they were compelled along the path by forces out of their control. Asking a shaman why they do what they do is like asking a painter why they paint or a dancer why they dance. They are called to do it. It is their art.

The call takes many different forms, both traditional and uniquely individual. The call is perceived to come from spirit, who is interpreted as an ancestor spirit, nature spirit, animal spirit, a form of a Great Spirit (Creator spirit), or the universal spirit of the Kosmos (the Source, what was before the Creator). The call touches the individual deeper than beliefs, fantasy, or desire. It remains, echoing in the sphere of their being until a choice is made of how to respond to the call.

There are three general forms of the call found in traditional shamanic cultures:

1. The most common form is a personal experience of being called by spirit. This experience, though essentially psycho-spiritual, begins with a sickness, physical and/or mental, that cannot be cured by customary methods of treatment. The seven-year illnesses typical of Siberian shamans and the vision quests of North American shamans are examples of this form of the call.

2. The call comes through inheritance, in which case a living ancestor who is a shaman or the spirit of a dead ancestor who was a shaman chooses their successor from their descendants.

3. The individual identifies a deep yearning that they must follow beyond all reason and logic. When this deep desire is identified, the individual looks for a teacher who will train and initiate them. This practice is common in southern Asia, for example.

In some traditional shamanic cultures the call is a very specific and complex interaction between spirit and the novice. Some cultures believe that the call comes from the soul of a dead shaman who is looking to be reborn after being rejuvenated on the branches of the World Tree, at the breast of the First Shaman, or in the refining fires of the blacksmith. Another complex theme is the need for a mystical union between the physical and spiritual worlds, as in the Indonesian ritual mating of heaven (the spirit) and earth (the shaman) or the spirits of the Soma (India) who look for human wives to bear their children.
The call may come at any age and the training can begin at that time, however, traditionally, shamans are not allowed to practice until after puberty. The commitment to becoming a shaman is usually made in earnest between the ages of twenty-five and forty. Most often the healing practice begins after thirty when the individual has fulfilled their duties toward their community through marriage and profession. More important, shamans find compassion for their clients in their own life experience.

For many contemporary shamans the response to the call comes later in life, after a life crisis or during the soul searching of middle age. Contemporary people face a staggering array of career opportunities and “shaman” is rarely seen as one of them. Those who find their calling tend to do so through a process of trial and error. However, cultural resistance has more to do with the delaying in recognition of the call and acceptance of shamanism as a valid profession.

Many factors contribute to contemporary resistance to shamanism. Shamans are widely considered fakes, charlatans, and madmen in civilized societies due to centuries of misinformation about shamans. Contemporary people are taught to pursue practical, lucrative professions and not to follow their heart or some message from the spirit world. An often overlooked, yet significant, factor is that post-Freudian people have a differently (perhaps overly) developed ego than their ancestors. The effort necessary to get free of the mental and emotional control expected in contemporary life makes the ego death necessary for shamanic initiation simply too terrifying a prospect.

There is no official form of the call used to define all shamans because passing judgment relative to some external belief system, or dogma, is the antithesis of the creativity essential to shamanism. Spirit speaks to each culture and each individual uniquely, through their own symbolic language, which only they can interpret accurately for themselves. However there are inappropriate reasons that individuals pursue shamanism as a profession: power and healing.

Contemporary people are attracted to the power and healing that come to the shaman along his or her path. The personal desire for these need not be mistaken for the call to become a shaman, but should be understood as the need for shamanic healing. Those who pursue shamanism for power are dangerous to themselves, risking insanity or death, and dangerous to others should they survive the training and become sorcerers. Those who pursue shamanism for healing will soon recognize that they do not have inner fortitude to respond to the constant needs of a community. The call demands a complete willingness to serve others and commitment far beyond one’s own self-interest.

An authentic call is received with reluctance and often outright refusal. The rigors of training and the constant demands of service at all hours of the day, the all-night healing rituals, rigid taboos restricting food and sex, and other extreme sacrifices are often too much. The spirits can be severe demanding the sacrifice of one human from the shaman’s relatives for each bone of the shaman. In North Siberia many shamans reveal that they try to refuse the call because the sacrifice is too great. For those who refuse, even if just to protect their relatives, the spirits continue to be demanding, creating blindness, depression, sickness, chronic mishap, and general disharmony or death for the individual and family members of those who refuse them.

In Southeast Asia there are few, if any, references to human sacrifice, however there are many references to illness, misfortune, and mental torment that appear suddenly when the call is refused and disappear just as suddenly when the novice surrenders to the will of the spirits. There are many stories from cultures around the globe of severe ailments disappearing completely when
the initiate surrenders to the call and serves as a shaman. Though this may seem severe to the contemporary mind these personal afflictions are no more severe than the illness, pain, and death that results from the poverty, pollution, and bigotry created by cultures who no longer have shamans to heal the wounds of the soul.

In contemporary, non-shamanic cultures, the call often goes unrecognized and refusal occurs by default. The resulting misfortune, depression, or illness is often considered part of normal contemporary life. It may be in the course of healing these afflictions that the individual realizes they were called. They may continue to refuse the call because their physical symptoms can be numbed through modern medicine, rendering them less demanding than healing, overcoming the resistance to becoming a shaman, or the commitment to a life of service and the surrender of egocentric goals.

Given the sacrifice demanded of the shaman, why respond to the call at all? The experience of the call is also a mystical experience where the individual receives a glimpse into the true nature of the Universe and his or her part in it all. The call awakens the knowing of one’s true self and the yearning to express that self through the artistry of the shaman. There is a great internal peace that comes to the shaman as they rest between humility and power in Oneness with spirit. See also North America; renewal of life; sorcery.

Graboi, Nina. “One Foot in the Future.” 

Therianthropes

Therianthropes, from the Greek therion, animal, and anthropos, man, are part human/part animal spirit forms that characterize the deeper stages of journeying trance states. As thejourneyer progresses more deeply into trance, he or she typically passes through three distinct stages characterized by different types of visual phenomena. The presence of therianthropes, animal and human-like spirit beings, is characteristic of the third stage, a deep trance state. See also journey.

Theta Waves

There are four major patterns of brain wave frequency: delta, theta, alpha, and beta. These patterns are measured by the electroencephalogram (EEG), an instrument that produces drawings of brain wave patterns of humans while they are engaged in various activities. EEG waves are classified according to wave frequency, which is measured in cycles per second, or Hertz (Hz). Each pattern is characterized by a different Hz range.

Theta waves, 4–9 Hz, are associated with the twilight consciousness between waking and sleeping. Theta wave frequency aids entry into altered states of consciousness involving hypnagogic imagery, states of ecstasy, creativity, and sudden illuminations. This brain wave pattern is difficult for most people to maintain without training.

Any external rhythmic pattern of movement, light, or sound that incorporates 4–4.5 Hz can effectively induce theta activity. In shamanic rituals, drums, rattles, and other instruments are played in rhythmic patterns to induce theta activity and promote entry into altered states of consciousness. See also rhythm; ritual; sonic driving.


Thread Cross

(Also: God’s Eye) A magical power object constructed by shamans and priests in Tibet to temporarily house a deity or to
snare malevolent spirits and demons. The thread cross, or mdos, is made from two (or more) sticks crossed and bound to form a cross structure. The central vertical stick is called the srog shing, or “life tree,” believed to be a reference to its origin in the Tree of Life. The ends of the cross are connected with colored thread, round after round, creating a geometric shape. Mdos can be complicated structures up to eleven feet high and consisting of many geometric forms and attached objects and sections.

In ritual, a thread cross constructed to temporarily house a deity is called a gtor ma. When constructed to imprison a demonical deity for a ritual the thread cross is called a gtang mdos. After the demonical deity is given instructions to perform, the gtang mdos is cast away, freeing the spirit.

When used for protection they are called brten mdos. Small brten mdos are placed above entrances or on the roofs of homes and huge mdos are used to surround monasteries and their grounds. After a brten mdos has been used for some time and is full of malevolent energies, it is taken down, broken up, and incompletely burned in a process designed to destroy the malevolent energies captured within. The unburned pieces are taken by laymen and used as protective fetishes. See also Bön; energy; fetish.


Threshold Guardian

The threshold guardian is a spirit entity encountered in altered states, particularly those that occur spontaneously. The threshold guardian is often seen in a tall, elongated, dark humanoid form, though not always.

The threshold guardian stands in the four cardinal directions as well as above and below. It appears when the journeyer has reached the boundaries of his or her present sphere of awareness. Beyond the threshold guardian lies darkness—the Unknown—and the danger of forces that will transform the journeyer. These are the realms into which the journeyer must travel to gain awareness, energy, and power. These are the familiar realms of the shaman.

The threshold guardian functions as a means to keep the unprepared within the boundaries of their current awareness. If the presence of the threshold guardian alone does not frighten the unprepared back into ordinary consciousness, the first step beyond that boundary will typically inspire enough fear to cause retreat. The guardians that watch this boundary are dangerous. Dealing with them is risky for the incompetent, fearful, and unprepared.

Threshold guardians are depicted in painted pictographs and engraved petroglyphs of ancient rock art around the world. Some of the figures are distinguished by simple forms, like crosses or spirals, decorating their dark “torsos.” Very clear examples of these figures can be seen in pictographs from Horseshoe Canyon, Utah. See also altered states of consciousness and journey.

Time

Shamans, by working in altered states, experience the polychronic nature of time and the multi-dimensional nature of space. They are concerned with timing and moving in harmony with the rhythms of Nature and the Universe. Some shamanic cultures have no concept or word for time.

Leading edge scientists explain that the shape of time is not a straight line that can be broken down into regular intervals, but an irregular fabric that loops back on itself and is full of inconsistencies. A circle is perhaps a more accurate symbol for time than a straight line. The line and the circle represent two very strongly different views of time and the world.
The circle is a primary symbol in almost every shamanic culture. One interpretation of the circle is time. The circle represents something that comes back to itself in harmony over and over again. It represents periodicity, vibration, and movement. The shaman sees life as the expression of mythic patterns that come back on themselves in harmony over and over again.

For shamanic societies, time happened in the beginning, in “the time of the myths” or the *dreamtime*. The mythic events of the beginning are still happening and will continue as long as there are people, whether or not those people are aware of the mythic patterns that flow through their lives. Time is the simultaneous, creative expression of all that is, that was, and all that will be. See also altered states of consciousness.

Villoldo, A. Personal communication, 1994.

**Time of Purification**
See Hopi Prophecy.

**Tlahit**
*Tlahit* is the Wintun (Nomlaki) term for a shaman who is a “seer,” but who does not possess the power of curing. The *tlahit’s trance* is induced while lying on the ground and smoking tobacco. In trance, the *tlahit* is able to see the spiritual truth of what is going on in the present and the immediate future, an ability immediately useful in warfare and locating lost people and objects. The *tlahit* usually speaks from trance in a secret *language* that must be interpreted by his or her assistant. See also shamanic language.


**Tlililtzin**
The Aztec name for the plant hallucinogen made from the seeds of *Morning Glory*, *Ipomoea violacea*, for use in divination and shamanic rituals. The Aztecs considered *Ipomoea violacea* and *Turbinia corymbosa* the Ololiuqui.

**Toá**
A medicinal preparation of plant hallucinogens, specifically *Brugmansia aurea*, a species related to *Datura*. *Toá* is utilized in the warmer parts of South America, especially western Amazonia and the cool highlands above 6,000 ft (1,830 m).


**Tobacco**
Tobacco, of the nightshade family, is native to North America (e.g., *nicotiana rustica*) and South America (e.g., *nicotiana tabacum*). In healing, the plant is smoked, snuffed, chewed, or prepared as a syrup which is applied to the gums or tongue, licked, or used as an enema.

Tobacco smoke is used for cleansing energy and is prominent in the indigenous healing rituals of the Americas. In the Andes, the *payé* blows tobacco smoke over the patient while singing the correct chants and healing songs to cure some ailments. For more serious problems plant hallucinogens are necessary and tobacco smoke is used to prepare the patient. Tobacco smoke is blown over the affected part of the body prior to the deeper healing.

Tobacco syrups are also used in healings. *Ambil* is tobacco syrup made by
the Witoto of South America. The Witoto boil tobacco leaves down to a molasses-like consistency. Water is leached through alkaline ashes of various burned forest trees and allowed to evaporate, leaving a “salt.” This salt is added to the syrup to release its bioactive compounds, making *ambil*. Tobacco spirit often presents itself to the shaman in the form of various birds, depending on the culture. For example, the Guianan people see Tukayana, the tobacco spirit, as a vulture, a vulture-man without his feather cloak, or four large-king vultures. See also *Andes, South America; ash; energy.*


**Toloache**

Central American name for a sacred plant hallucinogen made from *Datura* that induces a deep and intense trance state. This highly toxic entheogen is used by shamans and plays a fundamental role in initiation rituals into adulthood. See also *ritual and sacred.*

**Tonal Spirit**

Tonal animal spirits are believed by native peoples of Mexico and Guatemala to determine an individual’s ordinary reality life experiences. Tonal animals are not to be confused with the nagual animal of the shamans of this region. Tonal spirits are connected to an individual’s vital soul based on their birth date, similar to the way the animals of the zodiac signs or the Asian calendar are associated with individuals by their birth date and used to describe qualities of the individual and the individual’s life.


**Tongochim**

(Also: *tunosis*) Tongochim is the gender-variant shaman, or *berdache* (*berdach*), of the Yokut, a people of the San Joaquin Valley of central California in *North America*. The Yokuts believed that the tongochim is born into their gender-variant nature, meaning that this unique gender was seen as an aspect of his or her original medicine. Thus, the call to the role as tongochim is a response to an irresistible call of their spiritual nature, not a delegation or election to their status. An aspect of the tongochim’s responsibilities was to prepare the dead for burial. See also transformed shaman.


**Tornarsuk**

One of many types of *torngraq*, or helping spirits, utilized by the angakut (shamans) of East Greenland. The angakok summons the tornarsuk to answer questions during divination sessions. However, the powerful tornarsuk is particularly dangerous because it is known to steal souls. The angakok summons the aperketek, another spirit who acts as a mediator between the angakok and the tornarsuk. Among the Aleut tornarsuk is a general term for helping spirit, while in other Eskimo regions the term is not used at all.


**Torngak**

A unique helping spirit or torngraq of the Labrador Eskimo shamans. The Labrador shamans acquire only one torngak, unlike other Eskimo angakut...
who acquire multiple torngraq, sometimes fifty or more. The torngraq is a spirit being that has no past or present relationship with a physical form. They take many forms, some fiery and elemental and some unrecognizable. Through the appropriate rituals they can be embodied in an object to create an amulet or fetish. See also embodiment.


Torngraq
The helping spirit of the angakok (shaman). Torngrat, torngädt (pl) is in the language of the Iglulik of the Arctic Coast, and some dialectical variants are törnaq (s), törnat (pl) from West Greenland, and torngak (s), tornait (pl) from Labrador.

The torngraq are the angakok’s primary teachers and the source of shamans’ power. To acquire torngraq the novice must spend time alone in the vast emptiness of the Arctic and pray for one or more of the powerful animal spirits to come to his or her aid. These animal spirits, like the Dog, Owl, or Shark, often appear in human form.

As with all shamans, the spirits choose the shaman. The novice has no choice in the torngraq who comes or that one comes at all. However, some parents prepared for the birth of a shaman in their child by observing particularly strict taboos during pregnancy beyond those practiced by the culture at large. Through their actions they hoped to influence the torngraq to favor their child/shaman with a healthy childhood and later with a powerful song through which to call the torngraq into his body and even greater ecstasy as he enters trance and travels in the spirit world. The angakok sings with the voice of his torngraq while in trance. This joy so easily given by the torngraq turns easily to sorrow and depression if the torngraq should decide to leave, terminating the relationship indefinitely.


Torniwoq
The shamanic rituals of the East Greenland angakok (shaman), during which the angakok performs ilimarneq, or spirit flight. There are four traditional reasons the angakok was called upon to perform a torniwoq: a scarcity of sea animals for hunting, snow masses or fjord ice blocking the ways to the hunting places, soul loss, and infertility in a married woman.

The binding of the angakok is characteristic of the torniwoq, as is the angakok’s ilimarneq. The angakok’s hands and elbows are bound tightly behind his back, with a long thong that is sometimes tied also to the knees and neck. When the angakok’s soul returns from its journey the angakok’s body will be magically freed of its bonds. See also Greenland.

and change form at will. Tornrak often appear in human-like form with some extreme or peculiar characteristic like a distorted face or unnaturally long hair.


**Totem Spirits**

A type of animal spirits that are inherited through the family line by all members of the family. The clans of many cultures, e.g., Pacific coast of North America, Aboriginals in Australia, etc., are identified by their totem animals. The connection of a clan or family to a totem animal is based on the recognition of a common nature (qualities, skills, talents) and the collective participation between humans and animals everywhere in nature.

Animal spirits are helping spirits in animal form who are able to transcend the abilities of that animal in its ordinary existence, e.g., anacondas flying without wings or fish swimming through mountains. Though they express their power through their extraordinary abilities like power animals, totem spirits do not necessarily help the shaman in shamanic work. This varies culture to culture.

There are many ways to receive or embody the power of one’s totem animal. In some cultures eating the animal in ordinary reality is a way to directly assimilate the animal’s power and teaching. In other cultures a shaman must observing a strict taboo against eating the flesh of the animal to maintain a relationship with the animal. In many cultures the totem animal is honored by wearing the skins, feathers, or a symbolic representation of the animal. In most cultures the relationship with the totem animal is honored through animal-like dancing that occurs when the individual merges with the spirit of the animal and allows that animal to dance through his or her body during ritual or ceremony. See also embodiment.


**Trago**

Trago is a pure cane alcohol used by shamans throughout the Andes and Amazonia for cleanings, purification, camaying, and creating fire. See also Andes, South America and camay.

**Training**

“Though the gods give shamans their miraculous powers, shamans must learn the technique of invoking them.”

—Korean Proverb

The function of training is to develop skills and talents so that shamans don’t hurt themselves or others unintentionally. During training the shaman learns to control psychic and physiological functions, to regulate body chemistry and the transformation of energy internally, and to master concentration and contemplation techniques.

When the shaman is working with helping spirits in the spirit world or embodying a helping spirit in the physical world, they experience themselves as a limitless being. Limitless power is a great responsibility that demands impeccability in thought, word, and deed. Training enables the shaman to bear both the power and responsibility with skill and humility, so that others are not harmed through the shaman’s ignorance or hubris.

The training of a shaman is unique to each culture, and can be different for different individuals within the same culture, particularly if that culture spreads over vastly different geographical regions. The training may also vary depending on the helping spirit(s) that the shaman is working with. There are, however, four basic principles found in shamanic training practices across all cultures.

1. Change in awareness due to supernatural event(s): The true nature
of the universe beyond four-dimensional **time** and **space** is glimpsed or revealed in a sudden, qualitative shift of consciousness. As a result, **healing** powers (inborn or acquired) manifest in the person’s life, becoming available for use. These events may be subtle, as in a **dream** or moment of revelation, or they may be quite dramatic as in a bout with physical or mental **illness**.

2. **Training develops the shaman’s worldview:** The individual engages in some process of gaining spiritual **knowledge**, skills, personal healing, and power. While engaged in this process, insights into **sacred** wisdom are revealed such that a new worldview grows organically, expanding ever larger and more intricately and elegantly. A shaman’s power is directly proportional to the depth and breadth of that individual’s awareness of the true nature of the **Kosmos**.

3. **Individual talents emerge:** These specialties are usually related to the individual’s own life and the personal healing **journey** that brings him/her to this point in their life. For example, those who have recovered from being struck by lightning often heal with the power of lightning, or individuals of man/woman **gender**, having achieved an internal balance between the masculine and feminine, are quite gifted in helping individuals of all genders to find their own inner balance.

4. **The training ends in a test or initiation:** The **initiation** may be traditional or spontaneous, depending on the cultural expectations, structure of the training, and relationship with the **teacher**. This test may be as simple as a successful healing **ritual** with the first client or as intense as the Maori initiation that requires splitting a stone or tree and killing a bird or human using only **karakia** (ritual chanting) and **prayer**.

Shamanic training allows the individual to understand other worlds with extrasensory perception in the same way that our normal senses enable us to understand this ordinary, physical world. Through training the shaman develops the ability to use higher human potential, developing eyes that see the invisible world, ears that hear the **words** of spirit, and sensory and emotional feelings that are no longer limited and censored by the shaman’s past experiences and old personal identification.

The desired expansion of sensory perception, humility, and spiritual insight are achieved by including one or more of the following in the training process: fasting, motionlessness, prolonged solitude, monotonous chanting, vomiting, enemas, complete separation from the community, and freedom from normal daily tasks. These practices weaken the mind’s structure of beliefs and limitations by disrupting physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual patterns that reinforce these stable habits. An internal **chaos** ensues in which the body and mind are able to transform.

The structure of shamanic training falls into one or more of three categories:

1. **Apprentice/Spirit Teacher**—the candidate works with a teacher or teachers who are in spirit form. The spirit chooses the candidate, often suddenly, and the candidate must surrender control to the teachings of the spirit. This is a one-on-one relationship that demands a great deal of creativity, flexibility, and perseverance. Early on in the candidate’s training the helping spirit creates experiences, primarily in the spirit world, to strengthen the candidate’s weaknesses and teach him/her the fundamentals of healing. The spirit also teaches the unique ways that individuals will practice healing in relationship with their helping
spirits. There are many examples of this type of training; the one common to many cultures is the lightning shaman. These individuals are struck by lightning and thus selected by lightning spirit. If they recover and recognize the event as their call to shamanic work, they will continue their training. Later, as the individual has gathered power and skills, he or she may “hunt” a particular spirit teacher to learn particular types of healing or to gain access to specific kinds of power.

This is the form every shaman’s training will ultimately take after initiation, whether the initial training was with a human teacher, spirit teacher, or in a school. Shamanic healing is a path of mastery; the shaman will continue learning from the helping spirits and the Source of all things throughout his or her lifetime.

2. Apprentice/Mentor—the candidate works with a shaman in physical form who has a strong reputation and great power. This is a one-on-one relationship; it has as much structure as the particular apprentice and mentor bring to it. This relationship is often seen within families where the teaching is being handed down from generation to generation: parent to child, grandparent to grandchild, or aunt or uncle to nephew or niece. When a candidate seeks out a particular teacher, there may or may not be an exchange of money or barter for the teaching. This varies culture to culture and is based on cultural precedent.

3. Schools for shamans—the candidate works with established shamans in physical form through a highly ordered training process that is, for the most part, the same for all candidates within a group and between one group and the next. The relationship may or may not be one on one, however the process itself is highly structured and based on culture and tradition, as with the Midewin Society of the Ojibwa (North America) and the rigid structure of the Zulu (Africa) and the Blackfoot (North America) training. Shaman schools often arise in cultures where the shaman is expected to accurately memorize large bodies of information, like genealogies or the parts of the landscape that the spirits of each of the tribe’s ancestors now inhabit. The healing kahuna tradition of Hawaii demands mastery of a huge body of chants, dances, and ceremonies, as well as skills in divination and healing. Similarly, Korean shamans who, along with healing arts and divination, must also master dancing, musical instruments, chants, and the correct preparation of offerings of food, paper flowers, and figures for each ceremony. There may or may not be an exchange of money or barter for the teaching. This varies culture to culture and is based on cultural precedent.

The singular consistent result of shamanic training is the expansion of the shaman’s awareness to embrace a multi-dimensional worldview that is no longer bound by the physical laws of time and space. Shamanic training creates individuals who express a sincere desire to serve, humility in the face of miracles, and relative freedom from small personal, ego-centered goals. Transpersonal psychological training and consciousness development occurs for the shaman during their training. It is logical to assume that the relationship between the individual and the spirits plays some role in forming this worldview since the training of all shamans involves developing a working relationship with one or more helping spirits. Largely because of this working relationship the shaman experiences a continuing expansion of consciousness, commitment to service, and mastery of both the everyday and the spirit worlds.
Shamanic training prepares the individual by transferring an expanded worldview and the knowledge of tools and techniques that have worked in the past. The initiated shaman knows how to use the tools of the past and is able to adapt them if necessary to respond to the energies of the present moment to create effective healing rituals. Each shamanic ritual is unique because the circumstances and conditions of the clients differ each time.

Because there are many workshops presented today that teach shamanic techniques to the lay person, it is important to note the distinction between learning shamanic methods for personal healing and self-exploration and the training of a shaman who will use shamanic techniques to meet the needs of the community. The shaman's training and initiation into the shamanic worldview sets his or her personal healing process apart from his or her shamanic healing practices. They are related, but the distinction—usually defined by the initiatory experience—is clear for the shaman. This distinction and separation is not clear for the uninitiated.

Shamanic training, with few exceptions, involves prolonged periods of physical, emotional, intellectual, and spiritual training during which time the individual's conscious aim becomes service, not ego, oriented so that they can become clear and accurate vehicles and translators of the transcendental knowledge gathered from spirit. The shaman becomes a mediator between the spirit world and the physical world to fulfill the specific needs of the community. How they do this depends on the contract with the spiritual world. It can be a short-term commitment or it can consume the rest of a shaman's life. See also aboriginal; Africa; embodiment; Korea; North America; pattern recognition; the call.


Trance

Shamanic trance consists of a diverse range of alternate states of consciousness used by the shaman to perform the tasks of his or her profession. These altered states are experienced by the shaman as different from his or her ordinary, day-to-day, waking consciousness. In trance the invisible world of spirit becomes visible, allowing the shaman to communicate with helping spirits and to see the true source of a patient's problem. The shaman's experience of these trance states is often ecstatic.

The crucial element of the shaman's trance is the control of the trance state. The shaman does not master the spirits, so much as he or she masters the trance and the resulting working relationship with spirit. Mastery of trance demands impeccable control of entrance into and duration of trance, memory and interpretation of the trance experience, and the ability to communicate that experience during and after in a way that is transformative for the patient and/or audience.

All of the altered states in this diverse set of trance phenomena include the experiential features of control and mastery. The shaman is a trance specialist. The profession involves the production and social employment of the ecstatic altered states. These different trance states are used on behalf of the community to address issues that arise from birth, death, sickness, sorcery, and the need for healing.

The purpose of the shaman's trance is not autonomous as in meditation and yoga traditions. The shaman does not seek enlightenment nor does he or she seek detachment from the external world. The shaman's trance is outwardly oriented toward the community with the goal of serving as a medium of communication and action between the spirit world and that of humankind.
In 1935 in the *Psychomental Complex of the Tungus*, one of the most authoritative ethnographic studies of Siberian shamanism, S. M. Shirokogoroff posits that the most basic attribute of the shaman’s trance is the “mastery of spirits,” or *possession*. The Tungus distinguish between an involuntary possession trance, which is an *illness*, and the voluntary possession trance of the shaman who “possesses spirits” to cure the possession illnesses of others. This type of *embodiment* trance is reported in the shamanism of various other cultures.

In contrast other scholars, most prominently Mircea Eliade in 1964, in *Shamanism: Archaic Techniques of Ecstasy*, contend that the true shaman’s trance is the visionary *ecstasy* of spirit flight. In this trance state, the inverse of possession, the shaman’s soul *journeys* into the spirit realm, and the shaman sees or has *visions* of ascending and descending to other worlds. Eliade, also looking at Siberian shamanism, posits that possession is a later, degenerate form of spirit flight, in spite of his observation that the shaman’s possession trance was an effective, universally distributed phenomena. This type of spirit flight or journeying trance is reported in the shamanism of a variety of cultures.

Practitioners caution against viewing the shaman’s trance as exclusive to either. The type of trance used by a shaman has a great deal to do with what the shaman is trying to accomplish through the trance. Any definition of the shaman’s trance must include both spirit flight and spirit embodiment, the full range of altered states between, and the understanding that these trance states can exist separately or coexist to various degrees throughout a *shamanic healing* ritual.

There are shamans, particularly in African cultures, who attain full control and mastery of their trance states without any reference to “mastering the spirits.” For these shamans the healing powers are believed to emanate from the energy and magic inside of the shaman, not from helping spirits. The trance state is used by the shaman to activate and use these healing powers.

The common element of all of these accounts is that the shaman, no matter whether the trance experience is interpreted as spirit flight or spirit embodiment, remains in control of his or her trance. Furthermore, the shaman is able to use that trance state for the reasons the shaman entered the trance to begin with. The shaman’s control and volition change what is *soul loss* for the individual into *soul flight* for the shaman and what is possession for the individual into embodiment for the shaman.

This distinction illuminates the important connection between the shaman’s *training* and his or her social function. During training the shaman learns to master possession and to intentionally call spirits into his or her body. The shaman also learns to turn soul loss into mastery of soul flight, or journeying, and send his or her *soul* back and forth into the spirit world at will. The mastery of embodiment and soul flight trance states qualifies the shaman to heal his or her patients and *apprentices* who suffer from spirit possession and soul loss.

**Discipline**

Shamans learn to induce and master trance experiences as part of a defined discipline that is more than learning a set of techniques. Though there are many cultural variations of this discipline, at its core there is always a master/apprentice relationship, regardless of whether the master is in human form or exists as a spirit being. Mastering the trance discipline involves a system of psychological techniques and prescribed types of *altered states of consciousness* whose goal is the psychological transformation of the apprentice.

**Techniques to Enter Trance**

Shamans use a variety, and often a combination, of techniques to induce altered states of consciousness. These include: seclusion, *silence*, solitude,
sleep deprivation, visual and/or sensory deprivation, dehydration, fasting, pain stimulation, repetitious actions, like grinding or weaving, jumping, running, sexual activity, visualization, drumming, dancing, instruments like bowstrings and bells, chanting, and ingesting psychotic plants.

Many of these techniques set up a monotonous rhythm with an instrument or through the body. These regular, monotonous rhythms function as “vehicles” for the shaman who rides this thread of rhythm into and out of the altered state of consciousness. For example, percussion instruments like the drum may facilitate trance states when beaten at certain rapid rates. Psychotropic plants also serve as vehicles for the shaman to enter trance.

Some cultures use focused concentration or meditation-like means to enter trance. These shamans, like the Australian Aboriginal shamans for example, sit or lie in quiet contemplative states when communicating with the supernatural and performing magical acts.

The common element of all of these accounts is that the shaman, no matter how the trance state is induced, is not overwhelmed by the intensity of the experience. He or she remains in control of his or her trance and manipulates it in the service of his or her community.

**Symbolic Language**

The meaning of the images and experiences of the shaman in trance are not absolute or fixed. The experience is referential and must be interpreted relative to the shaman’s reason for being in the trance. For example, the trance experience is interpreted relative to the patient’s illness or the desire for a successful hunt. The shaman must maintain focus on his or her reason for being in the trance to accurately interpret the events and information experienced there.

The shaman uses a unique, symbolic language that is relevant and has meaning for the community to describe his or her journey. The symbolic language is crucial; it is the bridge between the worlds experienced by the shaman and the ordinary reality of the audience. The symbols and experiences brought forth from the shaman’s trance must be both transformative for the shaman and empathic for the audience. A successful shaman must adapt his or her symbolic language to the role and expectations of the community.

It is not enough that the shaman has visions and enters into controlled trance states. The shaman must communicate to give form to these trance experiences so they will serve the community. The socio-cultural context provides the cultural setting for proper perspective of the shaman’s trance performances and initiations. Without this background, the shaman’s beliefs might seem idiosyncratic, unrelated, and removed from social reality. See also Africa; Australia; chant; dance; non-ordinary reality; ritual.


**Trance (Short)**

Trance states are often described in two extremes. One is the ecstatic soul flight characterized by immobility, silence, solitude, no crisis, sensory deprivation, recollection, and visions of a journey through the spirit world. The other is an embodiment trance characterized by a radical alteration of the self, movement, noise, crisis, sensory overstimulation, amnesia, and visions of the spirit dimensions of this ordinary reality.

These two trance states can be seen as opposite ends of a spectrum of altered states used by the shaman. Some trance states may show qualities of both. The shaman moves freely along this spectrum of trance possibilities within a healing session.

Scholars who do extensive fieldwork with shamans consistently observe shamans using both magical flight and intentional possession in their work. Shamans pass through a series of altered states or depths of trance during any one session until they reach the level that is necessary for the particular healing or the level at which they operate best. The process of passing through increasingly deep states of possession may last from just minutes to half an hour. See also altered states of consciousness and ecstasy.


**Transcultural Medicine**

Transcultural medical practices result when two or more systems of medicine are used for the purpose of curing a patient. At the end of the twentieth century there are two distinct systems of medicine: allopathic medicine, which regards the body as a machine made up of many separate parts, and complementary or holistic medicine, which regards the human being as a whole made up of the interdependent relation of body, mind, and soul.

In many cultures around the world patients are crossing the boundaries between the holistic systems, the shamanic systems of indigenous peoples, and the scientific system of Western cultures. For example, on most reservations in North America, the Native American population uses the best of both traditional and Western systems, thus creating a need for transcultural medical procedures.

Where patients have the option, they will often go to indigenous practitioners for diseases caused in the spirit world and to modern allopathic physicians for treatment of diseases like tuberculosis or appendicitis, which are believed to be nonsupernatural in origin. In some areas the distinction is made between “white man sickness,” which are the diseases brought to the Americas by Euroamericans, and traditional illnesses that have been treated by shamans and medicine people for thousands of years.

This distinction is particularly clear in the area of psychotherapy, where the origins of mental illness are largely supernatural and social from the point of view of traditional healing systems. In illustration of this point, in the late 1900s Brazil’s mental institutions were filled beyond capacity with mentally ill patients that the psychiatric profession was largely unable to cure. One institution was turned over to Brazilian Spiritist healers who practice a mixture of religious and indigenous shamanic healing. In two years the entire population of patients was healed and discharged, now able to function in contemporary Brazil without medication.

In North America the indigenous population exhibits greater confidence in traditional medicine people and shamans than in alien psychotherapists.
The indigenous practitioner anchors his or her practice in the spirit world, a world the indigenous person knows from daily experience to be the most powerful force, interrelating all aspects of life. The psychiatrist, on the other hand, anchors his or her practice in a system of beliefs and references drawn from a foreign culture whose limited belief in the spirit world renders the psychiatric system significantly less creditable for the indigenous person.

Ake Hultkrantz, Professor Emeritus of Comparative Religion at the University of Stockholm, reports that the inadequacy of Western medicine from a Native American perspective is three-fold. There is, first, a lack of holistic concepts and practice; secondly, an overvalued focus on physical biochemical aspects; and thirdly, a neglect of psychosocial and cultural aspects of ill health and treatment. Native Americans report a clear superiority of indigenous therapies in the treatment of psychological problems and in effecting positive personality changes.

More and more, Westerners are crossing these medical boundaries, for reasons based on similar criticisms of allopathic practices. People of all cultural backgrounds are turning to shamans and traditional indigenous healers for treatment of the spiritual, emotional, and psychological wounds of contemporary life when they do not find the offerings of Western medicine effective. As a result, doctors of both systems are working with ever increasing cooperation where the patient population demands it.

Traditional practitioners began referring patients to allopathic doctors when they arrived with their antibiotics and medications for physical diseases like malaria and tuberculosis. Traditional practitioners tend to refer when medication is believed to be a superior cure or when guided to do so by spirit helpers. For example, Sun Dance leaders among the Crow of North America refer patients to hospitals for particular remedies such as cough and heart medicines. They also refer patients to the hospital if they get a message that their powers are not strong enough for that particular illness.

The true movement toward transcultural medicine began when allopathic doctors, recognizing the areas where traditional doctors offer superior cures, began referring patients the other way across cultural lines. For example, on some Navajo reservations in North America traditional singing ceremonies (healings) are permitted in the hospital after treatment by Western physicians. Traditional medicine people know that they have cured or prolonged the lives of people who turned to them when the allopathic system offered no cure.

As time goes on transcultural practitioners are emerging. For example, Lewis Mehl-Madrona integrates lessons from traditional Native American healers into his work as a physician and psychologist. In northern Alberta, Canada, Cree healer Russell Willier uses helping spirits to diagnose and to prescribe herbal teas and ointments. All of Willier’s treatments are accompanied by tobacco offerings. Due to the success of Willier’s medical activity he has created a health center where other traditional native healers work with patients. Their collective aim is cooperation with Western doctors, not integration. See also dance; psychotherapeutic practices; tobacco.


Transfiguration

The ability of the shaman to transform his or her own form into that of a helping spirit. This phenomenon is widespread in shamanism and is commonly referred to as shapeshifting. The purpose of transfiguration is to fully embody the luminous energy of the spirit, in essence to become that spirit. This enables the shaman to better use...
and/or learn from that spirit energy. Typical shamanic transfigurations include changing into animals, plants, or deities, usually through inducing an embodiment trance. See also trance.

**Transformed Shaman**

Transformed shamans are biological males who transform their gender from masculine to feminine to become shamans. “Transformed” refers to the gender metamorphosis that occurs within the male as he becomes female. Transformed shamans are also called “soft shamans,” which refers to the fluidity of their sexual and gender identification. Transformed shamans are seen by their culture as belonging to a third or alternate gender. This transformation is expected of men becoming shamans and is sanctioned by their culture.

Transformed shamans appear primarily in cultures where the shamans are traditionally women. Male or female, the novice is first called by spirit, then training begins. However, boys called to become transformed shamans must first become female, then become a shaman. The transformation begins with learned behavior and outward changes, then progresses through sexual and physical transformation.

Transformed shamans emerged in the Paleolithic era (2,500,000–10,000 B.C.E.) particularly among the Araucanians, Chukchee, Kamchadal, the Asiatic Eskimo, occasionally by the Koryak, Indonesians (Sea Dyak), Burmese Patagonians, Arapaho, Cheyenne, Ute, Zuñi, and other indigenous people of North America (though not limited to these cultures). These gender-variant shamans represented for their communities a sphere of spiritual powers that exists beyond the male-female polarity. They comprise a special class of androgynous shamans, who may have unique functions that vary culture to culture.

**Five Stages of Transformation**

There are five general stages of transformation, with some stages appearing more or less pronounced depending on the culture. The first stage is the call from the spirit world, which usually comes to the gender-variant shaman in pre-adolescent childhood in the form of dreams or visions. In most cultures the parents of the boy arrange a ritual of choosing into which he is thrust without preparation. The boy’s actions, taken in the ritual context, determine the acceptance of his calling. From this point in his life his special status is recognized within the community.

The call from the spirits cannot be ignored without repercussions. Though the nature of the repercussions varies, the spiritual interventions often take the form of pervasive visions of things culturally related to gender-variant shamans. If the boy’s reluctance persists, the interventions may intensify, disrupting his life, his family, and in extreme cases his entire community.

In the second and third stages of transformation, the traditional male gender is abandoned and that of the female is adopted. The second stage involves the outward transformation. The boy is treated as a girl, in dress and hair style, and in some cultures he receives a new, female name. The third stage involves the training by the women in skills necessary to fulfill the culture’s female gender roles. This is a significant change in the indigenous cultures that have clearly defined work and responsibilities for each gender. The boy must leave behind all activities, mannerisms, characteristics, even the language of other boys and learn those of girls and women.

After adolescence, the fourth stage, training in shamanic techniques, begins. The boy is apprenticed to a female shaman or an elder transformed shaman or he continues to learn from his helping spirits. The fifth stage involves initiation into the art of being the receptive partner in sexual intercourse. This initiation often has a sexual component and/or training in practices of sacred sex.

Completion of these five stages of transformation is marked by an initiation
ceremony, after which the individual is recognized by the community as an androgynous transformed shaman. In some cultures there is a sixth stage of transformation that continues over time as the shaman completes his physical gender transformation.

In the early twentieth century there were still stories told of older koe’kcuc, the transformed shamans of the Chukchee, who succeeded in a true physical transformation with the aid of their ke’let, helping spirits. The koe’kcuc were believed to embody their ke’let so completely that they physically transformed their male genitalia to female. Ya’rirgin, male companion of the koe’kcuc Tilu’wgi, “confessed that he hoped that in time, with the aid of the ke’let, Tilu’wgi would be able to equal the real ‘soft men’ of old, and to change the organs of his sex altogether.”

The transformed shamans were considered the most powerful in some cultures. Female shamans were the next most powerful and untransformed male shamans the least. A community’s relationship with its shamans is often complicated, involving a mixture of fear and respect. People often resort to ridicule, particularly around powerful transformed shamans, to alleviate their own discomfort with the shaman’s power and gender variance.

Death
Many cultures believed that transformed shamans would retain their gender-variant identity in the spirit world. To show respect for their unique gender and power, the transformed shamans were buried on their own special hill. In other cultures the souls of the transformed shamans were believed to join the female shamans in their special spirit village in the Upperworld. In the cultures where everyone was buried together the transformed shamans were usually buried on the men’s side of the cemetery. However, they were dressed for burial in ways that represented their role as transformed shamans and their status as “not-men.”

Shapeshifting
Shapeshifting by shamans is recorded in the oral traditions of cultures all over the world. However, the transformation of gender discussed here is a particular kind of change that is distinct from other shapeshifting in that it is both permanent and necessary for the man to become a shaman.

Shapeshifting is the art of transforming into other forms, like animals, nature spirits, deities, or other helping spirits. Shamans gather power, knowledge, and the experience of Oneness-with-All-Things through shapeshifting. They may also use this technique to cure or assure the survival of others. A shaman can learn a great deal by shapeshifting his or her gender as well. The intention in this act, which is elective and impermanent, is somewhat different than the transformation of a gender-variant shaman.

The reverse gender transformation of female to male was not expected in any culture as a condition for a woman to become a shaman. There are stories of female shamans temporarily shapeshifting into men. However, these women shapeshift after they are initiated shamans, not as an essential part of the process of becoming shamans. In these stories the female shaman transforms to hunt or to accomplish some traditional male gender role task to save the village or other loved ones. This shapeshifting is not permanent. The intent in this elective transformation is different than the requirement to transform, whether that requirement originates in the spirit world or in the expectations of the community.

In cultures where shamans tended to be male, a woman does not have to become a man, dress like a man, or act like a man in any way to become a shaman. She is called by the spirits and trained as the men are.

Shamans must work with the spirits that call them into the practice, regardless of gender. The gender of helping spirits is not dependent on the gender of the shaman. Though the gender of the spirits may play a part in creating...
transformed shamans, it does not explain why female shamans who embody male spirits are not required to permanently transform.

Native Americans explain the difference in this way. Masculine qualities are half of ordinary humanness. But feminine qualities are more than half, automatically encompassing the masculine, as well as many other characteristics that go beyond the limits of male and female. Consequently, these cultures recognize a special status for men who have the ability to transcend the limits of their masculinity while acknowledging that women are limitless by nature.

See also angakok; animal spirits; apprentice; basir; berdache (berdach); death and dying; dual nature; embodiment; Iban Dyak; manang bali; Mapuche; Ngaju Dyak; paksu mudang; sangoma; Two Spirit.


Transmutation
Transmutation is the ability to transform objects or substances into other substances or forms. The ability of the shaman to transform his or her own form into animals or plants is referred to as shapeshifting. Common shamanic transmutations involve animating an animal skin or object or changing an object from one form to another. In shamanism and sorcery there is an object, a tupilak, that is animated from parts of dead animals and the sorcerers’ own energy. See also power objects.


Transpersonal
Transpersonal experiences are perceived by the individual to extend beyond the ordinary sense of self to connect with a wider awareness of reality and the Kosmos in which the individual is a part.

Transpersonal states of consciousness are a related group of states of being characterized by this expanded sense of self. These states of consciousness are central to work in the field of transpersonal psychology.

Transpersonal psychologists acknowledge the possibility of realms and capacities of the mind that transcend the usual ego-centered awareness. They accept the possibility of spiritual sources of wisdom which are transcendent aspects of the psyche, above and beyond the ego.


Tree of Life
The Tree of Life is a cross-culturally recurrent symbol for the connection between the realms of the spirit world and the opening between the physical and spiritual realms. For countless cultures and religions throughout the long history of humankind on earth, the Tree of Life is the axis mundi, the Center of the World.

The Center of the World, as described by Mircea Eliade, author of the classic study of shamanism, Shamanism: Archaic Techniques of Ecstasy, is the place “where the sacred manifests itself in space, the real unveils itself, and the world comes into existence.” Eliade continues to explain that it is not just a point of the sacred in the chaos of the profane, but it is the place where the worlds connect and beings can pass between the worlds.

The Tree of Life is used by the shaman and the helping spirits as the
way to move between the worlds. The branches provide a means to climb to the Upperworld and the roots a means to reach the Lowerworld. The Tree of Life is also known as the World Tree, World Axis, Great Tree, or Cosmic Tree.

The Tree of Life is represented symbolically by trees, pillars, poles, large stone monoliths, mountains, or temples built like mountains. In many cultures a particular type of tree is considered the Tree of Life. For example, the birch for the Tungus, the oak for the Celts, the sycamore fig for ancient Egyptians, and the cedar for the peoples of the Pacific northwestern region of North America.

In rain forest regions, like the Amazon, the river may function like the Tree of Life. It is the center of life and the roadway that connects all things.

The Tree of Life appears as the seven-layered teaching glyph in the Judaic Kabbalah, in the Indian Rig Veda (one of the oldest books in the world), and in the Buddhist Satapatha Brahmana. It appears as the world art, Ygdrasil, in Germanic lore, as bai si in Thai ceremonies, as the central pole of the Sun Dance in North America, and as wacah chan in the glyphs of the ancient Maya. The bo tree, possibly a Babylonian tree of life, appears on four-thousand-year-old steatite seals and in India the yupa, a sacrificial post, is chosen by its assimilation with the Cosmic Tree of Life.

Climbing the Tree of Life is referred to symbolically in stories that tell of ascending seven layers into the sky and climbing stairs with seven steps or ladders with seven rungs. The Tree of Life is symbolized when seven notches are carved into a tree, post, or stone. For example, the Turko-Mongol birch post is carved with seven (or nine) notches and set standing symbolically at the center of the world for their shamanic rituals and ceremonies.

A partial, cross-cultural list of the Tree of Life follows:
- Sima-Kade—Zulu, Africa
- udesi burkhan—Brugmansia aurea, Siberia
- Ygdrasil—Germanic, Europe
- bai si—Thailand, Asia
- wacah chan—Maya, Central America
- yupa—India
- bo—Babylonian

See also dance; Middleworld; shamanic symbols.


Tree of the Shaman
The tree of the shaman is a reference to the Tree of Life, which figures prominently in the initiation of Indonesian shamans. Nepalese shamans are also initiated on the Tree of Life or, da suwa (life trees). The initiate is left blindfolded overnight on precarious platforms perched high in the life tree to seek visions relevant to his or her future as a shaman.

All trees are viewed by shamans as symbols of the Tree of Life. The Tree of Life is the axis mundi, the connection between the seen (physical) and the unseen (spiritual) worlds, visualized as a tree in many cultures and religions. See also Nepal.


Trees
Trees are reflections of the Tree of Life in most shamanic cultures. The Tree of Life connects the physical realm with the spirit realm, and the shaman with the helping spirits. The trunk connects the Middleworld to the other worlds, allowing the shaman passage to the Lowerworld through the roots and to the Upperworld through the branches.
In many cultures a particular type of tree is considered the Tree of Life. For example, the birch for the Tungus, the oak for the Celts, the sycamore fig for ancient Egyptians, and the cedar for the peoples of the Pacific northwestern region of North America.

The Celtic people have a strong association with trees and the Tree of Life. By standing as if in the center of a tree, one stands in the center of the Celtic Universe and is connected to all things. The Celts also saw their life path in trees; the roots symbolizing the past, with their heritage and ancestors; the trunk symbolizing the present, and the expression of lifeforce and creative spirit; and the branches symbolizing the future, with their goals and reaching toward the attainment of those goals.

In many cultures trees are looked to as teachers of transformation, reminding people of the cyclical nature of all life and the constancy of change. This is particularly true in areas populated by deciduous trees which completely change character with the seasons. Trees are also regarded as the medicine people of the plant kingdom. They teach humans how to work with the plants for healing.

**Trickster**
The trickster is a universal mythic figure who is the embodiment of the unexpected. As a helping spirit, the trickster teaches through surprise, reversal, or through humor at the student's expense. The trickster often shocks or humiliates people into seeing their attachments, habits, and outmoded sense of self.

The trickster is a powerful helping spirit who works with the flaws of ordinary reality to create good and bad luck. In some cultures there are both positive and negative tricksters. For example, in the Dagara tradition, Hyena is considered a negative trickster because he never fully uses the potential of Nature and it always backfires on him. Conversely, Spider and Rabbit are considered positive tricksters because they use the powers of Nature fully in ways that benefit all living beings.

A partial list of tricksters includes: Coyote, Rabbit, and Raven in various regions on North America; Maui in the Polynesian Islands, Loki of the Germanic tribes, Krishna in Indian mythology, Hermes in Greek mythology, and Mpungushe, the jackal, Anansi, the spider, and Kintu, the hero-fool, in the Zulu tradition.


**Tsentsak**
Tsentsak are normally invisible energy projectiles that the shamans of various peoples throughout the Amazon region use to heal and sorcerers use to harm or kill. One aspect of the shaman's power is a thick, white phlegm kept in the upper part of the stomach, which is considered the most vital part of the body. This phlegm is called yachay, which is derived from a verb meaning “to know.” Thus the phlegm and the tsentsak within it represent power as knowledge.

For these people, knowing how the world really is and how to manipulate its processes is power. The magical phlegm, the helping spirits, and the tsentsak are just three aspects or manifestations of the shaman's power. These manifestations of power can pass through many objects, substances, forms, and actions.

The shaman passes knowledge, power, and the tsentsaks on to an apprentice by regurgitating some of this phlegm and giving it to the apprentice to drink. The phlegm contains spirit helpers which the shaman or sorcerer can call upon for help. Similarly, the tsentsak can be used in healing or fired into a victim to cause harm. Inside the patient or victim, the dart is partly a material object and partly a living spirit being. See also magical darts and Shuar.
Tukyaini
The energy intrusion or disease object shot by a Hopi sorcerer into his or her victim. The tukyaini, or arrow, is sucked by the tuuhikya (shaman) from the patient’s body during a healing ritual. A tukyaini is also called powaka hoadta, or “sorcerer his arrow.” See also disease; extraction; ritual; sucking shaman.


Tunax
A general term for a shaman’s helping spirit of any type in the Alaskan Arctic island regions, tunaxat (pl). Kala is the general term on the Alaskan Arctic mainland. A shaman who works with a tunax is called a tunagalix while a shaman who works with a kala is called a kalalix.

There are many types of spirits and many can change form. A tunax can be an animal spirit, a dwarf spirit, an elemental, a giant, or any form. The most important helping spirits are the animal spirits.


Tunghât
A tunghât is a shaman’s helping spirit in the west Alaskan Arctic Coast, tunghât (pl). Tunghalik, or shaman, means one who controls or owns a tunghât. The tunghât usually takes a human form with a grotesque face but also has the ability to take the form of an animal or monster at will. Some forms are so terrifying that if the tunghât were to suddenly appear to an ordinary person, that person would eventually die of soul loss induced by severe fright unless the shaman retrieves the lost soul.

The tunghât possess supernatural powers and some are more powerful than others. Shamans in this region endeavor to establish relationships with as many tunghât as possible to increase their power.


Tungralik
Tungralik is the term for angakok, or shaman, in the Yukon dialect of the South Alaska Eskimo. It means a person who possesses a tungraniyak, or helping spirit. There are many different types of helping spirits in this region of the world, however the most important are the animal spirits. A tungralik usually has several helping spirits, often of a variety of types.

Masks, or kinaijoq, are an essential tool in the tungralik’s practice. The mask is made to embody the shaman’s helping spirit. When the shaman dons the mask and dances it in the dance rituals, the spirit enters his body and the shaman enters into a full embodiment trance. See also Alaskan and trance.


Tungus
People of northeastern Siberia. The Evén and the Evenk formally comprise the Tungus, however they are found in many tribal groups.

Cosmology
Like other Siberians, the Tungus conceive of the spirit world composed of three realms: Lowerworld, Middleworld, and Upperworld. The Lowerworld appears similar to the earth, but exists outside of time and is populated...
by the souls of the dead. The Middleworld also looks similar to earth, but it corresponds to real time and is populated by various types of spirits, human souls, and animal spirits, all of which have the ability to move out of time at will. The Upperworld exists outside of time and is the world of the stars, sun, moon, Buga (a Great Creator being who manifests as the Sky), and a few other spirits.

**Soul**
The chanjan, or human soul, is conceived of as a multiple soul. After death, the chanjan becomes an omi. In a natural and proper death process the omi are escorted by ancestral spirits to the land of the Omi-Souls, the source of the river of kinship of the Tungus. After this return to the source is complete, the omi may reincarnate in subsequent generations as a human or an animal. Omi may also choose not to reincarnate.

Some groups of the Tungus conceive of an aspect of the soul that carries the hereditary characteristics of the clan. This soul aspect represents what can be passed on genetically. All members of the same clan possess this clan soul within the complement of their multiple soul.

**Class**
The Tungus do not differentiate between “black” and “white” shamans. Sacrifices to the celestial gods can be made without the assistance of a shaman, however only the shaman can enter trance and bring back a patient’s soul. The rituals requiring a shaman are performed at night and the ceremonies of prayer and sacrifice are always performed in the day.

Many Tungus tribes recognize two classes of “great” shamans—the shaman and the clan shaman. The independent shaman acquires power and training directly from the spirit world. The clan shaman acquires power through heredity, usually transmitted from grandfather to grandson at the former’s death.

Among the Manchu the grandson succeeds only if there is no son, however in other tribes the powers must go to the grandson because the son is busy taking care of his father’s needs. A problem arises when there is no one in the shaman’s family to take on and maintain the relationship with the shaman’s helping spirits. In this case a stranger is called in so that the spirits will be cared for and will not pose a problem for the living.

**Characteristics of Trance**
The ecstatic trance state plays a great part in Tungus shamanism. Dancing, drumming, and singing are the methods most often employed to induce trance. The shaman begins his or her trance induction with a prayer to the helping spirits who are the source of his or her shamanic powers. In the prayer the shaman humbly speaks of his human weakness, but that the helping spirit is all-powerful and nothing can resist it.

The shaman begins to drum and dances nine times around the fire, then addresses his helping spirit further in a song. For example the shaman cries out in song to the Great Thunderbird, “Stretch out thine iron wings (and come to me).”

The shaman continues to sing, drum, and dance. As the shaman begins to enter trance he or she becomes “light” and leaps high into the air in a costume that may weigh as much as sixty-five pounds. As the shaman moves more deeply into trance, the drum is handed to the assistant who drums while the shaman resumes dancing until he or she falls to the ground in full trance.

The ability to communicate with the audience as well as the spirits is a characteristic of the shamanism of the Tungus. While in soul flight the shaman answers questions from the audience and narrates every twist and turn of the adventure of his journey in the spirit world. This interaction between the shaman and the audience is essential. The audience sings, supporting the shaman’s trance and clarifying the way
home while the shaman's narration allows the audience to connect with the spirit realm through the story.

The Call
Traditionally the spirit of a dead shaman appears in a dream and instructs the dreamer to wake and succeed the shaman. That spirit often takes the dreamer's soul into the spirit world, initiating a spiritual crisis. The candidate wakes and manifests symptoms of an unexplained illness and/or temporary madness. During this period the candidate's soul is being challenged and tested in the spirit world. For those whose souls emerge sane from the terrifying death and rebirth at the core of this initiatory crisis, training will follow.

This period of training takes place largely in the spirit world. However, the candidate also learns techniques for attracting and dealing with the spirits and rituals for offering appropriate sacrifices from an initiated shaman who is recognized by the community. When the novice is ready he or she is initiated or consecrated in a ritual recognized as a shaman by the whole community.

In the majority of cases the spontaneous call from the spirit world occurs at maturity. However, when the first ecstatic experience occurs in childhood, the child is brought up as if he or she will become a shaman. However, if no subsequent ecstatic experience occurs, the clan will redirect the young person on another path.

There are times when a young candidate's behavior determines the need for training now and hastens the recognition by elder shamans and the community. When the candidate's response to the initial contact by spirit is strong and the candidate becomes possessed by his or her helping spirit, he or she may act as if mad. For example, Tungus candidates were reported to have run away into the mountains for seven to ten days, where they lived and fed their helping spirit.

When the candidate returns to the village dirty, bleeding, and disheveled, he or she is still possessed. An elder shaman is called on to ask questions of the possessing spirit. The questions are designed to anger the spirit and push it to clarify the initiated shaman who is to offer the appropriate sacrifices to the spirits and prepare the ceremony of initiation and consecration so that the candidate can gain control of his or her trance state and learn to use it to perform as a shaman.

The Tungus must have a working relationship with several different types of spirits to be recognized as a shaman. The relationship with these spirits and the trance states necessary to work with them are mastered over time. Different types of spirits help the shaman to accomplish different things: protection, divination, curing, etc. Traditionally, there was a minimum number of spirits the shaman needed to have in his or her association to be considered a "real shaman."

To become a "great shaman" an individual shaman needed to be able to do more than acquire spirits and perform the rituals of past shamans. A great shaman was one who could innovate new methods with the assistance of new spirits. Great shamans were also able to learn to perform alien rituals with alien helping spirits from the shamans of neighboring tribes.

Need for the Shaman
The Tungus shaman is called on for curing, soul retrieval, psychopomp, conveying souls of sacrificed animals to the spirit world (psychopomp of animal souls), maintaining balance between the human and spirit world through ritual, and divination for locating game and the rituals necessary to assure abundant game.

The shaman is called when disease, misfortune, or sterility threaten the clan. The shaman must diagnose the cause of the disharmony and the remedy necessary to bring healing and balance to the situation. The shaman looks to ensure that the spiritual equilibrium of the entire society is maintained through
appropriate ritual and correct ceremonial sacrifice. The annual sacrifice offered by the shaman to his or her helping spirits is also an important spiritual event for the entire tribe.

**Divination**

Divination is often an act of “little shamanism” during which the shaman invokes the helping spirit within his or her body and asks the pertinent questions. Relative to a series of troubles, illnesses, or misfortunes the shaman divines the cause of the imbalance: spirits, souls of the dead remaining in the earthly realm, or ancestral souls, and the specific ritual and/or sacrifice necessary to restore balance. The shaman and the community then perform the ritual, during which the shaman often journeys into the spirit world to complete the resolution.

**Healing**

Healing rituals often require descent into the Lowerworld. These rituals are called örgiski, literally “in the direction of örgi” or the lower regions. An örgiski is performed to conveyed a sacrifice to the ancestor spirits or to the spirits in the Land of the Dead, to search for a lost soul and retrieve it for the patient, or to escort omi who are reluctant to leave the earthly realms into the Land of the Dead.

Long ago journeys to the Lowerworld were common, though full of risks and dangers. The shamans of that time are believed to have been more powerful than their contemporary counterparts. Today the ritual is not common; few shamans have the power to brave the dangers encountered in a descent into the Lowerworld.

**Lowerworld Journey for Divination**

The shaman’s power objects are assembled in preparation for the örgiski. They include: a small raft the shaman will use to cross the sea, a lance for breaking through rocks, small objects representing two bears and two boars who help the shaman by holding up the boat in case of shipwreck or opening a path through the dense forest, four small fish who swim ahead of the boat, an image of the shaman’s helping spirit who will carry the sacrifice, and various instruments for purification.

On the evening of the örgiski the shaman puts on his or her costume, invoking a primary source of shaman power. The shaman then drums, chants, and invokes the spirits of Fire, Mother Earth, and the Ancestors, making a sacrificial offering to all three. The shaman smudges with a cleansing smoke and performs a divination. The drumstick is tossed in the air and the landing position is read to determine whether or not the spirits have accepted the sacrifices and joined the shaman in the ritual.

The second part of the örgiski begins with the central sacrifice, usually of a reindeer. The shaman’s power objects are daubed with sacrificial blood and the meat is taken away and prepared for later. Poles are brought and laced with string that connects the poles to the power objects and to the platform outside. This cord is the “road” for the spirits to follow to enter the ritual. The shaman then begins drumming, singing, and dancing in earnest until he or she falls to the ground in trance.

The shaman’s body is now inhabited by the helping spirit who will answer questions while his or her soul is journeying in the spirit world. If the shaman does not rise from the floor by the force of embodied spirit, he or she is sprinkled with blood three times. The spirit then speaks through the shaman in a high voice, answering the questions sung by two or three mediators.

When the shaman’s soul returns from his or her task journeying in the spirit world everyone in the audience rejoices. This part of the ritual may last up to two hours. Everyone pauses for a few hours waiting for dawn at which time the örgiski is completed with a third ritual portion, similar to the first portion. The spirits who were called in the beginning are now thanked and the ritual space is closed.
Lowerworld Journey for Soul Retrieval

A soul retrieval healing also has three sections. In the first, the divination, the shaman must determine which aspect of the soul has left the body, why, and where it is now located in the spirit world. Then the örgiski begins as the shaman in costume drums, chants, and dances. The sacrifices are made to the séven (spirits) so that they will help the shaman’s soul on its journey into the lowerworld. The shaman takes the spirit of the sacrificed animal into his or her body by drinking its blood and eating its flesh.

The shaman drums, chants, and dances and enters trance. Throughout the journey the shaman sings a narration of every step of the journey. The audience follows the journey step by step, reinforcing the shaman’s power and trance through song. Having secured the lost soul, the shaman returns it, often in the form of a bird, to the patient’s body. The last part of the ceremony, giving gratitude to the helping spirits, is performed one to three days later when the recovery of the patient is assured.

Some shamans also perform a soul calling healing ritual in the case of soul loss. In this form of soul retrieval the lost soul or souls are called back to the body through song. The traditional words of the song, its rhythm, and the shaman’s gestures create a bridge into the spirit world that guides the soul back into the body of the patient.

Healings Without the Journey

The shaman does not always need to enter into a journeying trance to effect a cure. However, the shaman must always perform a divination to determine the true source of the trouble and the appropriate remedy. To identify the cause of the trouble, the shaman embodies his helping spirit to divine the necessary information.

If the cause of illness in an omi it must be driven away, offered a sacrifice to placate it, or, if it has entered the body of the patient, it must be exorcised with the assistance of the helping spirits. When the cause of the illness is a different type of spirit, it may require that a small temple (m’ao) be built for it and sacrifices offered to it regularly in return for a cure.

Costume

In general a shaman’s power and ability to cure was increased by acquiring helping spirits and creating new paraphernalia to house much of the acquired spirit power. Principal elements of the shaman’s paraphernalia include the costume, cap or headdress, brass mirror, staff, drum, objects that serve as placings (for spirits), and an assortment of other objects and musical instruments.

The costume can be a single element or the full complement of caftan, apron, skirt, trousers, and shoes. Two kinds of helping spirits dominate the costumes of shamans among the Tungus: the duck and reindeer, which includes iron reindeer antlers on the cap. Kulín or snakes hang from the back of the caftan in ribbons a foot wide and three feet long. In addition the shaman carries a staff that is carved at one end into the head of a horse. Both the snakes and the horse embody spirits that assist the shaman in his or her lowerworld journeys.

The costume is hung with iron objects, which the Tungus interpret as the moon, sun, and stars. The symbolism of these iron power objects is believed to have been borrowed from the Yakut. The snakes and the horse are believed to have been borrowed from the Buryat.

Paraphernalia

The shaman cannot perform without his or her paraphernalia, which embodies much of his or her acquired spirit power. Paraphernalia, though indispensable, was variable. The indispensable tools are the toli, a brass mirror with pendants used as a place to hold spirits, and the drum used to enter trance. At its most complex a shaman’s
paraphernalia may include not only a variety of power objects, but several different costumes and several drums. See also Buryat (Buriat); death and dying; embodiment; multiple soul belief; the call.


Tunraq
The tunraq is the most powerful class of torngraq or helping spirit among the Labrador Eskimo. The turnaq are believed to be able to locate game directly, not simply communicate to the shaman where the game is. Stories are told of master shamans who could send their tunraq into the open sea to kill a seal and bring it ashore.


Tupilak
Tupilak is the Inuit term for a helping spirit created by a shaman or sorcerer. Also tuplek, tupilaq, tornrak, and tupilat (pl) in various Eskimo cultures. The tumilak is created from a part of an animal, like the head or a strip of skin, and then empowered with spirit by a shaman or sorcerer. A tupilak can be made from various parts of animals and assume the shape of any of its components once empowered. Some tupilak are carved from bone, tusk, or wood.

A shaman uses a tupilak like other helping spirits in rituals of healing or divination. A shaman’s tupilak can be sent into the body of a patient to aid in drawing the illness from the body or sent into the future to gather information. When sorcery affects the patient, the shaman may wage battle directly with a sorcerer’s tupilak though they are dangerous and hard to kill.

A sorcerer’s tupilak is made from bones, blood, skin, sinew, or hair and often contains something taken from the intended victim. Particularly powerful tupilak are made with human bones taken from graves. The tupilak can be empowered and animated by spirit in many ways. Sorcerers commonly use ritual, breath, song, or suckled semen to give the tupilak life.

The tupilak does not always do the harm directly, but is used to set a malevolent end in motion. For example, an Alaskan Eskimo practitioner created a tupilak in the image of the intended victim and then drowned it. The victim was drowned in the next whaling season, dragged under water by a harpoon line.

It is possible, as with all hexing, for the tupilak to turn on its creator if mistakes are made in its creation or empowerment. Furthermore, if the sorcerer underestimates the power of the victim’s spirit protection or personal protective amulets the tupilak will be repelled. It will return to the sorcerer to carry out the malevolence for which it was created on its creator. Sorcerers are particularly vulnerable to their own magic. See also culture and ilsineq.


Tutelary Spirits
Tutelary spirits are a type of animal spirit who represents the identity of the
shaman in the spirit world and who coordinate the efforts of the helping spirits if more than one is necessary for the healing. Some scholars designate the tutelary spirit as the shaman’s teacher while the other animal spirits function as the shaman’s helpers.

Animal spirits are helping spirits in animal form who are able to transcend the abilities of that animal in its ordinary existence, e.g., anacondas flying without wings or fish swimming through mountains. They express their power through their extraordinary abilities. Though common in the shamanism of peoples of the northern Eurasian continent, not all cultures recognize the role of the tutelary spirit.

Tuuhikya
Hopi shamans who heal but do not belong to either Yayatü or Poswimkya, the two Hopi curing societies. Tuuhikya acquired tupilak, power from animal helping spirits, which enable them to enter trance for visions and diagnosis and to perform sucking and other forms of healing rituals. See also Poswimkya Society; ritual; Yayatü Society.

Tuuhisa
(Also: duhisa) The supernatural power received from a helping spirit, particularly an animal spirit. The Hopi differentiate between the power of tuuhisa, wielded by the tuuhikya (shaman), and the power of powa, wielded by the priests of Hopi ceremonial societies. This distinction is not based on the nature or strength of the power, but on who is wielding it. Tuuhisa is neutral; it can be used to benevolent or malevolent ends.

Historically the Hopi came to devalue the trance states and visions of the tuuhikya healers. Though these shamans continued to be called upon frequently, they were no longer given the respect now paid the priests of the ceremonial societies who also had powers for healing.


Tuva
A small mountain and steppe republic lying north of Mongolia in the Russian Federation. The Tuvan people are known for having maintained their indigenous traditions of shamanism and music relatively intact until early in the 20th century. Rural Tuvans remain connected to Nature and the spirits of their land as their ancestors before them. They continue the traditions of maintaining awareness of and acting in harmony with the spirits.

In the mid-1900s shamanism was severely persecuted in the USSR. Many shamans were imprisoned while others who continued to practice in secret were stripped of their costumes and drums, essential tools in their work, by authorities who burnt them or by family members who hid them or turned them over to museums. In contrast, contemporary Tuvan shamans work publicly for the first time in decades. In the capitol city of Kyzyl, the Association of Tuvan Shamans has set up a clinic where shamans diagnose and heal the physical and mental illnesses of their clients.

Spirits of Place
The spirits of Nature are honored as a regular part of every day, particularly spirits of the land. Offerings, songs, and
music are given to mountain passes, forks in the road, burial sites, petroglyph sites, and sacred caves. The shaman honors the spirits of places as a matter of course to cultivate strong relationships, which the shaman can then draw on in her work. Through drumming the shaman amplifies the natural energies of these places which serve to stimulate the patient and the patient’s healing.

Offerings
Typical Tuvan offerings include food, strips of cloth tied to trees, tobacco, money, and/or music. Music can be used by the shaman to convey greetings, apologies, gratitude, and to make special requests. Thus music is used as the vehicle for prayer.

Ritual
The kamlanie (shamanic ritual) is based on the understanding that while in trance, humans are able to connect with the spirit world through their senses. The primary sensory stimulation is auditory, invoked by music, song, chanting, the drum and other instruments. Directly related to the music is dance which accompanies the playing of the drum and stimulates kinetic body awareness. The shaman’s eyes are covered to stimulate inner vision. Shamans ingest offerings to the spirits of food and vodka that stimulate inner taste. Incense is burned, usually artysh (juniper), to stimulate an inner sense of smell, which aids the shaman in tracking lost souls.

Central to the kamlanie is the shaman’s chanting and drumming; the music’s function is threefold. First the chanting and drumming create the bridge to the spirit world while simultaneously opening the awareness of all the participants to that bridge. The shaman uses the music to call specific helping spirits into the place of the ritual for overall protection and into relationship with the shaman specifically to help in the tasks to be accomplished in that kamlanie. Finally, the shaman used the drumming in particular to convey them on their journey into the spirit world.

In the past the shaman narrated their entire journey and conversation with the spirits, providing a spontaneous story whose telling served to connect the participants with each stage of the healing. With skilled shamans the narration included a translation of both sides of the conversation with the spirits.

The shaman's narration during the kamlanie often involves the calls of wild or domestic animals and Nature sounds like rustling reeds or the winds across the steppe. The shaman's ability to utter these sounds was seen as evidence of the shaman's spirit transformation into that animal. Some sounds had cultural meaning in addition to being the voice of spirit. For example the sound of the wolves or owls was used to frighten, the magpie to flush out liars, the raven to curse an enemy, and power was expressed through the sound of the bull or the bear.

The Journey
Tuvan shamans work in trance states in which they are aware of sending their souls out of their bodies, generally considered “soul flight.” However, where they go in that trance and the depth of the trance are determined by the diagnosis of the patient’s need. The shaman may enter the spirit world alone or accompanied by helping spirits, they may fly up into the air or down into the earth, or they may send helping spirits out alone to execute the diagnosis.

Music
Tuvan people used music to connect with the spiritual and physical aspects of nature involved in the work and the relaxation of their day. Traditionally their music was a way of relating with Nature, a spiritual practice for conversing with the spirits of the place. Their music was spontaneous, rarely the same twice, and never intended for concerts or human entertainment. Today, the traditional links have been lost through disuse and misuse. A song
sung with nostalgia for a native place does not function in the same way as music that creates a bridge to that place, allowing the singer and those listening to converse with the spirits of that place.

Tuvans believe that the spirits of Nature produce their own sound world and that humans communicate with those spirits through that world. Shamans are particularly adept at receiving and interpreting Nature's sound world and in using sound to engage that world in healing endeavors. This two-way "conversation," expressed through shamanic music, poetry, and narration, is improvised and/or arises spontaneously from the specific time, place, and purpose. They are never repeated as with healing songs in other cultures.

The music improvised for healing is created by the shaman in response to and interaction with the subtle energies of the place, the spirits present, and the souls of the people present, including the shaman. Repetition or recordings of the music created in one shamanic healing session would not be effective in another healing session because it would not fit the new situation.

Tuvan shamans use music and sound for diagnosis and healing. Sound is also used as to bridge ordinary and non-ordinary reality in the kamlanie (shamanic ritual). In the kamlanie sound becomes a tunnel, a bridge, or wings to fly in the spirit world. The sound of the drum is the most powerful tool of all the sounds used by the shaman.

Chants
Shamans sing improvised, poetic prayer chants, or algys Hö, while they are working. Singing algys Hö is the means by which the shaman calls on and communicates with the helping spirits. They are fundamental to the shaman's work.

Singing
In the past shamans used three different kinds of overtone singing or "throat singing" to converse with the spirits in this spirit language. In overtone singing the performer sings two or more pitches simultaneously. All three styles are believed to have been inspired by the sounds of Nature.

Khöömei style produces two pitches and was inspired by the sound of wind passing through the rocks and cliff faces. Kargyraa style produces three pitches and was inspired by the sound of a mother camel who has lost her young. Sygyt style produces a whistling sound whose source of inspiration is unknown. These three styles, along with the calls of indigenous animals, are aspects of the spirit language perceived by Tuvan shamans.

Instruments
The shaman uses music to gather and focus the spiritual energy found in Nature and to connect and communicate with specific helping spirits. Because music serves this vital role in Tuvan shamanism, various instruments are used by shamans, though not exclusively. Generally speaking, if a shaman is to use an instrument in their work, they are shown how to make (or where to find) that specific instrument. When made new, the instrument is not ready to play until it has been introduced to the spirits. The shaman then learns to play the instrument and the spirits direct the shaman in mastering the use of the instrument as part of the shaman's practice.

Drum
The shaman's drum, the düngür, is again becoming the most important bridge to the spirit world now that the use of the drum and shamanic practices are no longer persecuted. The drum is fondly referred to as the horse who conveys the shaman on her journey.

The shaman produces a broad range of dynamic overtones on the düngür, though the trance-inducing rhythm itself is steady and monotonous. The natural range of drumhead's overtones are enhanced by metal pieces hung on
the inside of the drum and off the back of the drumstick.

It is a traditional Siberian belief that the life of the drum and that of the shaman are inseparable. It is believed that if the drum were destroyed the shaman would die, and if the shaman were to die that the drumhead must be ritually slit, or killed. It is said that after a shaman's death, the shaman's drum was heard beating a farewell on its own. The drum, like power objects used by shamans the world over, contains energy (power) that only the shaman has cultivated—the ability to use responsibly. With the shaman gone it is safest for all concerned to release the energy back to the spirit world from whence it came.

The Temir-Khomus

The temir-khому (jaw harp) was used in the past by Tuvan shamans in the kamlanie, though it is uncommon today. The different melodies and rhythms produced with this resonant instrument were used to call specific spirits, to heal specific parts of the body, and to communicate ideas.

Paraphernalia

The mirror is the first and most important tool for a Tuvan shaman to acquire and learn to use. The drum is the next and as the shaman's strength grows the costume will be acquired.

Shamans explain that the küźüngü (bronze mirror) is used in diagnosis to reflect a particular type of energy out into Nature. The shaman interprets this energy as it bounces back from the mountains and rocks. The küźüngü is a tool or power object that can be used in healing as well as diagnosis. Smaller mirrors are attached to the shaman's costume.

Costume

The Tuvan shaman's robe is characterized by the vast array of symbolic and ceremonial objects attached to it. The shaman also wears a feather headdress and often a veil that covers the eyes while the shaman is in trance. The shaman's costume is so covered with small objects of metal, wood, bone, and leather that it functions as another musical instrument. Each of these objects, and many of fabric as well, are attached to the garment with the intention that they move as the shaman moves so she resonates with sound. For the trained shaman these sounds can provide additional information in diagnosis and healing.

Gender

It is probable that the first Tuvan shamans were women. However, today women are quite restricted in some parts of Tuvan and Khakass society. Female shamans function as do the male shamans, participating in rituals that are otherwise forbidden to ordinary women. Female shamans work with the same power objects, playing the drum and temir-khому and wearing costumes covered with sound-makers. Some female shamans even sing khöömei, a skill normally reserved for men. See also Siberia.


Twasа

Twasа is a Zulu apprentice who is in training to become a sangoma (shaman). The twasa has experienced Ukutwasа, a spontaneous call from the spirit world and been accepted by a baba (teacher). The training of the future sangoma involves both technical and personal development.

A sangoma works with the Amadlozi, or ancestral spirits, who are ever present. However an altered state of consciousness is usually necessary to communicate with them directly. The twasa must learn to enter the necessary altered states via drumming, dancing, chanting, fasting, and meditation.

In an altered state the twasa is able to merge his or her soul with the greater powers of the Amadlozi and the energies
of the unseen world. After merging, the twasa learns to work in that state to perform **divination**, **diagnosis**, and **healing** rituals for the community.

**Training**
The *sangoma*'s training is a highly ordered, strictly regulated, process. A *twasa* must work his or her way up through twelve stages, or ranks. In each stage he or she learns to work with one of twelve “vessels” or types of spirits. Few succeed in mastering the twelfth and final stage.

The *twasa* learns the tribal and community history and mythology, as well as the esoteric skills necessary to perform divination and diagnosis. The *twasa*'s apprenticeship also involves a strict regime of personal healing and **purification**. The discipline is very strict and total abstinence from sex is mandatory. Certain foods are also forbidden.

**Divination**
Each *twasa* must create his or her own *dingaka* set for divination. The original four *dingaka* pieces come from the bones of animals sacrificed for the feasts which mark the *twasa*'s completion of an area of training. After the feast the *twasa* searches through the *fire* for an unbroken bone. The bones are treated ceremonially, cleaned, and carved with *sacred* symbols.

When the *twasa* has collected and decorated four *dingaka*, he or she can begin training in divination and diagnosis. The *twasa* learns to diagnose **illness**, witchcraft, **sorcery**, and the presence of malevolent spirits. Through the *dingaka* the twasa learns to communicate with his or her *ancestors* for guidance in conducting ceremonies, creating and leading healing **rituals**, retrieving lost soul parts, embodying spirits, exorcising *tokoloshe* (ghosts), counteracting *tagati* (hexes), controlling the **weather**, and foretelling the future.

**A Typical Day in Training**
The *twasa* rises before sunrise. He or she beats four liters of ground roots and herbs to a froth in a clay pot. The mixture is consumed and regurgitated several times to cleanse the *twasa*'s system physically and to open up the head spiritually. This **cleansing** will make the *twasa* more sensitive and his or her skills of divination sharper and more accurate.

The *twasa* washes in an ice-cold stream, regardless of season, and returns home with his or her pot, now filled with a second herbal mixture. The mixture is boiled first to show that the **helping spirits** are present. Then the *twasa* bathes his or her naked body in the steam of the boiling pot captured under a blanket. After submerging again in the stream, the *twasa* is ready to meet the *baba*.

A formal greeting of praise is offered to the *baba*. The *twasa* begins to purge inner struggles by confessing negative thoughts, longings, hubris, or doubt. The *baba* may assign extra duties, hard work, or periods of sustained dancing or drumming to assist the *twasa* in his or her inner purification. These personal assignments must be completed in addition to lessons, the normal chores for a tribal member of the same age and **gender**, and assisting the *baba* with patients.

The regime, restrictions, and responsibilities of the *twasa*'s apprenticeship may go on for years. Successful completion of the apprenticeship is honored in the *ukukishwa* ceremony wherein the *twasa* is recognized in the community as a *sangoma*. See also **apprentice**; **chant**; **dingaka bones**; **sacrifice**.

Mutwa, Credo Vusa'mazulu. *Song of the Stars: The Lore of a Zulu Shaman*.

**Two Spirit**
*Two Spirit*, a Native American term, refers to **gender-variant** men and women. These men and women fulfill traditional social roles different from each other and from the traditional
gender roles of men and women. Two Spirit men and women are best understood as additional genders.

One type of Two Spirit male is the *berdache* (*berdach*). Gender studies scholars basically agree that the *berdache* expresses an alternative or intermediate gender, accepted by their societies as being distinct from both women and men. He is not necessarily a homosexual, transsexual, a transvestite, or a hermaphrodite. The *berdache* must complete rituals, training, and initiation ceremonies to be recognized in his alternate gender status.

Transformed and soft shamans are also Two Spirit men. These shamans must complete rituals, training, and initiation to be recognized as shamans in their communities. Two Spirit also refers to homosexual men. Two Spirit men expressed same-sex sexuality, sensuality, or eroticism, often involving long-term marriage to a traditionally masculine male.

The Two Spirit female is a woman who adopts a hunter-warrior role. Female gender-variance has a separate and distinct status of its own, distinct from the traditionally feminine woman and from the *berdache*. The Two Spirit roles of women relate to traditional masculine endeavors, like hunting and killing, not traditional feminine endeavors, like spiritual leadership and healing. Two Spirit women expressed same-sex sexuality, sensuality, or eroticism, often involving marriage to a traditionally feminine woman.

Traditional American Indian cultures believes the highest power is the Great Mystery. It is natural then that they held mysteries sacred. Much of what they didn't understand, like the Two Spirits, was considered sacred. By incorporating the Two Spirit into their societies, they can successfully use the different skills, insights, and spiritual powers of these alternate genders.

These Native American cultures supported the belief that a person's Two Spirit nature is much more internal to the basic character of the individual than it is simply the result of socialization. They believed that gender roles have to do with more than simply conforming to morphological sex or standard sex roles. Two Spirit alternative-gender roles conform to the requirements of a custom into which their culture tells them they fit. This cultural institution confirms an acceptance and value for what Two Spirits are. See also domain; gender-variant male; transformed shaman.


Udesi Burkhan
The birch is the Buryat Tree of Life. It is known as *udesi burkhan*, “the guardian of the door” to the Upperworld. The birch is also called *sita*, meaning “ladder,” and *geskigür* meaning “step.” The birch plays a central role in the initiation of the Buryat shaman. See also Buryat (Buriat).


Udoyan
The feminine form of shaman in Yakut language. *Ojuna* is the masculine. See also Yakut.

Ukutwasa
A Zulu *sangoma* is called to his or her profession by ancestral spirits. This experience is *Ukutwasa*, which means coming out or emergence. *Ukutwasa* often comes in a dream and manifests as an unexplained illness of the mind and body. During this dream, animals come to the dreamer, usually four lions or leopards and sometimes crocodiles or serpents. The dreamer is pulled apart and devoured by the animals, as in the dismemberment dreams of the initiates of many different cultures.

The strange illness gradually progresses and remains untreatable by standard medicine, herbal remedies, or sacrifices. Characteristics of *Ukutwasa* illness include, but are not limited to, visions, both waking and sleeping, increased ability to see future events or through physical objects, experiences of dismemberment, and a sense of the self (ego) shifting into something different.

When the individual recovers from *Ukutwasa* he or she is recognized as a *twasa* (apprentice) and begins training with a *baba* (teacher).

The Zulu believe that patterns of dreaming were laid down by our Ancestors in the beginning times. These dreams contain messages from the Ancestors that still affect the lives of humans today. Some of these dreams make us crazy and some make us wise. It is one of these ancient dreams that a person experiences when they experience *Ukutwasa*. See also Africa; apprentice; sanusi; the call.


Umbanda
Umbanda is a contemporary, Brazil-born spiritist movement that incorporates beliefs and practices of a mixture of traditional African rituals, Catholic saints, European Spiritist teachings, and practices of the indigenous shamanic population. Umbanda's rapid growth in the late 20th century is attributed to a fertile socio-cultural context, trance and possession being very common in Brazil and Argentina, as well as the failure of the medical system and the Catholic church to meet the needs of the larger population.

Umbanda adepts, called *babaloo*, when drawing from the African traditions, or *mãe de santo*, when drawing from the Brazilian traditions, use trance states to achieve direct contact with spirit entities. The *mediumship* trances are induced in a ritual context usually accompanied by polyrhythmic drumming, singing, hand clapping, and sometimes bell ringing. The mediums dance and spin and concentrate on having their spirit come. In private consultations the mediums enter trance
by quietly concentrating on their spirits coming.

Recognized trance states in the Umbanda movement are unconscious, semiconscious, and conscious, referring to the medium's ability to remember events while in trance. Participants consult the mediums on a wide range of issues affecting their lives, livelihood, and health. Individuals who decide to develop mediumship skills receive special training. However not all of these people will become adepts over time.

Umbanda appeals to Brazilians of African, indigenous, and European descent and is oriented toward the middle class. The consultation process with mediums is more useful for contemporary people living in a high rate of change than those found in the older spiritist religions. Over all, the main purpose of Umbanda traditions is to work for the greater good of all humanity—to practice charity, hope, and faith, and to heal spiritually, mentally, and physically. See also Africa.


**Ungarinyin**

Aboriginal people living around Walcott Inlet of North Kimberley in the north of western Australia. Shamans of this regions are call banman or bainman. The banman’s power, or miriru, comes directly from Unggud, the dreamtime. When his training is complete the banman is believed to have the powers and abilities of Dreamtime heroes.

*Initiation*

A banman is said to be chosen by Unggud. The initiate has a dream that Unggur, the great serpent of the Dreamtime, has killed him in a particular water place. After the boy’s initiation into manhood, he is taken by a shaman teacher to that water place seen in his dream.

There Unggur, seen by teacher and student, rises out of the water (or the ground in some cases) with arms, hands, and a feathered crown. The initiate falls into trance and is taken by Unggur into subterranean caves where Unggur gives the initiate a new brain, fills his body with quartz crystals, and explains his future duties as a banman.

When the candidate wakes from his trance he is ready to begin training with his teacher. Instructions in controlling the gifts of power from Unggur and the skill of the craft continue for many months and often for several years. The new banman learns to see and understand things in the invisible world. He learns to see past and future events and events happening at a distance or in other worlds, to read other people’s thoughts and recognize their secret worries, to move crystals from his body to cure illnesses with these magical stones, to send this yayari (helping spirits) from his body to gather information or to transform into that form and travel himself. Finally he must learn to enter trance at will and travel in the realms of the Dreamtime.

*Power Displays*

When the banman’s training is complete he gives a public display of power. He and his teacher return to the water place of his initiation, this time with others of the community. They both dive in and rise to the surface riding on the back of Unggur. Spectators see only the two banman rising from the water, surrounded by huge waves stirred by the giant body of Unggur. Unggur then throws quartz crystals onto the land, which are gathered by the spectators and kept as cherished gifts from Unggur and living symbols of the Unggud. In this way the new banman establishes his power and prestige within the community.

**Unio Mystica**

*Unio mystica* is the experience of feeling the ecstatic truth of being absolutely and totally inseparable from every other aspect of creation. It is the experience of union with the Divine.

In this experience the human identity expands to include the All. The individual experiences a shift of consciousness so that he or she is experientially aware of his or her true energetic connection to all things in the *Kosmos*.

This realization of Oneness with All Things is the result of a developmental and evolutionary process of growth and transcendence. It is the existential unity, or *sama–dhi* of Hindu practices, the enlightenment of Eastern practices, and the illumination of Western spiritual practices. It is also the result of the mastery of the techniques of ecstasy by the shaman. See also *ecstasy* and *evolution*.


**Upperworld**

From a shamanic perspective anything and everything has, or is, *spirit*. The spirit aspect of everything, which is normally invisible, is experienced directly by the *shaman* through his or her senses while in an ecstatic *altered state of consciousness*.

This invisible world, or *non-ordinary reality*, is experienced by the shamans of many different *cultures* to have three realms: the *Upperworld*, *Middleworld*, and *Lowerworld*. These realms are non-linear, with limitless *space* and without *time*.

The Upperworld is accessed from things that exist physically in *ordinary reality* that go up, like the branches of *trees*, mountaintops, cliffs, and rainbows, and travels upward on smoke from *incense* or a *fire*, as well as things seen in ecstatic visions, like *ladders* ascending into the *sky* or flying. The shaman’s spirit engages one of these openings through the sky and travels upward until he or she reaches the intended level of the Upperworld.

*Upperworld journeys* are often particularly ecstatic, which means that the shaman is merged or connected to his or her helping spirit to gain access to the Upperworld. Once there, the shaman continues to journey through the Upperworld with his or her *helping spirits*.

The Upperworld is inhabited by helping spirits in humanoid form (gods and goddesses), some spirits of Nature or *elements*, some *power animals*, and formless sprits. The shaman enters this realm to retrieve information, helping spirits, and lost *souls*. The shaman works in a journeying *trance* state, which is often ecstatic, to maintain a presence in the Upperworld.


**Urukáme**

A *crystal* containing the *soul* of a deceased family member. The *mara’akame* (Huichol shaman) performs a *ritual* to capture the soul of the deceased and place it into a rock crystal so that it will remain present with the family. The *urukáme* lives in the family
shrine on the altar and is brought out to participate in all rituals.

Utugun
The feminine form of shaman in Altaic language. Kam is the masculine. See also Altai.

Uwishin
Uwishin, meaning “someone who knows all the secrets,” is the Shuar word for shaman. Uwishin are healers and sorcerers who work, to benevolent and malevolent ends, respectively, with medicinal plants, tsentsak (magical darts), and spirit powers accessed by drinking natem (ayahuasca). See also sorcery.
Vegetalista

Vegetalista is a Spanish word used to refer to shamans who work with plants for medicinal and hallucinogenic purposes. Knowledge of how to work with the plants and the necessary icares (songs) to invoke their power to heal comes directly from the spirits of the plants. The real power of the plants to heal is in the icares. This is demonstrated in the vegetalista’s ability to cure illness with the correct icares without ever administering the plant physically.

Vegetalistas are proficient in the use of a large variety of plants and preparations for medicinal purposes and they tend to specialize in a particular plant hallucinogen as their primary teacher and means of communication with the spirit realm. The most common vegetalistas are ayahuasceros who work with ayahuasca. Other specialists include: tabaqueros who work with tobacco, toéros who work with Brugmansia, catalhueros who work with the resin of catalhua (Hura crepitans), paleros who work with the bark of certain large trees, and perfumeros who work with fragrant plant essences.

During training, a master shaman protects the initiate from attack by sorcerers, malevolent spirits, and natural phenomena until the initiate learns to protect himself. For example, initiates learn to use helping spirits, tingunas (electromagnetic emanations), and arkana (defensive powers) to protect themselves from common attacks of sorcery, like virote (magical darts), marupa (malevolent power animals), and huaní (the glass arrows shot from a magical bow).

The master shaman also facilitates the transmission of information from the spirit teacher during training. There are diets, meditations, and taboos the initiate must observe to create the conditions under which transmission is possible. The initiate learns to draw on the three great powers of the spirit world: the sky, forests, and underwater realms, for healing powers and guidance. In addition to the plants, the initiate must also master the icares and the ability to work with magical phlegm and magical darts. See also Brugmansia aurea; medicine; plant diets.


Vehicle

A trance state “vehicle” is anything that alters human consciousness enough to support the entry into and stabilization of an altered state while remaining constant to allow the individual to find his or her way back to ordinary consciousness at the end of the trance.

Shamans use a variety of techniques to enter trance, which work by disrupting the stabilization of the baseline of the shaman’s ordinary consciousness. These include the monotonous rhythm of drums, rattles, other percussion instruments, like click sticks or hollow logs, singing, chanting, a stringed bow, digerido, bells or Tibetan bowls, dancing, and ingesting psychotropic plants.

Ordinary consciousness is a relatively stable and habitual pattern. When the stabilization of that baseline state of consciousness is disrupted, a radical rerouting can occur. This allows a transition from the patterned state (ordinary consciousness) into an unpatterned, chaotic state. If re-patterning forces are able to establish a new pattern, an altered state of consciousness stabilizes. It is the ability to do just this, to control the destabilization and...
restabilization of states of consciousness that makes the shaman a master of altered states.

When this process is well learned, the shaman is able to destabilize his or her baseline state of consciousness, get to the desired, discrete, altered state of consciousness, to stabilize that desired altered state, and to destabilize that desired altered state and return to his or her baseline state of consciousness. The intentional control of this entire process for a variety of altered states is mastery of trance. See also chant; plant hallucinogens; sonic driving.


Viho

Viho is a hallucinogenic snuff used by the Tukano of the Colombian Amazon. The Tukano explain that viho was given to them by the Sun’s daughter, who took it from her father’s semen during his incestuous relations with her. See also epená; plant hallucinogens; Semen of the Sun.

Virola Snuff

Virola snuff is a hallucinogenic snuff used widely by the payé (shaman) and adult males of the Tukanoan and Witotoan language families in western Amazonia. The snuff, or epená, is made from the inner bark of several species of Virola, a genus of the nutmeg family, which is native to the tropical forests of Central and South America. Virola snuff enables the payé to summon the hekura, the little men of the jungle, who enter the payé’s breast and give him the powers to cure illness, combat sorcery, and see into the future. See also plant hallucinogens.

Vision

Visions are messages of wisdom and guidance from the spirit world. They are distinguished from imaginings, fantasy, and most sleeping dreams. Visions must come to you, not out of you.

Visions can come to an individual through any of the five senses as well as kinesthetically through the body. For example, one can hear a vision rather than see it. The defining factor is that the vision comes to the receiver who is aware of its non-ordinary origin from outside of the self.

True visions often require preparation, like meditation and purification, and induction through the use of one or more of the sacred trance technologies. These technologies include, but are not limited to, prolonged isolation, fasting, sleep deprivation, prayer, and physical exertion. It is usually necessary to take solitary time away from the ordinary life patterns of stimuli and response to empty the mind and make it a receptacle for true visions.

Visions are rarely literal and must be interpreted. The images of the vision come from the symbolic language of the receiver. Who the vision is for and what it means is not always apparent or easy to hear. The receiver may need the skills of a shaman, or other culturally designated interpreter, to help unfold the meaning of the images and to lay out a path forward based on the vision. The shaman may also interpret animal or dream language that occurs within visions.

There are images that come to a dreamer while semiconscious or asleep. These are special dreams but not visions. However, they are another means through which the spirit world communicates with the dreamer and, as such, they are interpreted with the care of visions. See also dream incubation; trance; vision quest.
Vision Pit

The vision pit is a grave-shaped hole dug for a form of vision quest. The pit enhances the already pronounced and frightening feeling of dying that precedes the connection with spirit that allows the visions to come.

Tobacco ties are used to mark the pit and flags marking the four directions are planted at the four corners. Then the quester crawls into the pit and is buried to the neck with the head covered or a tarp is spread over the pit and strewn with earth and grass. To pray for visions while buried alive inside the pit is the hardest way to quest. The quester sees, feels, and hears nothing. To stay like this for days, fasting and alone, takes great courage and a profound need for vision. See also hanblecheya.


Vision Quest

The vision quest is a solo journey, usually three to four days, into the wilderness to ask for visions from spirit of wisdom and guidance. Preparation involves a combination of fasting, prayer, meditation, cleansing, or purification. During the quest, the deliberate pursuit of visions is enhanced by the use of sacred trance technologies, including, but not limited to, prolonged chanting, praying, isolation, fasting, sleep deprivation, and performing ritual.

The vision quest is an archetypal spiritual activity found in many cultures and religions. There are as many forms for how to quest as there are cultures of people who need to quest for spiritual guidance. The Inuit of Greenland practiced vigorous vision fasts, retreating for weeks into the remote, icy wilderness. Biblical prophets fasted for revelation in the wilderness, desert, and on mountain-tops. Ancient Celts fasted for three days uninterrupted inside caves or sidhe, chamber mounds, while questing for visions.

There are personal and social reasons for a person to seek power through vision questing. It can take years to prepare for a single vision quest, and the quests themselves involve personal pain and suffering. Even when every aspect of the quest is executed correctly, the visions do not necessarily come.

In North America, native peoples used the vision quest as a means to receive guidance for a variety of life issues. Every boy quested at least once, at initiation, for a vision to determine what kind of life he would lead in manhood. Traditionally, girls quested for their life path in equivalent, but different, rituals in the moon lodge.

Those who respect and understand the power of true visions also fear them. The vision can put you on a path you don't want to follow. For example visions may tell a man that it is his path to become shaman or Two Spirit, both lives demanding challenge and self-sacrifice.

Visions are distinguished from imaginings, fantasy, and most sleeping dreams. Visions must come to you, not out of you. Actually visions can come to an individual through any of the five senses, for example one can hear a vision rather than see it.

To receive a vision on a quest does not make one a shaman; it makes one human. However it is often on a quest that an individual will receive a vision that defines his or her path to become a shaman. The training and initiation of a
shaman is significantly more complex than a single vision quest.

Male and female shamans both use the vision quest to gain power and guidance for personal and professional issues. Usually the shaman reserves the vision quest for very hard healings, issues of life and death, divinations that will impact the whole community, or personal healing and guidance.

Vision quests can also be used as a part of the novice's training. For example, young Nepalese shamans were blindfolded and left overnight to seek visions on precarious platforms perched high in trees known as da suwa, or life trees.

Contemporary scholars explain that the isolation and solitude disrupt the routine patterns of ordinary reality and the expected social structures. The interruption can allow a return to simple human nature (the body) and the innate connection to sacred knowledge (the soul). Fasting and sleep deprivation then trigger physiological responses which induce ecstatic altered states of consciousness. Scholars suggest that the commitment, physical hardship, and ritual self-sacrifice involved in undertaking a vision quest may be vital to opening the connection with spirit and receiving visions of sacred knowledge.

Many shamanic traditions hold the belief that any solitary time that is spent in nature for purposes of reflection and guidance reawakens the individual to his or her own life purpose and to remembering the original medicine that is uniquely his or hers to offer to all creatures. See also chant; Nepal; trance.

Vital Soul
The vital soul is the aspect of the soul that sustains the physical body. It is the sensing soul that remains in the body.

Vodoun
(Also: voudun, voodoo) Vodoun is a spiritual practice of the people of Haiti and areas of North America and South America to which Haitian peoples have migrated. Vodoun, a word from the Fon people of Dahomey (now Benin) in West Africa, means “introspection” and “the unknown.” The name implies a journey into the depths of the unknown in search of mystery or God. Vodoun presents a complex, metaphysical worldview distilled from profound religious ideas that have their roots in Africa.

Vodoun is a system of profound spiritual beliefs about the relationships between man, nature, and the invisible spiritual forces of the universe. It relates the Unknown to the known, finds the order in chaos, and renders the mysterious intelligible for people in their ordinary lives. Vodoun provides an essential bond for the community of people who practice it.

Participants in Vodoun are expected to embody a set of spiritual concepts that prescribe a way of life, a philosophy, and a code of ethics that regulate their communal behavior. For practitioners of Vodoun there is no separation between the sacred and the secular and thoughts, words, and deeds in one realm affect things in the other.

The Vodoun priests and priestesses are called houngan (male) and mambo (female). They function as the “shamans” of the Vodoun society. They practice a complex system of traditional medicine that is both physical and magical. The practice also involves a distinct language, art, music, and the participation in traditional Vodoun rituals and ceremonies.

The loa are “major forces of the Universe” given specific, anthropomorphic characteristics by the culture.

530
Vodoun has evolved into a practice that serves the loa, who are the major forces of the Universe expressed in anthropomorphic characteristics as they are seen by the Vodoun culture. They are the multiple expressions of God. There is a Supreme Force at the apex of the Vodoun pantheon. However, the Haitians interact only with the loa on a daily basis.

The loa are powerful and predictable. If offended or dishonored they can do great harm to humans. However, when served properly, they bring humans good fortune. The relationship between the humans and the loa is interdependent, each bringing to the other something they need and value.

The humans serve the loa through life and they give birth to them at death. In a ritual held one year and a day after death the souls of the deceased are placed in the inner sanctuary of the temple. Those ancestral souls become part of a vast pool of ancestral energy from which the loa emerge.

The Vodoun pantheon includes four hundred and one loa. Examples of the older and more central loa are Legba, spirit of communication between the realms; Guede, the spirit of the dead; Agwe, the spiritual sovereign of the sea; Ogoun, the spirit of fire, war, and metalurgical elements; and Erzulie, the spirit of Love.

The central ritual of the Vodoun practice is the invocation of and possession by the loa. In a ritual to induce this embodiment trance state the mambo or houngan prepares the ritual space within the temple. The altar is prepared, candles are lit, and the vèvè, the symbol of the loa being invoked, is carefully traced into the earthen floor of the temple. A series of libations are left as offerings.

The hounsis, or initiates, are brought in, moving counter-clockwise in a dance around the centerpost, or poteau mitan. The houngan or mambo conducting the ritual recites the mysteries of an ancient tradition accompanied by a sacred rattle. Then the drums begin. First the cata, the smallest of the drums, followed by the rolling rhythm of the middle drums, and finally the maman, the largest of the drums joins in the complex rhythms. The mambo adds her voice to the invocation of the drums.

The ogan (iron shaft), assons (gourd rattles), and bells are played with the drums. The ogan functions as a clapper, the rhythms of which can be heard above the drums. The ogan is always played by a woman. The assons are used to call in the energies of the east and the magical powers of the ancestor stars. The bells are used to call in the energies of the West and the magical powers of the stars of the future.

The hounsis begin to dance with purpose and resolution. They dance with the intention of being possessed by the loa, “to be mounted and ridden by the Divine Horsemn.” After thirty to forty minutes of drumming and dancing, the loa arrives. The rhythm changes and dancers begin to convulse with the beginnings of their dance of possession. The mambo sprays the dancer with libations of water and rum for the loa and directs the loa with the sound of her rattle.

The Vodoun temple is the home of the giant celestial serpent who came from the stars. The Serpent possesses all the secrets of the magic language. That language is magnified by the sacred music created in Vodoun rituals and ceremonies. See also energy and trance.


Volva
Female Norse shamans or seers who performed the seidr, a divination ritual involving a deep trance state induced by the ecstatic singing of a chorus. The seidr was originally the art of the
goddess Freyja and was associated with the feminine, death, and the cycles of Nature. Prior to the spread of monotheistic religions across Eurasia, Nordic shamanism was practiced primarily by the volvas.

As Norse traditions evolved the older, fertility-based deities were known as the Vanir and the younger, warrior-based deities were known as the Aesir. The shamanic, trance-based practices were linked to the Vanir and a special energy, ergi. Ergi was derived from the transformation of sexual energy through the singing of the chorus. Men and male gods could not participate in the seidr because of the special power, ergi, was believed to be linked to gender variance, particularly in men. The warrior-based culture feared that to experience ergi was shameful. See also gender variant and ritual.


Wabeno
(Also wabánowûk, wábano) Wabeno is a class of Algonquian shamans, both male and female, who received their power from wapanānâ, the Morningstar, via dreams. These shamans were renowned as the best clairvoyants or seers across a vast expanse of North America. They were also known for their public power displays of mastery of fire. The wabeno chewed fire medicine and sprayed it on their arms and hands enabling them to handle fire without harm.

Wapanānâ gave the wabeno an understanding of and ability to direct the manitou force inherent in sexual energy. In their initiation rituals and ceremonials the wabeno danced naked, channeling this vital healing force through their bodies. An aspect of the wabeno training was learning to release erotic energies for healing from their trance states.

The wabeno ceremonials are usually performed as a group, men and women together, using drums and rattles constructed particularly for the percussive rhythms of trance induction. In many respects the development of the wabeno shaman paralleled the formation of the Midewiwin Society. See also dance and ritual.


Wacah Chan
The Mayan Tree of Life. Wacah chan coexists within and connects three realms of the Mayan world. The branches of wacah chan reach into the highest layers of the Upperworld and the roots touch the deepest layer of Xibalba, the Lowerworld, providing a means by which the shaman can travel to these worlds. Wacah chan is represented by the color blue-green and is associated with specific birds, gods, and rituals.

Trees, in general, were essential to Maya life, providing food, medicines, dyes, paper stuffs, materials for homes and tools, and their ambient living environment. The ceiba is the Maya’s most sacred tree. The great ceiba often grow at the entrances to caves, marking this portal in the natural world as the wacah chan marks the portal in the spirit world.

Wacah chan is the porthole through which the beings of one world accessed another. The souls of the dead fall down wacah chan to Xibalba. Her trunk provides the path for the sun, moon, stars, and planets on their daily journeys.

The wacah chan could be materialized through ritual anywhere in the physical or spiritual landscape. Specifically, the wacah chan was created within the shaman and the ahau state shaman in their ritual performances. In ecstatic trance states the shaman becomes the living representation of the central axis that connects all realms. See also ancient Maya.


Wakan Tanka
The source of all healing power for the Lakota. Wakan tanka translates literally
to “great mysterious one.” The term formerly referred to the Thunderbeings and now is more closely translated as the power of the universe or the Great Mystery.

Something that is wakan is holy or sacred. A shaman or medicine person is a wakan person. See also medicine man.


**Waking Dreams**

Waking dreams are dream-like, altered state of consciousness experiences that occur while the “dreamer” is awake. Waking dreams are commonly called visions. They may come on spontaneously, without provocation or they may be induced using a physical set up, like a vision quest, or by ingesting the milder plant hallucinogens.

Like sleeping dreams, waking dreams are recognized as either big dreams that contain a message for the community or little dreams that contain a message for the individual who has the vision. Waking dreams are interpreted as gifts from spirit, either the spirit of the dreamer, the dreamer’s helping spirits, or from Spirit in the greatest sense.

**Warajun**

The Wurunjerri word for soul. The warajun is the aspect of the soul that travels in the dreamtime outside of the limits of space and time. See also Australia.

**Water**

Water, one of the elemental powers, can be used for healing in its physical form and called on by the shaman energetically (as a helping spirit) in the invisible world during his or her journeys. Water is considered life-inducing; it is the Source-of-all-things. The theme that all life arose out of the primal waters of creation is woven through the creation myths of almost every culture. Water purifies and regenerates, heals, and restores. The role of water in shamanic healing rituals is to provide the energy of purification, cleansing, restoration, or reconciliation. Water may be used in healing, for example, as a libation (offering) or to cleanse the shaman or patient. The shamans of many cultures use the energy of water directly from specific sites by conducting their healings or initiations near wells, springs, pools, waterfalls, the sea, or other manifestations of water where there are special energies to draw on. Shamans also immerse themselves in sacred pools or falls to cleanse themselves in the regular maintenance and restoration of their own energy.

The spirit of water is used by shamans in many different ways in their journeys to facilitate the healing of the patient. For example, water can be used to restore or regenerate lost souls prior to returning them to the patient. In other healing processes, the shaman may need to guide the patient’s soul on a journey of return to the Source so that the soul can remember where it came from and reconnect with its life’s purpose. Water is so deeply essential to human life that it arises in a myriad of different ways for the shaman to use in healing and restoration of others. The role of the water is defined specifically culture by culture. For example the Dagara live in a part of West Africa where there are two seasons each year: a wet season and a dry season. The Dagara use the energy of water in rituals for peace, focus, and reconciliation. In contrast, the native peoples of Amazonia who live in a land of rivers and rain forest see water as a direct connection back through their ancestors to the First People. They see as enormous snakes the vast network of rivers that undulate through the rain forest. With their tails at the Source and heads open at the river’s mouth, the rivers (literal home of the anaconda) are symbolic of the celestial anaconda who
brought the first people, a man and a woman, from the Milky Way in a canoe with the yuca, Coca, and yajé (sacred plant hallucinogen).

Wells are held particularly sacred as places of healing and transformation. For the shaman they are a direct opening to the Lowerworld, providing a connection to all other realms of the invisible world. The well is also a direct connection to wisdom and the Source-of-all-things. Wells are held sacred for a third and practical reason; they play an essential role in the prosperity of the land. When the well, or spirit of the well, is abused or treated with disrespect, the well runs dry and the land, the crops, and all of the people suffer.

Shamans from around the world believe springs, rivers, lakes, wells, and the sea flow ultimately from the Source and thus bring messages from spirit up from the Lowerworld. For example, Celtic shamans of Europe and the British Isles believed that the water itself was wise, in part because of its beginnings at the Source and, in part, because of the knowledge gained by moving through the many transformations of form and reconciliation of opposites necessary for water to complete its cycle from evaporation at sea to its ultimate return. See also Africa.


Wayfinding
The Polynesian/Hawaiian art of navigation, used to sail vast distances across the Pacific Ocean, often spending weeks in open seas. The art of wayfinding is based on the practitioner's ability to become One with the stars, moon, sun, ocean, and its waves. Wayfinding is a specific application of the esoteric art of journeying and shapeshifting. See also Hawaii; journey; kahuna.

Weather
Weather can be used as a source of power for shamans, and in this way weather is a helping spirit. Weather can also be the thing influenced by the actions of the shaman. Weather can be the shaman's means or his or her end.

Shamans derive a great deal of intrinsic power from an intimate relationship with the natural world. Much of this is achieved through a powerful association with the elements. The interplay of the elements gives us weather. Once a weather pattern is formed, it can be used like the elements as a source of power for the shaman. For example, shamans can call on the power of various weather patterns in their ritual work. Lightning and wind can be used for instantaneous change or rain can be called on for cleansing or rejuvenation.

Shamans are also called upon to change the weather. In the past the health of corps was a common reason to ask for more or less rain. Today the request may come to assure good weather for a sporting event, instead of the concern for crops. In Malaysia, an eyewitness reported that, after the shaman “tied” the rain with a knot in a kerchief, the rain fell around the field, but not on the spectators or on the football game they were watching.


Weather Shamans
Shamans with the capacity to influence weather, acting upon the elements in various ways. Pacific Northwest Coastal shamans, for example, will be given the task to stop rain, while medicine societies in the Southwestern region are called upon to
make rain. A weather shaman is sometimes a specialist. Shamans with the power to influence the weather are able to either disperse or call up clouds, rains, storms, or hurricanes, and to create and direct high winds to do things like confuse the enemy in battle.


West
The west is a directional energy used by shamans in their ritual work and the creation of sacred space within ordinary space. The west is one of six directional energies (east, south, west, north, above, and below) which together define the location of the seventh point, the center. Shamans must remain aware of their center at all times to keep from becoming lost while traveling in the boundless and ever-changing realms of non-ordinary reality.

Each of the directions is associated with an element, season, time of day, color, animal, deity, etc. These associations show both consistency and variation across cultures. The energy of the west is tidal, it ebbs and flows. For many cultures, though not all, the element associated with the west is water, the season is autumn, the time is sunset, the life cycle passage is the adult who faces fears, the power is wisdom, and the journey is one of introspection and inner vision, leading to letting go, death, rebirth, and harvest.

Wi-Kovat
The berdache (berdach) of the Pima people of the North American southwest. Pima mythology does not suggest the wisdom in accepting and valuing gender variance in people. Pima mythology blames gender variance in Pima men on witchcraft practiced by their Papago neighbors, who do respect the berdache. The Pima, unlike their neighbors, do not respect their wi-kovat, and the term, which means “like a girl,” is derogatory. See also gender variant.


Wikwajigewinini
The wikwajigewinini is the Ojibwa sucking shaman, a shaman who heals by sucking disease causing energy intrusions form the patient’s body. The wikwajigewinini works in an embodiment trance state with a hollow bone tube (approximately 3 inches in length and 3/4 of an inch in diameter) and a pan or other means of disposal for the disease object.

During a typical wikwajigewinini healing ritual the shaman prays to his helping spirits and calls them into his body, entering an embodiment trance facilitated by drumming and singing. He swallows a tube and regurgitates it into his mouth where he holds it while sucking. The wikwajigewinini kneels over the patient, locates the energy intrusion in the body, and, placing his lips on the body, sucks. After repeated sucking the disease object is sucked into the tube and is spit into a shallow dish along with the tube.

The healing ritual may need to be repeated to remove the entire intrusion. A stronger spirit may be called into the shaman’s body to assure success in the subsequent sessions. Variations in the specifics of form do occur, for example disposing of the disease object in the fire instead of a bowl or pan and
taking it outside. However the functional steps of the process remain consistent. See also sucking shaman.


Windigokan
(Also wetigokanûk [Plains Cree], bûngi [Plains Ojibwa]) The Cannibal Dancers healing society among the Ojibwa. The windigokan dancer/healers were called on to heal the sick by exorcising the demons of disease, when the diagnosis determined that the illness was caused by “disease demons.” The costumes of this society consisted of clothing from rags and a grotesquely painted mask with a gigantic nose, much like the masks of the False Face dancer/healers of the Iroquois.

Members of this society were men who had had a significant dream of a päguk, a skeleton spirit. When they performed their healing work they used inverted speech, saying the opposite of what they meant. As a result they are referred to as “clowns,” much like the heyôka of the Lakota.

The windigokan dancer/healers go to the home of the patient where they dance in full costume and masks, pounding their rattles on the ground, singing, and whistling. A primary function of the dance is to frighten the disease demons. To this end the dancers approach the patient looking menacing, and run back, again and again in all manner of gymnastics, fierce antics, and grotesque actions. See also False Face Society.


Winkte
A gender-variant Lakota male. The winkte is a berdache (berdach), though some specialized in healing mental and physical illness. More often they specialized in preparations of the dead and their funerary rituals. Many winkte were given powerful healing songs to aid in childbirth.

The Lakota explain that the winkte form a third group, different from either men or women. Their unique existence is sacred, a creation of wakan tanka like everything else. For the Lakota a person is what nature or his dreams make him. Traditionally, people are accepted for what they are, what they are guided to be, and encouraged to develop and share their original medicine. In his uniqueness the winkte is given certain unique powers that must be shared.

Young men who have a vision of Double Woman, White Buffalo Calf Woman, or the White Buffalo Calf Pipe during their vision quest are presented with the tools of the feminine gender. Young men who accept these tools are accepting the role of the winkte (win meaning “woman” and kte meaning “would become”).

A young boy who has a dream or vision of an Ancestral winkte is potentially being called to become a winkte. At about twelve the parents of such a boy take him to a ritual designed to communicate with the Ancestral winkte. These spirits have the power to verify whether the boy’s gender-variant inclinations are a phase or a calling. If the proper vision takes place during the ritual, one involving communication with the Ancestral winkte, then the boy is recognized as a winkte and he is raised appropriately.

The Moon Being is also a common helping spirit to appear in the visions of boys whose path it is to become a winkte. Though the specifics of these visions vary, the pattern persists. The Moon Being usually appears with a man’s bow and arrow in one hand and a woman’s tool in the other. The boy must choose between them in his vision. Through this type of vision the boy’s role as winkte and the high status of
being instructed directly by the Moon
Being are recognized.
Many winkte are not permitted by
the spirits to be married and some are.
This varies from one person to another.
Some winkte marry men and others
marry women, have children, and still
fulfill the winkte role. For most winkte
the role makes sex with a woman or
another winkte inappropriate. A winkte
must define his own path, like all other
Lakota, as they are guided by wakan
tanka. See also gender-variant male
and transformed shamans.

Conner, Randy P. Blossom of Bone:
Reclaiming the Connections
Between Homoeroticism and the
Sacred. San Francisco: Harper-
Williams, W. L. The Spirit and the Flesh.

Wintun
The Wintun were once a vital and flour-
ishing people of the northern
California region of North America.
The Wintun nation occupied a territory
from roughly Mount Shasta southward
to what is now the San Francisco Bay
area and from the Sacramento River to
the Pacific Ocean. In 1870 it is estimated
that the Wintun numbered in the
12,000s. After one hundred years of
racial violence, white man’s epidemic
diseases, poverty, relocation, and inter-
marrriage, the Wintun population was
no more than 1,165.

Traditionally the Wintun have five
kinds of “doctors” who all work in
trance states. The dreamers and singers
possessed the power of clairvoyance,
but not of curing. Tracer doctors were
able to locate lost objects, people, or
souls. Healing doctors invoked trance
states, diagnosed illnesses, prescribed
remedies, and possessed the power to
cure through these means. The sucking
doctor was traditionally the most
powerful, possessing all the powers of
the others with the addition of the
power to cure by sucking extraction,

involving the removal of pains, or ener-
getic intrusions.

Traditionally, Wintun shamans were
initiated in the lahakonos, an elabo-
rate communal, night-long dance ritu-
al, though that did not exclude those
initiated in spontaneous individual
ecstatic experiences. Either way, after
this initial encounter with a helping
spirit elder shamans care for the candi-
date, singing to empower, adminis-
tering medicines, and performing neces-
sary healings and extractions. When the
novice had resolved this initial ecstatic
experience, elder shamans take the
novice to a sauel, a sacred place to pray,
purify the body, and acquire power.
The helping spirits then teach healing
skills, techniques, and songs. As the
novice cultivates his or her power and
skills, the spirits and the helping spirits
of the elder shamans must find the
novice acceptable. Even so, the novice
will not begin practicing for many years.
The novice continues to sing the healing
and power songs, visit sauel to pray and
purify, and to enter trance states to work
with and learn from the helping spirits.

Helping Spirits
Wintun helping spirits do not have
form. They may be yapaitu, spiritual
forces residing in sacred places or cele-
tstial bodies, the spirits of animals, or
lehs, the souls of departed relatives or
people. The shaman continues to
acquire power throughout his or her
lifetime because each spirit is endowed
with its own personality and usefulness.
Helping spirits are acquired through
doctoring and the appropriate prayers
and sacrifices at places of power.

Wintun shamans may smoke toacco to invoke the helping spirits. When
the spirits come to the shaman the
audience hears a whizzing or whistling
noise. The shaman then feels a hotness
overcome the body as the spirits enter
and the shaman moves into trance. The
same spirits do not always come and if
one leaves, another will come. Four or
five helping spirits was considered a
large number.
While entranced Wintun shamans frequently deliver prophetic speech, Yupsa too speak from trance. Yupas distinguishes the shaman’s altered state of consciousness during rituals from his or her ordinary state of consciousness. Often the shaman speaks in a secret language of spirit in which one word can mean many things. The shaman’s assistant or interpreter knows who the spirit is that speaks through the shaman and interprets the spirit’s message.

In the past shamans would find things by singing and extract things by sucking. In the singing, the spirit in the doctor sees the intrusion and shows the doctor where to suck. Today doctors sing more, when in the past they went into deeper trance and sucked more. It is harder and less successful to pull a poison out with the hand. The illness just needs sucking.

Training
Wintun doctors undergo months to years of training depending on the type of doctor they are called to be and the power of their helping spirits. Training comes in dreams, trance states, and during ritual experiences with elder shamans. The shaman must learn songs, techniques, and mastery of trance. Novices may go to elder shamans for a “singing” to strengthen them. The Wintun believe that in order to keep a spirit, the shaman must take care of himself. Shamans observe food and water taboos, some traditional and some imposed by particular helping spirits.

Gender
The training of male and female shamans differs in areas where the genders have different responsibilities. This is an issue of balance and honoring unique roles, not one of separation. The Wintun believe that each gender has a unique relationship to creation. Therefore there are teachings for men and teachings for women to assure that both relationships are fully realized for the balanced good of the people.

Healing Rituals
Wintun shamans perform disease-object extraction by winina (sucking) or by sehmin (massage) or both. The winina is the most common and successful healing method. Generally described, the shaman “scans” the body with hands and intuition to find the areas containing energetic intrusions. A bone tube (femur bone of an adult eagle) is placed over the area with one hand while the rattle (turtle shell) is shaken vigorously near the area with the other. The disease-causing intrusion, or illness, is sucked from the body into the tube and then spit into a container of some kind.

The lehstconos, also an extraction healing, requires more power than the winina. Only the most powerful shamans can perform the lehstconos, which requires mastery of fires to successfully perform this healing ritual of exorcism and extraction of energy intrusions.

The ehldilina is considered the most difficult healing ritual. It is used only in dire cases of soul loss, when the patient’s lehs, soul, has left the body because the illness has brought the patient so near death or because the lehs has been stolen by a malevolent spirit. The shaman’s spirits must go in search of the soul and retrieve it or the patient will die.

Causes of Illness
The most common cause of illness is the intrusion of a dokos, or pain, into the body of the patient, usually as a result of sorcery. With the aid of spirit, shamans are able to “see with spirit eyes” and see the dokos in the patient’s body as if the body were transparent. If the shaman’s spirit is stronger than the sorcerer’s spirit then the shaman will be successful in drawing the dokos out, usually by sucking or cupping.

The other two traditional causes of disease were spirit possession, thought to arise from violation of social taboo, and soul loss, believed to be caused by the wandering of the soul while
unconscious or soul theft by a malevolent spirit. The former required *lehst-conos*, exorcism, and the latter *ehldilina*, soul retrieval.

Today the Wintun shaman attributes many diseases to some form of self-inflicted stress, either emotional, physical, or psychological. Many of these conditions are treated with medicinal herbs and corrections in attitude, care of the body, and proper nutrition. The diseases of the white man, e.g., ulcers, cirrhosis of the liver, certain cancers, etc., are considered beyond the healing powers of the shaman unless detected very early.

**Paraphernalia**
Shamans carry a tube, horn, or length of hollow bone for the sucking extraction of “pains.” Rattles are essential and found in various kinds. Shamans who perform *ehldilina* have a staff with a small basket attached for retrieving the lost souls. Sacred yellow hammer feathers are used to extract harmful or violent dreams from the patients. Some shamans carry a wooden pipe that embodies spirits who can be consulted for advice.


**Wiradjeri**
A tribe of Aboriginal people living in eastern New South Wales, Australia. The following is the traditional “making,” or **initiation**, and **training** of Wiradjeri shamans.

**The Call**
Early signs in childhood of a natural gift are necessary for candidacy. The Wiradjeri test the child’s ability to interpret signs in conversations built with specifically constructed sentences. The child undergoes intense training in the tribal mythology and the simpler aspects of the profession. The child receives an individual helping spirit in addition to the hereditary spirit of his or her tribe.

After his initiation into manhood, the young man’s **teacher**, usually his father, rubs quartz **crystals** into his body and puts them into his water to drink. This transmission of **power** enables the boy to begin to see spirits.

**Initiation**
Initiation occurs in several stages. After he succeeds in seeing spirits, he is taken by his teacher to the grave of spirits who rub his body and insert more crystals. The initiate’s individual helping spirit is sung into his chest and he is taught the **song** and **ritual** needed to release it from his body. This helping spirit leads the boy and his father to a hollow tree containing little snakes or Daramulans, the sons of *Baiami*, the creator of the first man. The Daramulans rub the initiate’s body transmitting to him more power.

Finally the initiate has gathered enough power to ascend with his father on the father’s magical cord into the **Upperworld** to meet *Baiami*, the true source of power for Wiradjeri shamans. *Baiami* will complete his initiation. The opening in the **sky** that grants access to *Baiami* opens and shuts quickly and continuously. Anyone touched or caught by the opening will lose his powers and die as soon as he returns to **earth**.

First *Baiami* causes kali, liquefied quartz crystals, to fall in a great waterfall on the initiate. The kali is spread all over the body and completely absorbed in a rite is called **kurini**. In the next stage *Baiami sings* a piece of quartz from his body into the initiate’s head to give him **spirit vision**. He then sings a flame, from his body into the initiate’s chest and teaches him how to release the flame. In the final stage, *Baiami* sings a magical cord in the initiate, up
one leg across the chest and down the other leg. The initiation is complete.

Training
The ability to work with the powers of the kali, crystal, flame, and cord must all be mastered. Years are required to become proficient in the applications of these magical substances. Some shamans will become more powerful and able than others. They all must learn how to diagnose and treat illness, produce the magical stones, cords and helping spirits from his body, summon the spirits, and exercise various psychic powers.

When these powers are mastered, Wiradjeri shamans are able to send their helping spirits to learn what was happening at a distance or to transform into animal form to go there himself. They “fast travel,” moving effortlessly at abnormally high speeds over great distances, disappear and reappear in a separate location, and display mastery of fire. The retention of these powers depends on self-discipline and the observance of traditional taboos.

Wiradjeri shamans also gain power from Wawi, a serpent-like creature who lives in deep waterholes. Shamans who succeed in finding Wawi and entering his den are given new power songs to bring back to their people. See also the call.


Wirikuta
Wirikuta, which means Paradise, is the Sacred Land of Peyote and the place of the mythological origin of the Huichol people. It is found in the mountains near San Luís Potosí and is the destination of the Huichol peyote hunt.

Witch Doctor
A somewhat pejorative term of uncertain origin, usually used incorrectly to refer to a sorcerer or practitioner of the sacred arts of ill repute. A witch doctor is actually a practitioner who can doctor the harmful effects of witchcraft. For example, witch doctors are called on to reverse the effects of tokoloshe (ghosts sent by witches) throughout Africa. Witch doctor can also refer to a shaman who is skilled in counteracting the tagati (hexes) placed on others by witches. See also sangoma and Zulu.


Wochangi
The power received by the shaman from a helping spirit or other source. The Lakota believe that wochangi, or spiritual power, is found in all things because all things are sacred. Thus, wochangi can also be given by all created things if one is attentive.


Wohpe
The Lakota term for the White Buffalo Calf Maiden who brought the Sacred Calf Pipe. See also sacred pipe.

Womb
For the shaman the womb is both literal, a helping spirit, and symbolic, a metaphor of the cosmic womb from which all life comes. The boundaries of All-That-Is, the whole universe, are found within the cosmic womb. For shamans, the cosmic womb is the feminine force that contains the masculine force, consciousness, which together are the divine, androgynous, creative force that is the Kosmos.

The Source, the path to the center, and the womb are all represented in the spiral, common in shamanic cultures, and in the labyrinth. The spiral represents the path to The Source, the point of origin within the Unknown. The spiral cycle is a symbolic reminder of the infinite process of death and rebirth that resonates with the vibrations and rhythms of the universe itself.

Each new shaman was once a novice who died in his or her initiation and was reborn a shaman. Thus cave and wombs are often the locations for initiations. A journey into the “womb” during initiation represents a journey to the center, a return to The Source.

Many shamanic people see the physical configuration of the womb reflected in the hexagon and in particular in the hexagonal rock crystals, like quartz, emeralds, and tourmaline. Therefore these stones are often prized and powerful tools for the shaman.

The womb is also literally a place of power for female shamans. The spirit of the womb is a helping spirit. The womb itself is the dreaming organ of the female body. With the womb as a teacher of the cosmic womb, females have the opportunity to perceive knowledge directly.

In terms of energy, females know The Source directly through the womb. In training they do not have to move toward it, but they must learn to understand it. The male in training is always approaching, moving toward knowledge, but never reaching it. The male novice builds understanding step by step.

These are equally valid ways of understanding, yet they are very different ways of experiencing life and energy. These differences affect the ways male and female shamans are trained and initiated.


Words
Words and song are used by shamans to heal, charge remedies, call in spirit energies for power, and to guide others along their own altered state journeys. Words have creative power all their own when carried by the breath of the shaman. The words spoken over a remedy or the song sung during the healing are an essential part of the cure. For example, the payé works with ayahuasca and icaros (songs) together in healing sessions. One South American shaman said definitively, “What good do you think my remedies would be if I didn’t sing to them?” See also altered states of consciousness and South America.


World Axis
The world axis is the connection between the seen (physical) and the unseen (spiritual) worlds; it is the axis mundi. Found in most cultures, it is visualized as a great tree creating a central axis that connects all of the Kosmos. See also Tree of Life.
World Hypothesis
A world hypothesis consists of the fundamental beliefs about the nature of the world and reality that underlies the life and work of a community. The majority of people in a community then take this set of assumptions of their culture or subculture unquestioningly and interpret the world through that lens. Their consensual world hypothesis goes unquestioned and supports their worldview.

Practically speaking, this means that any individual's interpretation of a given phenomena will be largely determined by his or her personal beliefs, philosophy, and world hypothesis. And that this process of arriving at an interpretation is largely unconscious and appears to the individual as "the way it is."

At the same time diverse philosophies and spiritual traditions can nudge individuals to become conscious of their own world hypothesis. The worldviews of others can provoke an individual to question the underlying assumptions of his or her worldview. In the face of this diversity of ideas we must all acknowledge that we just do not know, indeed cannot know, the ultimate nature of many things.

The world hypotheses of shamanic cultures are based on the stories of "a time before time" when humankind was not separate from God. In contrast, the story of the separation between God and humankind is fundamental to the world hypotheses of most first-world nations. These stories profoundly shape their respective worldviews. For this reason it is a challenge for contemporary humankind to understand the shaman and the shaman's experience of the world. See also religion.


World Mountain
(Also: Cosmic Mountain) A legendary mountain that stands at the center of the world from which grows the World Tree, or Tree of Life. The World Mountain is central in the beliefs of many shamanic cultures, particularly across Asia, marking the interconnection of the physical and spiritual realms.

The World Mountain has three, four, or seven steps, symbolizing passage into sacred spiritual realms. At the top of the World Mountain grows the World Tree, the connection used by shamans to move between the many realms of the spirit world and the source of life and immortality. In many cultures the shaman is born or initiated on the World Tree.


World Tree
The World Tree is the connection between the seen (physical) and the unseen (spiritual) worlds; it is the axis mundi. Found in most cultures, it is visualized as a great tree connecting all of the Kosmos. See also Tree of Life.

Wounded Healer
The shaman is often referred to as the "wounded healer," because he or she must heal him/herself from a spontaneous wound or illness inflicted by the spirit world. This mysterious sickness is in many traditions the call by which the novice is challenged to become a shaman. Those who learn from the spirits how to heal from this illness become shamans and continue their training. Those who do not are left weak, or sickly, mentally ill, or dead.

This transformational crisis is ubiquitous throughout shamanic cultures. Whether this experience is considered the call, the initiation, or both may vary culture to culture, but is nonetheless essential for the emergence of a new shaman.
The “wound” may be a physical or mental illness or an emotional or spiritual crisis. The illness is often the direct result of a spontaneous trance state caused by unintentional spirit possession. Whether or not the wounded is aware of spirit as the cause of the distress, the experience forces the wounded to learn from the spirit world and trust it to recover.

Wounding of the depth and breadth to transform one into a healer is unplanned and uncontrollable by humans. When an individual quests for the experience intentionally, it rarely occurs. As with the visions of a vision quest, the individual’s intention and desire alone do not assure its occurrence.

Shamans who have experienced this type of initiation describe their internal experience as that of journeying in the spirit world, while externally their body lies sick or semi-comatose. In the spirit world they are challenged, trained in shamanic work, and initiated by their spirit teachers. In this way they experience healing, learn skills, and receive the wisdom to serve the community. If successfully initiated, they return to their body, heal physically, and begin their life as a shaman.

The phrase “wounded healer” is commonly used as a psychological metaphor referring to any human experience that brings the individual close to physical or psychological death due to a disconnection from ordinary reality. This experience does not make the individual a shaman, literally. However, the path of the shaman can serve a powerful metaphor for this type of healing and personal transformation. See also journey.


Wu

The shamans of ancient China. The spiritual traditions of pre-Confucian, pre-Buddhist China were shamanic, pantheistic, and matrifocal in character. The spiritual functionaries were predominantly female, the wu. Males, the xi or hsi, served traditional roles within the spiritual service, some as shamans and some as transformed shamans. In practice the shamans were called wu, regardless of gender.

The wu communicated with the spirits and deities in trance states induced with drumming, dancing, meditation, and song to perform divination, diagnose and heal illness, guide the souls of the deceased to the next life (psychopomp), foretell the future, and perform magic, particularly to control the weather. In early Chinese traditions rituals were conducted to honor the Ancestors, offer sacrifices, and maintain harmony between Heaven and Earth. Some wu performed these functions on a familial level, while others performed them for the court as state shamans.

The ancient Chinese believed that all the wisdom affecting human affairs lay in the Upperworld and that access to that wisdom was necessary for political authority. The wu were responsible for communication between earth and deities of the Upperworld. Therefore the wu were a crucial part of every state court. Some scholars propose that the king was actually the head shaman.

The wu was a person upon whom “the Bright Spirit” had descended as they entered trance. Wu practicing in the northern provinces of China tended to use journeying trance states, similar to their neighbors in Siberia, in which the wu’s soul flies into the spirit world. Wu practicing in the southern provinces tended to use embodiment trance states, similar to their southern neighbors, in which the deity or helping spirit is invoked in the body of the wu.

Texts from 500 B.C. state that the wu stood apart from others in their
exceptional awareness and deeply penetrating understanding of the interrelating realms of the physical and spiritual worlds. The *wu* were believed to be exceptional individuals who were highly vigorous, virtuous, lively, reverent, and principled. The *wu* were wise and radiant individuals, who some believed drew the Bright Spirit to themselves through their exceptional character and personal force of spirit. See also *journey*.


**Wurunjerri**
A tribe of Aboriginal people located near Melbourne in Victoria, New South Wales, Australia. The essential and profound root of Wurunjerri culture is *Tjukurpa*, the *dreamtime*. *Tjukurpa* is existence—past, present, and future—and the explanation of existence. It is the land, the people, their actions day-to-day, like hunting, gathering, marrying, and conducting ritual, and the *Dreamtime* laws that govern these actions.

*Tjukurpa* has always been and it is still unfolding alongside present events. It is being recreated and celebrated by certain Aboriginal people today who live in a cyclical timeframe with nature and the seasons. For 40,000 years they have walked the same paths on the same day at the same time as their *Ancestors*. They live with a connection to all things that generates an awe-inspiring responsibility toward the gift of life in all things.

**Initiations**
A Wurunjerri boy is first “made a man” in his *initiations* into adulthood, before he can be “made a clever man” or *shaman*. At approximately ten to twelve years of age, the boy is taken to a secret, sacred *place* where the power of the *bala*, his hereditary *totem spirit*, is sung into him by his *teacher*, who is usually his father or grandfather. The *bala* gives the boy permission to begin to train to become a shaman.

Boys who have shown signs of shamanic potential in their childhood must cultivate a relationship with a teacher. This teacher, usually the father or grandfather, trains the initiated young man to work with the *power* of his *bala* and teaches him secret aspects of mythological, spiritual, and esoteric *knowledge*. Much of the teaching transpires between the *spirit* of the teacher and that of the novice in the *Dreamtime*.

The novice must learn to master the *chants*, rituals, and powers of concentration necessary to bring forth the *bala* from his body and into manifestation. When the novice can manifest this *vision* of the tribe’s patron and protector, he is ready to begin the final rituals of initiation.

**Final Initiation Rituals**
*Baiami*, a *Dreamtime* ancestor and creator of the first man, is the ultimate source of the Wurunjerri shaman’s power. Prior to this stage the teaching has been one-to-one and mostly in secret. These final three phases of initiation are carried out in public, in a place sacred to *Baiami*, with all of the novices and their teachers present.

The novices and teachers chant to call in *Baiami*, who manifests as a “clever man” with light radiating from his eyes. His mouth foams with sacred *kali*, liquefied quartz *crystals*, which he makes flow over the initiates in a process called *ku’rini*, “penetration into them.” The *kali* penetrates immediately into the bodies of the initiates giving them the special power to sprout *feathers* from their arms. The ritual is closed. Several days later, *Baiami* is summoned again for the second phase of initiation. He begins by showing the initiates how to fly with their new wings.
Baiami then draws a crystal from his body and “sings” it into the forehead of each initiate to endow them with the ability to “see” into other realms. Finally, Baiami takes a flame from his own body and sings it into the chest of each initiate. With that act the ritual is closed. The initiates integrate these experiences and the powers they have been given with their teachers.

When fire and crystal have penetrated each initiate and they have all learned to fly, Baiami is invoked a third time. Baiami lays a cord over each initiate from legs to chest and sings it into their bodies. The initiates practice with their cords and will ultimately learn to use them for healing and other acts of power. When the string is mastered then the warajun, the soul of the initiate, and his helping spirits can travel freely throughout the Dreamtime. The final initiation is complete and Baiami has definitively “made a clever man.” See also making.


Wyrd

Wyrd is the ancient Anglo-Saxon version of the Great Mystery—the unexplainable force underlying all of existence and at the essence of all shamanic practices. Originally wyrd meant the strange or unexplainable in sacred realms, though today it simply means weird in mundane realms.

At the essence of wyrd is the belief that the universe exists within polarities of forces, similar to the Zulu concept of the original and eternal battle between Fire/Light and Ice/Dark or the Eastern concepts of yin and yang. The Anglo-Saxon creation mythology that speaks of wyrd is best preserved in Germanic and Norse myths and stories. The Anglo-Saxon universe originally consisted of fire and ice, two mighty, unimaginably vast force regions. They came together and exploded, creating a great mist of magic and vitality that exists beyond time, like the substance of the dreamtime.

This “mist of knowledge” conceals wisdom about the nature of life in ordinary reality. It can only be parted in certain states of consciousness by individuals with the knowledge of magic, shamanism, and sacred technologies of trance. With these skills the boundaries of the mist becomes permeable and inner and outer realities can be transcended.

Wyrd is also a vast web of living fibers that flow through the entire universe, linking absolutely everything—each person, object, event, thought, and feeling. This web is similar to Grandmother Spider Woman’s web of life in North America or the web of aka threads used by Hawaiian kahuna. The European shamans envisioned a web of fibers so sensitive that any movement, thought, or happening, no matter how small, resonated through the entire web of wyrd. See also Hawaii.


Wyrd
Xahluirox Xaikilgaiaigiba

Xahluirox xaikilgaiaigiba is the Ghost Ceremony or Devil Ceremony of the Pomo of the California region of North America. This ceremony, conducted to atone for misdeeds against the dead, is one of the most vital ceremonial acts performed by the Pomo. Because offenses against the dead can cause illness among the living, the xahluirox xaikilgaiaigiba also functions as preventative medicine.

The ceremony, most often held in the spring, is performed in a special dance house traditionally built anew for each ceremony. Only initiated men perform this four-day ritual. Illness could befall the presence of those who do not belong at the ceremony. There are two classes of dancers who participate: the ordinary ghost-dancer and the other is the katsa'-tala, or art dancer, who performs fire-eating displays of power. See also fire.

Yachaj

(Also yachaq) Yachaj is the Quechua word for shaman, “the one who knows.” Sinchi yachaj, “strong shaman” refers to a powerful or a master shaman.

Yagé

Yagé is another name for the ayahuasca, a hallucinogenic drink prepared from rainforest plants that is widely used by South American shamans. The shamans say that yagé has power and force of will all of its own. When consumed, yagé shares its knowledge, allowing the shaman to reach the stars of their origin, enter the spirit of plants, animals and people, to know the true intent of people’s actions, to foresee the future, to diagnose and cure illness, and to travel throughout all the realms of the Kosmos. See also South America.


Yajé

See ayahuasca and yagé.

Yakee

See epená.

Yakut

The name given the Sakha, a native people of Siberia, by the Russian colonists. Sakha was reinstated as the official name in 1990. The Yakuts are found in the shamanism of this region it that of Siberian shamans.

Cosmology

The Yakut classify the bis, or gods/goddesses and spirits, in two large classes: those of the Upperworld, the tangara or celestial bis, and those of the Lowerworld, the subterranean bis below. There is no opposition between them and they are equally powerful. It is more a classification based on where they are found in the spirit world.

The celestial bis are benevolent, but passive and uninvolved in human existence. The highest celestial deity is Art Toyon Aga, who resides in the ninth layer of the Upperworld, or Sky. He shines like the sun and speaks through the voice of the thunder. There are seven other great deities “above” and a multitude of lesser deities.

The subterranean bis can be malevolent and vindictive, as they are closer to the earth, and allied to men by ties of blood. The highest subterranean deity is Ulü-Toyon, “the All-Powerful Lord of the Infinite.” Ulü-Toyon and Art Toyon Aga are treated as equals. The bis below are also comprised of eight great deities and an unlimited number of spirits. Ulü-Toyon is not ill-disposed to human and is highly involved and interested in their affairs.

Ulü-Toyon personifies active existence, in all of its suffering, desires, struggles. When Ulü-Toyon walks the earth shakes and the hearts of the mortals burst with terror if they look into his face. Ulü-Toyon gave humankind fire, taught the shamans to relieve suffering, and created the birds, woodland animals, and the forests themselves.

First Shaman

In Yakut mythology, Eagle is the creator of the First Shaman. Similar to the Buryat, it depends on the story whether the Eagle is parent or teacher. The Eagle is called Ai, the “Creator”, and Ai Toyon, the “Creator of Light.” Ai Toyon’s children are represented as bird spirits, who may be the souls of deceased Yakuts,
perching in the branches of the **Tree of Life.** At the top of the tree, a birch, is the two-headed eagle, **Toyon Kotor,** the “Lord of the Birds.” All ancestor spirits who play a role in the selection of new shamans are the descendants of the mythical “First Shaman” selected by **Ai Toyon.**

The First Shaman was extraordinarily powerful and equally prideful. He refused to recognize the supreme power of **Ai.** Ai, noticing that the First Shaman had transformed his body into a mass of snakes, sent down fire to burn him. Unbelievably a toad emerged from the flames. The animal helping spirits from whom the outstanding shamans of the Yakut acquire power came for this original toad, the essence of the First Shaman.

**The Call—Dismemberment**
The future Yakut shaman is called spontaneously by a spirit who may be a deity, mythical being, animal spirit, or ämägät, the soul of a deceased shaman. The candidate lies in the yurt as if dead for several days or suddenly loses ordinary consciousness and withdraws into the forests, feeds on tree bark, and throws himself into water, fire, and onto knives, all means of validating trance.

While the candidate's body displays symptoms of unexplained mental or physical illness the candidate has entered an altered state. His soul is taken into the spirit world where he is dismembered. There are numerous accounts of the dismemberment suffered by individuals who became shaman. For example, one candidate's limbs were removed with an iron hook; his flesh was scraped away and with the bodily fluids thrown way, the bones were completely cleaned, and his eyes torn from their sockets. After this dismemberment all the bones were gathered by the spirits and fastened together with iron.

The altered state experience of the candidate often continues from three to seven days, creating the regeneration and maturation of the candidate's new shaman's body. The mythical “Bird-of-Prey-Mother” appears only twice in a shaman's lifetime: at his or her birth through dismemberment and at his or her death. This great bird has the head of an eagle with an iron beak, iron feathers, hooked claws, and a long tail.

She lays her eggs on the Tree of Life and sits on them as the new shaman's bodies develop. Great shamans are hatched in three years, middling shamans in two, and lesser shamans in one. When the shaman's soul is hatched from the egg, the Bird-of-Prey-Mother gives it to a great shamaness, with only one eye, one arm, and one bone. She rocks the soul in an iron cradle and feeds it clotted blood as she teaches. In other stories the soul is taken to the lowerworld and locked in a house for one to three years where it is dismembered and taught by spirits.

The Bird-of-Prey-Mother then flies with the soul to the lowerworld and leaves it to mature on a branch of a pitch pine. When the soul has matured to its capacity, the Bird-of-Prey-Mother flies with it to the **Middleworld,** where the body is cut to bits and distributed among the malevolent spirits of disease and death. Each spirit devours a piece of the body, which gives the future shaman the power to cure the corresponding disease. When the malevolent spirits depart, the Bird-of-Prey-Mother restores the bones and the body, and the candidate, still lying in the yurt, wakes as if from a very long and strange dream.

**Obtaining Power**
Shamanic power is obtained from the spirit world; it is not hereditary among the Yakut. However, the ämägät, the soul of the shaman, tends to remain associated with its family after death. It may later incarnate itself in the same family and the individual with then become a shaman.

**The call** is only the beginning of obtaining shamanic powers. After the experience, training continues with the
helping spirit and a master shaman. Later there will be a public initiation involving a series of ceremonies and demonstration of shamanic abilities. Often after the strangeness of “the call,” the new candidate’s family appeals to an old shaman to teach the frightened and confused youth the various kinds of spirits, the songs and techniques to summon, and most important the mastery of various trance states.

Initiation
There are levels of mastery in the shaman’s training that are marked with the performance of initiation rituals. The level of the following initiation ritual is unclear. The master shaman takes the new student up on a hill or into a plain with eighteen chaste young men and women, nine of each. The student is given a new costume, drum, and drumstick, all objects of power. The master shaman then dons his or her own costume and takes the novice’s soul on a long ecstatic journey.

They begin on the World Mountain. The master shows the novice the forks in the road that lead to the paths that lead to the peaks where the spirits of sickness live. Together they enter a house and the master shows the novice how to recognize the sicknesses in the various parts of the body and cure them. Each time the master names a part of the body, he or she spits in the disciple’s mouth. The student swallows the spittle that conveys the knowledge and power to cure.

When the student has learned to cure all the diseases in all the parts of the body, the master shaman takes the student to the Upperworld to learn of the celestial spirits. When this teaching is complete the two return from the spirit world. The new shaman’s body is said to be consecrated and he or she can practice professionally. The new shaman completes the ritual by killing the sacrificial animal and consecrating his or her costume with its blood. The animal is then shared by the participants.

Shamans and Priests
The power of a shaman is determined by the power of the spirits who assist him/her. This, in addition to where the shaman goes in trance, is used to distinguish different types of shamans, healers, and priests. To journey to the bis below is to travel allara kyrar. To journey to the bis above is to travel ĭśă kyrar.

The ai oyuna conduct ceremonies in which animal sacrifices are made to the celestial bis. This type of “shaman” does not work in trance and is better described as shaman-priest, or white shaman. The orto oyuna work in trance and are typical shamanic healers. They conduct rituals in which they associate with the spirits of the Middle and Lowerworld. They are often referred to as black shamans.

The “great” shamans are the most powerful as they receive their power directly from Ulü-Toyon through the helping spirits. They are healers and powerful magicians who work in trance states with the spirits and deities from all the spirit realms. transformed shamans are traditionally found among the Yakut. The power of these gender-variant male shamans is determined by the spirits who initiate them, as with other Yakut shamans.

There are also the kenniki oyuna who are seers who work primarily in passive trance states in which they receive information. They are diviners and interpreters of dreams who treat minor illnesses.

Healing
Yakut shamanic healing rituals usually includes four stages: evocation of the helping spirits, divination to determine the cause of the illness, expulsion of malevolent spirits, and the shaman’s ecstatic journey to the Upperworld.

The third stage, the struggle to expel the malevolent spirits, is dangerous and exhausting. There are many methods, from threats and frightening noises to pulling it from the body of the patient, chasing it away, sucking and spitting it
from his mouth, and driving it away with hands or breath. In extreme cases the shaman must take the malevolent spirit into his or her own body to extract it from the patient. In doing so, the shaman struggles and suffers as he or she fights to overcome the spirit and send it away.

The shaman is often bound in preparation for his or her ecstatic journey to the Upperworld. This practice is found in many cultures across Asia, the Arctic, and North America. The Yakut do it to ensure that the spirits do not carry the soul of the shaman away completely. The host of the ritual prepares two nooses from strong thongs. One end is secured to each of the shaman’s shoulders and the other ends are held by the people present at the ritual.

The shaman’s healing ritual begins in silence with the shaman staring into the fire. He begins to summon his power by putting on his shamanic costume and smoking. A white mare’s hide is spread on the floor by the assistant. The shaman drinks cold water and offers it to the four directions. The assistant throws horsehairs on the fire and then covers the ashes with another hide, bringing the room into complete darkness. The shaman sits down on the mare’s hide and dreams into a light trance summoning the spirits.

The spirits begin to arrive making birds sounds and other noises. There is a faint humming coming from the shaman as he begins to chant. The shaman begins to beat the drum and murmur his song. The singing and drumming rise to a crescendo. The sounds alternate between bird cries and silence several times. As the shaman feels the spirits coming closer, the rhythm of the drumming and singing intensify.

The shaman invokes the help of the ämägät and his helping spirits and resumes drumming and singing with furious intensity. The spirits arrive, sometimes so suddenly and violently that the shaman falls over backwards. Then the audience clash iron cymbals over him, murmuring chants, invocations, and encouragement.

The shaman, filled with the power of the spirits, begins leaping and dancing. The fire is rekindled, and he continues to drum and dance and leap, in a costume hung with thirty to fifty pounds of metal power objects. As he dances he converses with the spirits in many voices. Finally he goes to the patient and summons the spirit who is causing the illness and expels it from the body.

When the malevolent spirits have been expelled, the shaman begins his ecstatic journey to escort the soul of the animal, sacrificed as an offering for the success of the ritual. On returning from this ecstatic journey the shaman asks to be “purified” by fire.

Drum
The most powerful drums are those made from the wood of a tree that has been struck by lightning.

Secret Language of Nature
In the course of his training the novice must learn the secret language that allows him to communicate with the spirits and animal spirits during his rituals. This secret language is learned from a master shaman or directly from spirits. This is the language of all Nature, of all life, from the time when all things were One.

Costume
The costume of the Yakut shaman displays a complete bird skeleton made of iron along with thirty to fifty pounds of other metal power objects. These ornaments create a cacophony of noise during the shaman’s wild ritual dance. These metal objects are all alive. They have a spirit and they do not rust.

Metal bars representing arm bones (tabytala) are arranged along the arms of the caftan. Small metal “leaves” representing the ribs (oilgos timir) are sewn along the sides of the torso. A large round breastplate is worn as well as objects representing the liver, heart, and other internal organs. Images of the sacred animal and bird helping spirits
are attached. A small canoe containing the image of a man, which together represent the “spirit of Madness,” is also attached.

Metal disks are hung on the back of the caftan. One disk represents the Sun. Another, a pierced disk, represents the earth and the central opening the shaman uses to access the Lowerworld. Other objects on the back of the caftan include a lunar crescent and an iron chain representing the shaman’s power and resistance.

The costume of the transformed shaman consists of a woman’s jacket made of the skins of fowl and a white ermine cap.

According to Yakut legend, there were shamans who really flew into the sky not long ago. The **power animal** flew across the sky first, followed by the shaman’s drum, and finally the shaman dressed in his or her costume hung with iron. These shamans, the great shamans, were said to be serious, possess tact, above all to possess humility. In the spirit of his or her great power, these shamans were not presumptuous, proud, or ill-tempered. In their presence, one could feel both the awareness of power and compassion toward others. See also [altered states of consciousness](#); [ash](#); [black and white shamans](#); [Buryat](#); [death and dying](#); [gender variant](#).


**Yapaitu**

**Yapaitu** is a Wintun word for a spirit from the hills or from Nature. The yapaitu, along with the **lehs**, can become a helping spirit for a shaman. The yapaitu is formless and rarely seen; its presence is felt by the shaman.


**Yayatü Society**

(Also: yayaat) One of two curing societies among the Hopi, the other being the Poswimkya. The shamans of this society acquire the powers of healing and the mastery of fire from Hawk. Corn fetishes called *yaya*, or *iärriko*, are used in the rituals and ceremonies performed by this society. *Yaya* are made only by shamans following a precise ritual process that involves eagle and parrot feathers the latter of which can only be acquired from Mexico. The *yaya*, sacred power objects, are placed on the altar during rituals and ceremonies. See also Poswimkya Society and [sacred](#).


**Yi dam**

The second soul of the human multiple soul that resides in the heart. In Tamang bompo (shamans) this soul contains all the mantras and healing knowledge the bompo has gained in his or her lifetime. At death, the bompo passes the yi dam on to his or her best apprentice, who is usually within the family. If there is no apprentice or family member, the yi dam is passed on to an unsuspecting but worthy candidate.

The yi dam of a shaman is more an aspect of the shamanic lineage extending from the First Shaman deity, Nara Bön Chen, than it is simply the personal spirit of the human shaman. It is a primordial source of shamanic power that works through the human it inhabits. For that human, the yi dam functions like the tutelary or guardian spirits found in other shamanic traditions.
The Tamang consider the *yi dam* an inner guru (teacher). The *yi dam* teaches through possession, causing the initiate to shake violently, bounce, and often speak incoherently. Apprenticeship with a human guru helps the initiate learn to receive instruction from the *yi dam*, allowing it to reveal new things throughout the years of training and the entirety of the *bompo*’s life. See also knowledge and multiple soul belief.


**Yomuse**

(Also *yommüse*, *yomta* [Miwok]) The most common Maidu term for shaman. Maidu *yomi* are divided into three groups relative to the spirits who empower them. There are valley *yomi*, foothill *yomi*, and mountain *yomi*. The techniques and procedures of these groups vary slightly.


**Yopo**

*Yopo* is a hallucinogenic snuff made from the ground seeds, or beans, of *Anadenanthera peregrina*, a mimosa-like tree growing in the open grasslands of the tropical zones of the Orinoco region and the adjacent Amazon River basins of South America. The flat, thin, round, glossy-black seeds occur in rough, woody pods called “Beans of the Hekula Spirits.”

The most intense use of *yopo* is found among the Waiká, living in southern Venezuela and the adjacent parts of northern Brazil. The Waiká use the snuff daily, blowing enormous amounts of it into each others nostrils through long tubes made from the stems of plants. The Waiká explain that *yopo* originated in the beginning in the spirit world when the Sun created various beings to function as intermediaries with humankind. The Sun kept *yopo*, one of those intermediaries, in its navel where the Daughter of the Sun found it. The Daughter of the Sun took *yopo* and gave it to humankind.

*Yopo* is so valuable as an intermediary with the spirit world that highland peoples, who live in regions where *Anadenanthera* does not grow, trade for it with people of the tropical lowlands. There is evidence that *Anadenanthera* was cultivated outside of its natural range in the past. It was also grown in the West Indies centuries ago, where the snuff is called *cohoba* by the Taino people of that region.

*Yopo* snuff is believed to have been in wider use prior to the conquest by the Spaniards in South America. Evidence of *yopo* use is found among Chibchan and Muisca tribes as far west as the Colombian Andes and to the east by all the peoples of the upper Orinoco.

There are two species of *Anadenanthera* that provide hallucinogenic snuff. The second species, *Anadenanthera colubrina*, grows in southern South America where the snuff, called *vilca*, *huielca*, and *sebil*, was used by the indigenous peoples of Argentina and southern Peru in pre-colonial times. The Inkan shamans are reported to have added *vilca* to their *chicha* for divination. The Mashco of northern Argentina continue to smoke the seeds and snuff the powder today.

**Use**

*Yopo* is snuffed by the *payé* (shaman) to induce trance states that enable the *payé* to communicate with the *hekula* spirits to divine information, diagnose illness, prescribe remedies, perform healings, and to protect the tribe against epidemic diseases.

In some cultures or tribes *yopo* is snuffed by all adult males, like the Waiká, for example. *Yopo* is also used by hunters to make themselves and their dogs more alert. It is sometimes taken as a daily stimulant, as it is by the Guahibo people.
Yopo

Preparation
Yopo is prepared from the ground seeds, or beans, of *Anadenanthera peregrina* of the bean family. There is a great deal of variation in the preparation of *yopo* from one tribe to another and from one area to another within tribes. Generally speaking, the beans are moistened and rolled into a paste or toasted dry before being ground into a powder. The resulting gray green powder is usually mixed with an alkaline plant ash or lime from snail shells. Other plant admixtures are never added.

In one traditional preparation, the Maypure gather and break open the pods of *Anadenanthera*, soak the beans in water, and allowed them to ferment until they turned black. This process softens the beans so that they can be kneaded into cakes with cassava flour and lime from snail shells. The cakes are allowed to dry and then ground into powder when the snuff was needed.

In a different traditional preparation the Guahibo gather the seeds of *Anadenanthera*, roast them, and then grind them into powder with a wooden platter and pestle. The resulting snuff was stored in a container fashioned from the leg-bone of a jaguar. The snuff is blown into the nostrils through a Y-shaped tube made from the leg bones of a long-legged bird, like a heron.

Active Principle
The psychoactive constituents in *yopo* are tryptamine derivatives, which belong to the class of indole alkaloids including open carbon chain derivatives, dimethyltryptamine (DMT) and bufotenine, and the closed carbon chain derivatives, 2-methyl- beta-carboline and 1,2-dimethyl-6-methoxytetrahydro-beta-carboline. The active constituents of A. peregrina and A. colubrina are the same and equally psychoactive.

Ritual of Receiving the Plant Spirit, or Plant Medicine
The Waiká *payé* begins by chanting to the Hekula spirits into the ritual so that they are available to communicate with those who enter a *yopo* induced trance state. Long tubes of plant stems or animal bone are used to blow the *yopo* into each of the receiver’s nostrils.

After an initial period of head pain and muscular contortion, the *payé* rises to dance, chant, and shriek as he continues to call in the Hekula spirits. When the spirits are present and the *payé* can proceed with the divination, healing, or other purpose of the ritual.

Characteristics of the Induced Altered State
Immediately after the snuff is administered, the face contorts and the muscles, especially of the upper body, tremble or spasm. In this phase *yopo* causes muscular twitches, slight convulsions, and a lack of muscular co-ordination, followed by nausea. Within approximately five minutes, the pain gives way to an ecstatic trance state filled with visions of the spirit world.

This phase of trance, which lasts from thirty to sixty minutes, can involve dancing and chanting punctuated by violent actions and shrieks as the individual calls on the hekula spirits for communication. This activity gives way to a third phase of deep trance or sleep filled with visions which continue for some time.

Songs and Dances
The *payé*’s chants are an essential part of working with *yopo*. The chants are used to call in the Hekula spirits so that they will make themselves available the people in trance who are seeking connection and communication. See also altered states of consciousness; Andes, South America; entheogen; plant hallucinogens; plant medicines.

Yualai
(Also Yualayi, Euahlayi) Aboriginal people of New South Wales, Australia. Male shamans are selected from initiated young men who have shown innate skills and an inclination toward the profession during childhood. For their shamanic initiation they are taken by older shamans to a grave where they are bound and left for several nights. As soon as the initiate is alone, several animals appear and touch and lick him. Then a spirit man appears with a stick that he thrusts into the initiate’s head, creating a hole into which he puts a magical stone the size of a lemon. Then spirits appear to teach him the healing songs of the art.

Baiami, the Creator of the first man, is held to be the source of the magical crystal inserted in the shaman's head. Baiami detaches fragments of crystal from his throne in the Sky and throws the fragments of crystal down to earth. The crystals are believed to be solidified light and are the source of the shaman’s power. Baiami performs the initiation of some young men by sprinkling them with liquefied quartz crystal, which is absorbed into the body, charging the initiate with sacred power.

After initiation the new shaman is connected to his individual helping spirit, or yunbeai, who assists the shaman in his profession. Any injury to the yunbeai hurts the shaman, therefore there are strict taboos against hunting or eating one’s yunbeai in ordinary reality. When in danger the shaman can shapeshift into the yunbeai.

Yualai shamans also have a minggah, or spirit tree. The most powerful shamans also have goomah, or spirit stones. A shaman’s yunbeai may dwell in the minggah or the goomah as well as any other spirit friendly to the shaman. When the shaman needs the assistance of the spirits dwelling within these objects, he or she either goes to the tree or stone where they exist in nature or travels to them in spirit in the dreamtime. Both tree and stone provide a place of refuge for the shaman in times of danger, however the goomah is a more powerful sanctuary. See also shapeshifting.


Yupa
Yupa is a Wintun word that means to speak from trance. It refers to the prophetic speech of shamans, whose helping spirit speaks through them when they are in a deep embodiment trances during ritual. Yupa distinguishes the shaman’s altered state of consciousness during sacred ceremonies from his or her ordinary state of consciousness.

When the Wintun shaman makes a diagnosis or speaks about the subject in hand he or she is an ordinary state of consciousness that includes a general communication with his or her helping spirits. This is distinguished from the shaman’s deep trance states used during healing and other sacred rituals.


Yup’ik
The Yup’ik are a whaling people of southwestern Alaska who reside primarily in the Kuskokwim and Yukon river deltas, along the Bering Sea and Norton Sound coasts. The Yup’ik language and some aspects of the culture have survived over time. However, the shamanic practices, in particular Agayuliyararput—the highly visible masked dancing rituals, were ruthlessly
eradicated by Christian missionaries during the nineteenth century.

Agayuliyarput means "our way of making prayer," which is the function of this masked dancing ritual. Specifically, Agayuliyarput was danced to open a connection with the spirit world to express particular needs and concerns and to ask for help. These intense and dramatic dances were serious spiritual undertakings and always expressed with joy.

The masks were conceived of by the angalkuq (angakok or shaman) who saw the masks in dreams or visions. New masks were created each year according to the angalkuq's vision. They were carved from wood, painted, and decorated in ways rich in Yup'ik symbolism.

These masks were often ugly, at times made from the head of an actual animal. Red and blue were used to denote the masks of spirits or angalkuqs. Round mouths usually indicated spirit mouths. A small human face anywhere in the mask represented the spirit within the central figure. Angalkug masks were sometimes created with background boards that presented the central figure in the context of land, air, or water.

Concentric hoops on a mask denote the Eskimo universe, composed of five Upperworlds and earth. An animal in the mouth of a mask expressed the wish for abundant food. A hand with a cutout hole expressed the wish for continuing abundance in the food supply. The intent of the creator of the mask was not to make a realistic mask, but to convey a vision or idea.

The masks embodied the vision of the things the people were asking for from the spirit world, like animals to hunt, good weather, the power for a particular healing, or intercession in other human affairs. Common masks were animals, such as the loon or seal, ellangaut (representations of the universe), and Ancestral spirits from the myths of the Yup'ik.

The angalkug was a central figure in the dance rituals. He often danced in masks created to embody his tuunra (torngraq or helping spirits). The powers of the tuunrat enable the angalkuq to help the community by seeing into the future, curing illness, and communicating with the spirits beings of the visible and invisible worlds.

New masks were presented by the angalkuq and danced at the rituals. The angalkuq explained the new mask's meaning from his vision and the purpose for its creation. After dancing the new masks the ritual process was closed by burning the powerful masks or leaving them in a sacred way on the tundra away from the village.


Yuwipi

The yuwipi is a traditional healing ritual performed by Lakota shamans. The yuwipi ritual is a form of the Spirit Lodge or shaking tent ritual common in North America. The name yuwipi, from the Dakota language, refers to the binding and wrapping of the practitioner before he or she enters trance.

The ritual is performed in a dark space, traditionally a tent or a room in a house or lodge. The space is cleansed and made sacred by the shaman in accordance with the shaman’s traditions and helping spirits. This usually involves the formal exhibition of the shaman’s power objects within a square, a ritualistic pattern honoring the four cardinal directions common to practices in the Northern Plains.

The yuwipi is attended by members of the community who will support the shaman’s trance by singing sacred songs and drumming. After everyone has entered the sacred space and settles, the patient is brought in. The drummer begins and the community joins in the singing. When the shaman is prepared to enter more deeply into trance, he or she is bound and the last
light extinguished. In total darkness the shaman begins to pray out loud. The prayer becomes a trance-like song that continues for a long time. The community sings and drums periodically alternating this with prayer.

The shaman speaks the last prayer and the room becomes silent. Into the silence emerges the sounds and sensations of the animal spirits that have been summoned to help the sick. With their help the shaman works to heal the sick. When the shaman signals that the ritual is over, the lights are turned on and the shaman is seated free of the blanket and bindings, now arranged neatly before him.

The yuwipi is differentiated from other Spirit Lodge performances by the intricate ritualism with which the ceremonial paraphernalia is laid out and by the offerings of blood sacrifice. Slices of flesh and skin cut out of the arms, usually of women, and made into offerings to the spirits was a traditional part of important Plains rituals. Today the yuwipi is also distinguished by the use of a square room or cottage instead of a tent.

A summarized account of a Lakota yuwipi ritual follows:

The yuwipi is formally requested with the offering of a ceremonial pipe to the shaman. The shaman accepts the request by accepting the pipe, lighting and smoking it. The shaman then instructs those who wish to participate to pray and to believe in the spirits without doubt. Those who cannot suspend doubt, or whom the shaman expects cannot, are asked to leave.

Those who remain prepare themselves by cleansing in a steam bath followed by rubbing sweetsage seeds on their head and arms. The shaman takes a seat in the center of the room on a bed of sagebrush, enclosed in a square defined by a string of 147 prayer ties (small red cloth bags filled with tobacco). The shaman arranges his power objects, creating an alter within the square and begins to smudge the space with dried sage. The drummers begin to drum and sing.

The young woman who will make the blood sacrifice steps forward onto the blanket facing west. The shaman strokes her left arm with sagebrush to cleanse it and prays over her. The drums thunder and the people sing. Using a razor the shaman cuts thin slices of skin and flesh from the girl's upper arm, leaving wounds that bleed profusely. The same process is repeated, taking a blood sacrifice from an older woman, often the shaman or shaman's wife. The flesh of the two women is collected in a little gourd and placed on the altar as an offering to the spirits.

The shaman is stripped to the waist, hands bound tightly behind his back, and wrapped then in a blanket that is secured from neck to feet with a second rope. As the shaman is bound he begins to sing and call on his helping spirits to come. Assistants cover the shaman's face and place face down on the floor. The last lights are extinguished.

The drumbeat changes and the tempo becomes faster and faster inducing the shaman's deep trance state. The singing and drumming have built to an intensity at this point. Nonetheless, a rattle can be heard in the midst of the turmoil, moving around the room approximately two meters in the air. The drums and singing stop. The spirits have arrived.

The spirits are beseeched in prayer by those present who ask for specific cures, care, and protections. With the signal of the shaman's song the drumming and singing may begin again with even more force than before. More spirits arrive, animating objects like drums and rattles and speaking from moving points about the room.

The shaman's voice can also be heard coming from all over the room. The shaman speaks aloud when there are messages from the spirits for the people present. These messages are given in response to the prayers and questions of the participants. Healings are performed through the power of the spirits present. If necessary to heal the patient, the shaman will signal for more...
drumming and call on even more powerful spirits. See also Shaking Tent Ceremony.


Zulu

The Zulu are Bantu-speaking people of the Natal Province of South Africa. They are related to the Xhosa, Nbedele, and other people of southern Africa. The Bantu language is closely related to Xhosa and Swazi with which it forms the Nguni language group.

There are many classes of Zulu practitioners which involve mastery of trance states and other esoteric arts. The imNyanga, sangoma, and sanusi are the three classes, who like the shaman, work in altered states with helping spirits to serve their community. An individual practitioner may serve more than one role as his or her skills evolve over a lifetime.

These practitioners must strive ceaselessly to be ethical in everything they do. They do not practice sorcery or use supernatural powers to attain ordinary human desires. The fate of the tribe or nation may depend upon their discernment. They are accountable for the natural and the supernatural realms, and ultimately to the entire pattern of the universe.

Cosmology

Zulu mythology describes the origins of the continuous battle between dark and light within the human soul. The sangoma helps others to fight this battle. This is the battle that must always be fought and never won. Restoring balance to this dynamic is the basis of the sangoma’s efforts to heal.

In the beginning, the Zulu tell us, nothing existed but the Fertile Darkness, floating on the invisible River of Time. At some moment desire arose in the River of Time for the Fertile Darkness to give birth to something out of nothing. From the fertile nothingness came the spark of consciousness, the Living Fire.

Living Fire was aware; aware that it was alone. From this awareness came the Great Loneliness. All creatures since then share a little of that loneliness, the loneliness that emerges when consciousness sees itself alone in the vastness of everything. In its fury and loneliness, Living Fire began to grow into blazing light in the darkness of Nothingness. And so began the eternal battle of light and dark throughout the universe.

The Wise Ones observe the eternal battle. They know that if Fire and Light were to prevail all living things would die in a roaring universal flame. Conversely, if Darkness and Ice were to prevail all living things would grow cold and stiff until the fire of consciousness ceased to be. Therefore the battle must continue.

The Zulu believe that all life depends on this Great Struggle. Only Unkulunkulu, the Great Spirit of Life, can watch over the Great Struggle and remain calm. The Zulu pray to Unkulunkulu, asking that this one Great Battle go on while all the lesser ones are given up.

Though the Zulu believe in the Great Struggle, they also believe that the earth is meant to be in peace. Their mythology tells of the Great Earth Mother who created four strong brothers to hold up the earth, to maintain peace, and ultimately to live together in harmony. In the land of ice in the north she placed the white brother, in the warm south she placed the black brother, in the west she placed the red brother, and in the east the yellow brother. This is why the sangoma believe that all four races of humans are responsible for the stability and peace for all peoples on the earth.

Tree of Life

Zulu legends tell of the progenitors of humanity traveling from their home in the Cosmos to the Sirius solar system before finally arriving on this earth. The Zulu say that all creatures come from these ancient ancestors, the Amadlozi,
and are, therefore, connected in a great web of life and **evolution**. They believe that we are one human family, in both our origins and our destiny.

**Sima-Kade**, the Zulu **Tree of Life**, is an expression of the Zulu awareness of the connection of all things. *Sima-Kade* means the One who stands for all **time**, who has been standing for all time, and who will continue standing for all time. All people and things are connected to *Sima-Kade* and through *Sima-Kade* they are all connected to each other.

The most ancient time described in the Zulu mythology is *Endelo-ntulo*. It is similar to the Australian **Aboriginal** Dreamtime. It was a time when everything of the Earth was being formed. The rocks were soft and images were made in stone by the Ancestors as messages left for future peoples.

Patterns of **dreaming** were also laid down during *Endelo-ntulo*. These **dreams** contain messages from the Ancestors that still affect the lives of humans today. The Zulu believe that some of these dreams make us crazy and some make us wise. It is one of these ancient dream patterns from the Ancestors that a person experiences when they are called to become a **sangoma**. This dream experience is called **Ukutwasa**.

**The Call—Ukutwasa**

During **Ukutwasa**, animals come to the dreamer, usually four lions or leopards and sometimes crocodiles or serpents. The dreamer is pulled apart and devoured by the animals, as in the **dismemberment** dreams of the shamans of many different **cultures**. After he or she wakes, the dreamer is recognized as **twasa**, an **apprentice** who will begin **training** to become a **sangoma**. The animals who come in **Ukutwasa** become the **sangoma**'s helping spirits.

The **sangoma** is one of many people in Zulu culture who are “called to a destiny they do not desire and are helpless to resist.” The **call** must be followed. For Zulus there is a guiding **power** in life that navigates the human soul through its cycles of reincarnation. This guiding power decides when they are born, in what form, and when they should die. Thus, a recurring theme in Zulu mythology is the acceptance, after great struggle, of a destiny one does not desire and is helpless to resist. This is the fundamental metaphor for the Zulu soul.

**Training**

The **sangoma**'s training is a highly ordered, strictly regulated, process. Candidates must work their way up through twelve stages, or ranks. In each stage they learn to work with one of twelve “vessels” or types of spirits. Few **sangoma** succeed in mastering the twelfth and final stage.

Traditionally the **sangoma** is a woman. However, there are male **sangoma**, many of whom are **gender variant** or **transformed shamans**.

The **twasa** must learn the tribal and community history, mythology, and ceremonies while engaged in a strict regime of personal **healing** and **purification**. The **twasa** must also learn the esoteric skills necessary to perform **divination** and the **diagnosis** of illness, witchcraft, sorcery; design and lead healing **rituals**, retrieve lost soul parts, prepare herbal **medicines**, control the **weather**, foretell the future, and interpret dreams. He or she must also learn to enter into **embodiment** trance states with helping spirits, to exercise **tokoloshe** (ghosts), and to counteract **tagati** (hexes).

**Trance**

**Umbilini** is the primal source of the **sangoma**'s power. Like the kundalini of Indian traditions, the **umbilini** is experienced like a snake of **energy** that lies coiled in the pelvis of the practitioner. Through its arousal the **sangoma** enters an altered state for divination, diagnosis, and healing.

The **sangoma** works with the **drum** or meditation and proper breathing to arouse the **umbilini**. While drumming the **sangoma** experiences the **umbilini**
heating, rising up the spine, and bursting through the top of the head. In this energetic state, the sangoma is able to call upon the hidden powers of his or her soul to join with the great powers and helping spirits of the unseen world.

The sangoma’s goal in entering trance is to draw knowledge from “the Hidden Lake,” a huge unseen lake in the spirit world where all the knowledge of the universe, past, present, and future, is found.

In some situations Zulu practitioners use suffering and prolonged fasting to arouse the umbilini. At other times it is more appropriate to enter trance through happiness and ecstasy. In these situations drumming or meditation is used with food and water taken sparingly.

**Plant Hallucinogens**

Two plant species of *Helichrysum* may be used by Zulu shamans to induce trances. *Helichrysum* is a tall, erect, branching herb with a strong scent that can be smoked. The active principles of these plants have not been determined, though coumarine and diterpenes have been reported from the genus.

**The Soul**

The healing practices of the sangoma are based on the Zulu awareness of the soul. The Zulu believe the human soul is an integral part of the Universal Self (God) and that human souls came into being when God created Itself. Therefore, humans exist because God exists.

The human soul is shaped like the person it embodies. It is made out of a spirit substance (the *ena* soul) which contains a transparent sphere (the *moya* soul). The sphere contains two worm-like creatures, a red creature of evil impulses and a blue creature of good impulses. The red and blue creatures move, dance, and struggle with each other ceaselessly.

Each individual is perpetually involved in the Great Struggle, in creating balance between good and evil within the *moya*. This balance is essential for a soul to exist, because both perfect goodness and perfect badness would bring on the premature demise of the soul.

The Zulu believe that women have three souls and men have two. The *moya* is the first, the immortal human soul of men and women. It can be reborn in any form. The *ena* is the second, the mortal human soul, or self. The *ena* is created anew each time the *moya* takes a new form. Therefore a human *ena* is created in a human incarnation and an animal *ena* in an animal incarnation. After the death the *moya* reincarnates while the *ena* wanders the Earth for a bit and then dissipates.

The *ena* soul develops anew in each incarnation to help humans survive by bringing back messages of guidance and warning from the future. The *ena* is able to leave the body and fly through the air, female souls on transparent wings and male souls hovering. Through this soul flight the essence of a person can go out into the future and experience things before the body does. If the future event would be best avoided, the soul can speak to the person, usually through a dream, so that the person can make the choices necessary to avoid creating that future event.

For this reason the Zulu place a high value on heeding and attending to their dreams. Dreams are one of the few senses that humans have not lost that allow them to receive messages from enas. Relearning to use the lost senses is an important part of the sangoma’s training.

After death the *ena* dissipates unless it is nourished with the prayers, thoughts, and the offerings of the living. Therefore, ancestral enas are nourished by their descendants. These enas are consulted in times of trouble and serve as intermediaries between the living and the spirit world. Ancestral spirits are the primary helping spirits of the sangoma. If not nourished, these enas pass into non-existence and a valuable means of communication with the spirit world is lost.
Illness

From the Zulu perspective both physical and mental illnesses are caused when a disruption in some power, or powers, of the universe occurs. This disruption tips the balance of the Great Struggle within the moya of the patient. The sangoma's responsibility is to determine what power is disrupted and how to restore balance and harmony again.

Once the cause and the means of healing have been diagnosed, the sangoma will take action to aid the healing. Some diseases will be considered physical and treated as such. Other diseases will be considered non-physical and treated as the result of disembodied, living entities. Usually these entities begin to devour human souls when the individual's fear has thrown the entity out of balance.

For non-physical diseases, the offending entities must be extracted. However, treatment is not limited to the sangoma's extraction work. For both physical and non-physical diseases treatment may involve sacrifices, physical preparations of herbs or foods, as well as amulets or other power objects that work on both the physical and non-physical levels to aid healing.

Healing

The sangoma uses divination, usually with dingaka bones, to diagnoses illness and to determine the source of the disruption of power. A second divination determines the means necessary to restore harmony and balance to the patient and all forces involved. The sangoma works in one or more of a variety of ways: malevolent spirits are removed and returned to their appropriate place, offerings are made to pacify or propitiate offended nature spirits, lost souls are retrieved, or mundane issues of diet, blockages in the body, or good breathing are addressed.

Medicines

The sangoma may apply any number of medical or magical remedies. Medical remedies include herbs, roots, seeds, minerals, and the bodies of ground insects. Therapies include massage, herbal teas, salves, snuffs, and poultices. Magical remedies include smoke, eggs for extracting harmful energies, ritual, and occasionally animal sacrifices.

Extractions or Exorcisms

At times direct spiritual intervention is necessary, for example when a person is possessed by a particularly malevolent or energetic disembodied spirit. In this case sangomas work together to conduct a healing ceremony which usually involves an animal sacrifice, because blood is usually necessary to placate disruptive spirits. When the offending spirit is finally exorcised the air fills with a terrible stench, followed by smoke or a dark cloud.

Soul Damage and Loss

Some illnesses are caused by a weakening of the soul. The moya is believed to inhabit parts of the body, like organs or joints. The sangoma can heal by working with the moya where it inhabits the body. There is also a state of mind that aligns with the moya in each part of the body. The sangoma can work with the specific part of the moya that he or she feels is weakened in the patient, through the body part or the associated mental state.

A more serious wasting illnesses or death can be caused by soul loss. People are very vulnerable to opportunistic illnesses when they have lost a part of their soul. The soul is sensitive to many experiences which can all result in soul loss.

People can lose parts of their soul accidentally or by the actions of others. Individuals can, knowingly or unknowingly, capture parts of a person's soul through insensitivity, disparaging attitudes, or disbelief in Zulu cultural values. The soul can also be damaged or stolen through projections of evil (sorcery) or hatred.

The sangoma must determine the cause of the loss and location of the lost soul. The sangoma moves into a trance state to perform a soul retrieval ritual. The sangoma recovers the lost
soul and reattaches it to the patient's body. In cases that involve sorcery, the sangoma may have to use magic to battle the sorcerer for the return of the patient's soul.

**Creativity**

The Zulu believe that to be creative is to heal. A whole community can be healed by creating something beautiful nearby, like a shrine, sacred hut, or stack of standing stones. The Zulu have pursued art in all forms for many generations to cultivate the healing power of creativity. The sangoma pursues art, writing and all forms of communication between humans. To be a traditional Zulu healer is to be able to communicate with people on all levels in all possible ways.

**Storytelling**

Storytelling is another tool of traditional Zulu healers. A story is considered a very important thing, a means of instruction, healing, and enlightenment. Sharing a story is also a way of showing the deepest friendship to another.

**Dreams—Preventative Medicine**

The Zulu believe that the future can be changed because it is no more static than the present. One action today can initiate a whole series of actions in the future and one action avoided today, can stop a series of future actions.

This allows for a kind of preventative medicine. The ena soul can go voluntarily into the future, through the performance of certain rituals, to learn of something that is yet to happen. When the ena returns to the present with this knowledge, action can be taken avoid harm and disease.

**Divination Tools**

Dingaka bones: Zulu divination is the art of casting and interpreting divining bones, or dingaka. They are used to divine the answers to questions of all kinds including the diagnosis of illness and prescription of treatment. Once the question is formulated, the dingaka are cast. The position of each bone, the interrelationship of the bones, the overall pattern, and any unique relationships patterns all contribute to the meaning of the answer.

The four dingaka bones are found during the sangoma's apprenticeship. The sangoma and sanusi may continue throughout his or her lifetime to collect meaningful bits of seashell, animal bones, and bits of ivory to add to their set of “bones.”

Divinations of extreme importance whose answers will affect life and death are performed in several different places. The same question is asked in each of three locations. The dingaka are cast indoors, outdoors, and at a sacred cave or mountain top. If the indications are the same at each place the answer is considered highly reliable.

**Instruments**

Drum:

There are many roles for the drum in Zulu life and many different drums. Special drums are used only for worship and ritual. These drums are cared for by “Drummers of High Honor.” When they have deteriorated beyond repair, these drums are buried with the full honors given a chief. These drums are created by the master woodcarver and are decorated with the continuous pattern of the Eternal River of Time flowing around them.

The sangoma uses the drum to aid in divination and entering altered states. The drum may be played by the sangoma or the sangoma's assistant, depending on the complexity of the ritual. The drumbeat creates a barrier of impenetrable noise. Inside this barrier, the sangoma enters a trance state and focuses the powers of his or her mind on a single point, be it the answer to a question or an act of healing.

Flute: Sangomas also play flutes. These flutes are very loud. The voice of the flute is sometimes added to the barrier of sound created by the drum to support the sangoma's journey or divination.
Costume
Generally, the sangoma and twasa, wear brightly colored robes for ritual and ceremony. The dress depends on rank and the level of initiation within a rank. In ancient times sangoma wore blankets of animal skins that have been replaced today with heia cloth. The different patterns in the heia have different symbolic meanings.

A female sangoma wears a long, wool, beaded wig which denote her humility before the Universal spirits, a headband denoting the purity of her thoughts, a leopard skin skirt showing her courage and honesty, and sometimes a red blouse symbolizing her readiness to sacrifice in service of her people.

Male sangoma adopt the distinctive beaded wig and attire of their female counterparts.

Helping Spirits
The Amadlozi, the Ancestral spirits, are the primary helping spirits.

Totem animals are connected to people by tribe. The whole tribe observes taboos against eating or harming their totem animal. Totem animals are usually animals familiar to the region in which the people live.

Trickster
The Zulu people believe that it is wise to remember that creation is not perfect and that we are all prone to mistakes. Therefore, heroes who are also fools and the trickster are much loved teachers. Kintu is the hero-fool and the tales of his escapades with the people are many. In the animal kingdom Mpungushe, the jackal, is a trickster. He is the eater of dung whose keen nose finds the trails that are invisible to humans. He is loved for stealing fire from the village of the gods to warm the first humans. Anansi, the spider, also a trickster, weaves the web of creation which is full of many tricks.

Writing
The Zulu have an ancient system of writing consisting of notches called coolu or igamm. This system is very similar to the ogham writing system of the Celtic people of the British Isles.

Supernatural Senses
Traditional Zulus believe all humans possess twelve natural senses, seven senses beyond the basic five. Examples of these senses are to foresee future events, to move consciousness outside of the physical body at will (usually in times of crisis), and the ability to influence objects, like the roll of dice. Sharing information about these senses outside of the Zulu people is still bound in secrecy.

Song of the Stars
The mythology and history of the Zulu people, like other African peoples, are full of descriptions of stars and planets, of the intelligent beings that belong to the stars, and of how these beings have interacted with humans and animals. The black people of South Africa possess amazing knowledge that has been handed down generation to generation about the Cosmos and our solar system. For example, the Zulu have always known that the earth orbits the sun.

Part of the sangoma’s responsibility is to pass this information to the next generation. It is also the sangoma’s responsibility to be prepared for first contact with a variety of different beings from the stars.

A song of the sangomas says, “There shall arise out of the ashes of man, a newer man who shall rule the far stars, carrying with him the seven laws of love; and that the first and the greatest law of God—doing unto others as you would have them do to you—will be the law of that time. Then humanity can stand fearlessly and joyfully before the Universe, with love in his heart, and be welcomed home as a long-lost child.” See also altered states of consciousness; costume; dreamtime; exorcism; Ngungi, the Crippled Smith; plant hallucinogens.


*Zuñi Man-Woman*

See *Hlamana*. 
Bibliography


Bibliography


Bibliography


Bibliography


Bibliography


aboriginal, 1, 10, 28–37, 44, 59, 64, 109, 132, 142, 149, 176, 179, 187, 252, 254, 273, 277, 298, 303, 308–309, 351, 358, 361, 390, 410, 414, 453, 467, 487, 498, 503, 524, 540, 545, 555, 560

abstinence, 28, 47, 140, 333, 417, 439, 441, 479, 521

abuse of power. See power, abuse of

achnucek, 1, 60–61. See also gender variant and shopan

Achterberg, Jeanne, 454

Achuar, 1, 309, 358

acupuncture, 251, 370, 397

Afghanistan, 464

Africa, 1–2, 9, 27, 60, 62, 64, 75, 109, 122, 134, 137, 154, 158, 175, 201, 218, 245, 248, 283, 303, 310, 319, 327, 362, 365, 391–392, 399, 413–414, 433, 448, 455, 480, 500, 509, 530, 534, 541, 559, 564. See also Bwiti; Dagara; Ju|'hoansi; Zulu

aghula, 2, 3, 133. See also Yup’ik

ahau, 17–20, 472, 533

!aia, 246–249


aka, 3, 194, 546. See also Hawaii

Alaska, 5, 60, 166, 225, 233, 292, 511, 555

Alaskan, 1, 3–5, 23, 140, 420, 421, 438, 511, 516. See also angakok and torngraq

alcohol, 3, 39, 42, 69, 78, 106, 120, 175, 210, 276, 328, 340, 378, 383, 388, 458, 498

Aleut, 1, 3, 60, 438, 496

Algonquian, 5, 193, 256, 284, 300–301, 318, 331–332, 533


alpha waves, 67, 454

Altai, 5–6, 71. See also Buryat (Buriat)


alternate states of consciousness, 8, 75–76, 203, 314, 353, 428, 440, 501

alto mesayoq, 8, 302, 382

alyha, 8–9, 61. See also berdache (berdach)

Amadlozi, 414, 420, 520, 559, 564

amanita muscaria, 9–11, 177, 235, 261, 372, 395, 447, 452. See also entheogen
Amaringo, Pablo, 48
Amazon rain forest. See Amazonia
Amazon River, 11, 175, 553
ambil, 13, 29, 495–496
ametra, 13.
See also plant medicines
amnesia, 302, 374, 504
amulet, 4–5, 13, 23, 65, 165, 167, 189, 312, 340, 384, 497, 516, 562. See also charm; fetish; medicine
anacondas, 12, 47, 107, 366, 391, 417–440, 442, 534
Anadenanthera, 109, 289, 553–554
anakua, 13–14, 22, 166. See also qaumanEq
analgesics, 21, 46, 134, 333
Anazazi, 141
ancient China, 15–16, 133, 437, 472, 544
ancient Maya, 16–21, 118, 509. See also Hopi Prophecy and Mesoamerica
Ancient Ones, 14, 57, 348, 489
Aneglakya, 21–22
angakoq, 23. See also angakok
angaqoq. See angakok
Anglo-Saxon, 23–25, 404, 546
Anishinabe, 26, 332
Anishinabeg. See Ojibwa
ants, 31, 386
Anukite ihanblapi, 26, 266–267
Apache, 59, 325
aphrodisiacs, 219
Arabs, 1
Arapaho, 184, 196–197, 506
Aranda. See Arunta
Araucanians. See Mapuche
Arctic, 13, 22–23, 27, 150, 163, 185, 213, 222, 228, 233–234, 384, 408, 420–421, 444, 468–467, 497, 511, 551
Arctic shamanism, 27, 185
Argentina, 38, 302, 318, 523, 553
Arnhem Land, 34, 254
Arrien, Angeles, 473
art, 17, 19, 27–28, 48, 79, 90, 100, 109, 131, 150, 164, 185, 193, 212, 261, 319, 322, 325, 342, 374, 399, 410, 417, 432, 462, 480, 494, 509, 530, 547, 563
Arunta (Aranda), 28–29, 117
arutam, 29, 439–442, 450
Aryans, 9, 395, 452
ascension, 19–20
ash, 13, 29, 108, 162, 208, 496, 554
Ashe, Geoffrey, 177
Assiniboine, 60, 203
Association of Tuvan Shamans, 517
astronomy, 195, 298
Athabascan, 10, 61, 140, 147
atnongara stones, 28, 29–30, 117
atomic bomb, 208, 298
atropine, 69–70, 136, 202–203, 284
auditory driving. See sonic driving
Aumakua, 194–195, 251
Avá-Chiripá, 38–43, 149, 318, 463, 488
Avá-Katú-Etí, 38–43
Avebury, 83
ayahuascero, 21, 49–50, 119, 527
B
bad medicine, 53
Badoh Negro, 53, 310
baho. See paho
Baiami, 34, 53, 253–254, 540, 545–546, 555. See also karadji
Bai Ulgen, 6, 72–73
bala, 53, 545. See also helping spirits and Wurunjerri
Bali, 293, 368, 486
balian, 53–54, 55–56, 321, 372
banisteriopsis, 44–46, 48, 54, 71, 419
Banjhakri, 54, 55, 481–482, 485.
See also Nepal
Banjhakrini, 54–55. See also dismemberment
banzie, 75, 219
Barasana, 55
barrows, 83
basir, 53–54, 55–56, 321, 372
Bear ceremonialism, 56–57
Bear Society, 425
bees, 246, 335, 452
Belize, 16, 295
belladonna, 57, 136–137. See also Deadly Nightshade and hexing herbs
bells, 65, 128, 206, 260, 450, 523
Beltaine, 93, 98–99, 270, 403
berdache (berdach), 57–61, 157, 184, 197, 212, 266, 268, 274, 324, 389, 496, 522, 536–537
Berendt, Hoachimn–Ernst, 463
Bes, 61
beta waves, 67, 454
See also evolution and Kosmos
Bird-of-Prey-Mother, 230, 549
black and white shamans, 62–63, 74, 365, 444, 512, 550
blackbirds, 87
Blackfoot, 5, 500
black magic, 35, 45, 129–131
black shamans. See black and white shamans
blacksmith, 63, 153, 217, 303, 321, 444, 491. See also Siberia
bloodletting, 18–20, 118, 273, 303, 472
bodily fluids, 64, 549
boiling, 175, 194, 232, 246–248, 326, 367, 521
Bolivia, 11, 44, 70, 354, 413, 417
Bön, 64–67, 269, 480
Bön-po, 65, 67, 240, 480
Borneo, 53, 55, 216, 264, 280, 321, 372, 409, 436
Botswana, 263, 413
Bourguignon, Erika, 7
bow (musical instrument), 12–13, 46, 67, 314, 407, 443, 454, 527
bow (weapon), 12, 38, 266, 304, 349, 403, 406, 527, 537
brain waves, 67–68, 152, 454, 493
Bran, 85, 87
Brazil, 11, 38, 44, 48, 78, 161, 232, 318, 354, 410, 419, 463, 504, 523–524, 553
Brighid, 85
Bright Spirit, 544–545
British Columbia, Canada, 457, 460
Brugmansia aurea, 68–70, 134, 289, 353, 418, 439, 495, 509, 527
brujo, 70
Brunfelsia, 45, 70–71
Buddha, 54–55, 434
Buddhism, 64–65, 71, 103, 257, 267, 283–284, 313, 393, 434, 444, 448, 464, 480
Buddhist Abhidhamma, 336
Buffalo Society, 425
bugs, 143, 160, 171, 424, 443
bukkur, 35
bullroarer, 71, 253, 390, 422
bungi. See windigokan
burial, 19–20, 36, 59, 101, 152, 274–275, 324, 331, 481, 496, 507, 518
Buryat (Buriat), 5, 71–75, 138, 178, 304, 365, 444, 515, 523, 548
bushman, 75, 263
butterflies, 441–442
Bwiti, 75–76, 218–220
C

Caapí. See ayahuasca

Cactus, 63, 211–212, 319, 345–346, 348–349, 417–418

caduceus, 77


Call, the. See the Call

Camay, 45–46, 63, 78, 106, 120, 175, 180, 291, 354, 378, 388, 441, 498

Campbell, Don, 314

Campbell, Joseph, 372

Canada, 5, 9–10, 60, 147, 193, 318, 457, 460, 505

Candomblé, 78, 359, 463

Canelos tribe, 387–388, 440–441

cangkdeska wakang, 79, 265. See also shamanic symbols

Cannibal dancers society. See windigokan

cannibalism, 37, 284, 537

Caribbean, 16, 60

caribou, 3, 164, 234, 256, 292, 412

Catal Hüyük, 150

Catawaba, 119

Catholicism, 78, 100, 111, 170, 198, 210, 417, 419, 523

Celts, 23, 79–100, 115, 150, 421, 433, 474, 509–510, 529

Center of the World, 73, 395, 433–434, 508–509, 543

Central America, 16, 134, 151, 210, 219, 295, 303, 310, 317, 434, 475–476, 496, 509

Central Asia, 5, 71, 201, 451, 464


Chacobo, 354

Chac-Xib-Chac, 20, 296

Chaesu gut, 258

Chakara, 370, 409

Chamber mounds, 101, 148, 529

chanjan, 101, 334, 512

chaos, 102, 130–131, 207, 227, 238, 250, 330, 407, 483, 499, 508, 530
charm, 5, 13, 65, 102, 103, 214–215, 217–218, 224, 231, 258–259, 269, 279, 385, 420, 424–426, 480. See also medicine and talisman
cha saman, 282
Cherokee, 57, 117, 119
chesakkon. See djesikon
ch'i (ji, ki), 102–103, 142, 159–160
chicha, 69, 103, 120, 231, 553
Chichimeca, 345
Chickasaw, 119
chickens, 126–127, 206, 297
childbearing, 258, 413
childbirth, 24, 32, 135, 141, 258, 266, 317, 332, 537
child molesters, 462
Chile, 60–61, 273, 285, 289, 433, 479
Chilula, 256
China, 15, 103–104, 142, 158, 176, 204, 281, 303, 320, 359, 390, 434, 472, 544. See also ancient China; Hmong; Manchu
Chinook, 188, 466
Chippewa. See Ojibwa
Choctaw, 119
chòd, 104
Chukchee, 61, 104–105, 183–184, 261, 409, 444, 451, 506–507
churingas, 96, 105
Circled Cross, 81, 83, 85, 91, 96, 433
circumcision, 33, 274–275
clairaudient, 105, 250
clairsentient, 105, 250
clairvoyance, 105, 146, 238, 242, 250, 253, 273, 288, 308, 383, 422, 424, 533, 538
clairvoyant, 105, 238, 250, 383, 422, 424, 533
clan shamans, 282, 444, 512
classical shamanism, 105–106, 448
Cleveland, Grover, 269
clever man, 31, 36, 107, 252, 274, 545–546. See also Australia and making
cloaks, 62, 98, 208, 496
clouds, 83, 94, 191, 209, 337, 349, 434, 449, 536, 562
clowns, 203, 537
coaxihuitl, 107, 333
Coca, 12, 29, 46, 107–109, 120, 231, 327, 381–383, 535
cocks, 484, 486
cohiba, 109, 553. See also plant hallucinogens and yopo
Colombia, 11, 44–45, 55, 61, 68, 70, 119, 161, 488, 528, 553
Columbus, Christopher, 176
Comanche, 59, 345
Common Boundary Magazine, 198
Common Faces, 173
Condor of the South, 338, 384
condors, 338, 384, 387
Confucianism, 15, 103, 183, 257, 293, 464, 544
Congo, 75, 218
Conibo-Shipibo. See Shipibo-Conibo
constellations, 36
containment rituals, 19–20
contemporary shamanism, 109–112, 113, 115, 303, 320
convulsions, 11, 70, 128, 219, 248, 482, 554
Cook, Captain, 195
Copal, 224, 297, 347, 378, 451, 490
Cora, 61, 345, 347
corn, 115, 131, 173, 181, 211, 263, 293, 317, 335, 426, 479, 552
corn pollen, 115, 263, 335, 479
cosmic mountain. See World Mountain
Cosmic Pillar, 115, 444
Cosmic Rope, 434
Cosmic Tree, 115, 433, 444–446, 509. See also Tree of Life
Cosmic Twins, 38, 238
cosmic womb, 465, 542
Costa Rica, 488
Council on Spiritual Practices, 161
country of the dead, 39–41
Cowan, Tom, 97
cowry shells, 129, 144
cows and cattle, 126, 245, 285, 401–402, 477, 489
coyotes, 385, 420, 510
crane bag, 97
creation mythology, 13, 23, 30, 38, 43, 62, 81, 84, 94, 100, 102, 108, 136, 138, 141, 149, 154, 177, 209, 211, 238, 262, 269, 292, 314, 316–317, 345, 373, 393, 395, 433, 445, 462, 534, 546. See also big bang
Cree, 5, 61, 203, 262, 324, 505, 537
Creek, 61, 119, 410
crocodiles, 439, 523, 560
Crow (peoples), 61, 324, 474, 505
crows (birds), 87, 329
Crystal Bridge, 406–407
cupping horn, 119, 223, 473
curaca, 119
curandero, 21, 119, 120, 418
cuy, 119–121, 231
Cuzco, Peru, 231, 386

D
Dagara, 122–131, 154, 160, 171, 175, 188, 309, 319, 358, 376, 412, 433, 438, 510, 534. See also singing
Daime. See ayahuasca and Santo Daime
Dakota, 203, 265, 301, 536, 556
dalang, 131
dass, 134. See also transformed shaman
Datura, 21–22, 51, 68–69, 134–136, 141, 212, 289, 345, 360, 399, 418, 439–440, 495–496. See also altered states of consciousness; Brugmansia aurea; Deadly Nightshade; entheogen; plant hallucinogens
Dauvois, Michel, 454
Dawera, 123, 319
Deadly Nightshade, 137, 202. See also Africa; belladonna; plant hallucinogens; trance
dead shamans, 116–117, 136–137, 230, 362, 408, 447, 451, 491, 513. See also altered states of consciousness and Amazonia
decline in power, 138–139. See also Buryat (Buriat); Middleworld; persecution of shamans; Upperworld
delta waves, 67, 454
Denmark, 9
depossession. See exorcism and extraction
depression, 91, 110, 204, 353, 370, 458, 492–493, 497
Desana, 118
Devil Ceremony, 547
dew eagle. See oshadageaa
digerido, 454, 527
Dineh, 140–141, 193, 317, 449. See also divination; entheogen; gender variant
dingaka bones, 141–142, 415–416, 521, 562–563. See also ancestors; sacrifice; soul loss; twasa; Zulu
direct transmission of spirit, 142. See also altered states of consciousness
disease object, 143, 145, 223, 231, 273, 484, 511, 536. See also extractions and pains
disharmony, 14, 127–128, 142, 151, 205–206, 222, 250, 284, 370, 466, 479, 492, 513
dismemberment, 34, 104, 143–144, 188, 228, 230, 253, 274, 375, 415, 445, 523, 549, 560. See also Siberia
divination tools, 3–4, 24, 97, 117, 129, 130, 139, 144, 259, 270–271, 273, 283, 301, 340, 541, 563
Divine Feminine, 15–16
Divine Oneness, 30–31
Divine Ones, 22
divorce, 458, 462
djesikiwin. See djesikon
djesikon, 145, 242, 308, 427–428, 468. See also Ojibwa
djessakid, 145–146, 223, 308–309, 332, 335, 427. See also djesikon
DMT, 46, 554
DNA, 314, 423
Doctrine of Signatures, 284, 355
dogs, 88, 94, 165, 385, 472, 497, 553
dokos, 146, 539. See also disease object and sorcery
domain, 1, 18, 79, 81, 133, 146, 169, 184, 218, 262, 267, 296, 339
double-headed serpent, 18, 131
Double Woman, 26, 266–267, 537
dragons, 16, 390, 406, 408, 466, 470
dream incubation, 94, 96, 101, 147, 148–149, 399. See also vision quest
dream interpretation, 216–217, 238, 289, 377, 415, 431, 560
dreamtime, 28, 30–37, 53, 105, 107, 148, 149, 210, 253, 263, 268, 273, 275, 310, 316, 322, 390–392, 453, 474, 495, 524, 534, 545–546, 555, 560. See also Australia
dream world, 250–251, 428
drowning, 22, 166, 516
druids, 87, 94, 150, 328–330. See also Celtic and shapeshifting
Drummers of High Honor, 563
dual nature, 152–153, 440–441, 478
dwarf, 12, 24, 77, 153, 223, 511

e
Eagle of the North, 338, 384
Eagle Society, 337, 425
earth, 4, 15, 18, 20–22, 24, 28,

energy body, 106, 159–160, 171–172, 231, 382, 430. See also ch'i (ji, ki); Q'ero; spirit

energy intrusions, 45, 77, 106, 160, 162, 164, 170–171, 231, 268–269, 281, 324, 332, 339, 431, 467, 474, 484, 536, 539. See also cleansing; ritual; sorcery; trance

England, 79–80, 84


Entheogen Project, 161

epená, 13, 29, 161–163, 314, 423, 528. See also altered states of consciousness; chant; cleansing; entheogens; extractions; plant hallucinogens; plant medicines; plant spirits


espantu, 168, 388, 443. See also susto

Estés, Clarissa Pinkola, 473

Eternal River of Time, 563

ethics, 168, 261, 342, 356, 473, 530

Ethiopia, 1–2, 27

Euahlayi. See Yualai

euphoria, 11

Everything person, 182

evolution, 72, 159, 169, 207, 262, 366, 379, 393, 432, 456, 462, 560. See also unio mystica

exorcism, 170, 171, 237, 259, 268, 297, 339, 361, 416, 430–431, 464, 467, 539–540. See also embodiment


F

faeries, 84, 90–92, 100

faith healings, 251

False Face Society, 173–174, 181–182, 191, 237, 252, 424–426. See also ash; diagnosis; embodiment; medicine societies; offering

family shaman, 174, 332, 405, 407–408. See also shamanism

famine, 3, 188, 213, 234, 479


fear, 47, 50, 55, 67, 70, 90, 92, 110–111, 130, 142–143, 168, 178, 222, 227, 230, 243, 248, 250, 261,
Feast of the Dead, 238, 331, 426

Feast of the Dead, 238, 331, 426


Feng Shui, 186

fertility, 48, 85–86, 99, 179, 282, 310, 330, 348, 394, 403, 532

fetish, 5, 102, 175, 214, 224–225, 358, 360, 494, 552. See also charm; embodiment; medicine; talisman

Finland, 9, 105, 405, 475


First Man, 12, 26, 53, 205, 211, 282, 379, 391, 540, 545, 555

First People, 1, 16, 80, 96, 107, 176, 177–178, 285, 302, 317, 332, 351, 405, 449, 534–535. See also First Shaman; Fourth World; North America

First Shaman, 3, 43, 65, 72, 74, 138, 150, 177, 178, 205, 211, 234, 268, 280, 282, 290, 391, 410, 439, 445, 481, 485, 491, 548–549, 552. See also shapeshifting

First World, 179, 543

fioripondio. See Brugmansia aurea

Fly Agaric mushroom, 9, 177–178, 235, 372. See also Rig Veda and Siberia

Folklore Institute of Kyonghi University, 261

Forest, 9, 105, 405, 475

fire, mastery of, 54, 63, 65, 175–176, 223, 241, 244, 254, 282, 288, 307, 367, 425, 533, 539, 541, 552. See also sorcery

Forest Shaman, 54, 79, 178, 481–482. See also Banjhakri

forest spirits, 173, 294

Foundation for Shamanic Studies, 112–113, 178–179, 192, 322, 344, 430, 432. See also Buryat (Burjat); Nepal; shamanic counseling; Tuva

Fourth World, 179, 207–208, 317. See also First People

Fox, 61, 300–301

foxes, 5, 256, 421

frame drum, 61, 66, 74, 90, 150–151, 179, 282, 335, 407, 446

France, 79, 454

free soul, 72, 145, 179–180, 238, 243, 313, 427, 468–469

Freyja, 422–423, 532

fucquay, 180

G

Gabon, 75, 218–219

gagoghsa, 181

gahnohgwahsehnah, 181

Gaia hypothesis, 181

Gaindowane, 181–182

ganohwa, 182

geenumu gesallagee, 61, 182

Gelupa monks, 414

glossolalia, 186–187
Gnosticism, 393
God's Eye. See thread cross
Gofannon, 85
gongs, 204, 206, 260, 303
Goodman, Felicitas, 360
goomah, 187, 555. See also helping spirits
gourds, 210, 291, 348, 391
Grandmother Spider Woman, 546
Great Earth Mother, 392, 559
Great Lakes region, 60, 305, 324, 332, 424
Great Spirit, 256, 275, 491, 559
Greeks, 148, 187
Guarani, 38, 40, 488
guardian spirits, 25, 62, 117, 150, 317, 341, 367, 405, 552
Guatemala, 9, 16, 295, 310, 317, 325, 373, 488, 496
guinea pigs. See cuy

H
Hadigonsashoon, 191, 424. See also Seneca
Hadihiduus, 191. See also medicine; medicine singing; medicine societies
Hadui, 191. See also gagohsa
Haitian, 209, 276, 340, 359, 530–531
Hammer of Thor, 402
Hammerschlag, Carl, 196
hänäsish, 191–192. See also energy intrusions; extraction; ritual
hanblecheya, 192, 266
hanblecheyapi, 192, 266–267
Han dynasty, 258
hanhepi, 192. See also ritual
Hare Wallaby, 453
Harner Method® Shamanic Counseling, 192–193. See also shamanic counseling
Harner, Michael, 112–113, 178, 192, 256, 322, 344, 430, 432
hatáal, 193, 301. See also cleansing
hatááli, 193, 301
hatetsens, 193. See also Iroquois
Hathor, 477
Haudinashone, 193
Hawaii, 61, 193–196, 250–251, 274, 500, 535, 546
Hawaiians, 3, 193–195, 224, 250, 274, 535, 546
hawks, 62, 87, 291, 329, 385, 552
haxu’xan, 60, 196–197
hazelnuts, 81, 83, 87, 97–98
healing, 197–199. See also dance; disease; healing symbol; helping spirits; illness; shaman; soul; power; prayer; ritual; spirit; sweat lodge; training; vision
healing symbol, 197, 199
heartbeat of the earth, 154, 199–200
Heaven, 15, 20, 65, 115, 166, 186, 252, 296, 298, 343, 357, 417, 434, 483, 485, 491, 544
Heine, Heinrich, 314
Heinze, Ruth-Inge, 111
hekula spirits, 553–554
hell, 20, 298
helping spirits, 200–201. See also air, animal spirits; earth; east; elements; embodiment; energy; fire; healing; interdependence; invisible world; journey; metal; nature spirits; north; plant spirits; power animals; ritual; sacrifice; shaman; sky; south; spirit; the call; totem spirits; tutelary spirits; vision; vision quest; water; weather; west
he man eh, 60, 197. See also berdache (berdach)
henbane, 136, 201–202. See also alternate states of consciousness and plant hallucinogens
herbal preparations, 42, 102, 104, 137, 140, 144, 201, 206, 214, 283, 287, 289, 307, 324, 332, 353, 386, 415, 420, 444, 505, 521, 523, 560, 562
Herero, 245
hermaphrodites, 55, 58, 60, 317, 522
Hermes, 510
hesi, 202. See also medicine and medicine societies
heterosexuality, 26, 60, 183–184
hexing herbs, 134, 137, 201, 202–203, 283–284. See also altered states of consciousness and plant hallucinogens
heyóka, 203, 537. See also costume
Hikuri, the Peyote–god, 212, 291, 349
hikwsi, 203
Himalayas, 283, 320
Hinduism, 71, 103, 232, 240, 283–284, 302, 393, 462, 464, 469, 480, 525
Hiroshima, Japan, 298
Hitler, Adolf, 208
Hmong, 204–206, 456, 464. See also apprentice; multiple soul belief; nature spirits; Siberia; soul retrieval
hmuga, 206–207. See also Lakota; shapeshifting; sorcery
Holistic Healing Modalities, 198 holistic medicine, 504
holon, 169, 207
homosexuality, 60, 274, 522
Honduras, 16, 295
Hopi Prophecy, 207–208. See also Hopi symbols; Maya prophecy; purification
Hopi Sinom, People of the Peaceful Path, 207
Hopi symbols, 208–209. See also shamanic symbols
horses, 6, 73–74, 86–87, 151, 173, 209, 266, 276, 286, 289, 304, 403, 412, 446, 515, 519, 551
hot coals, 174–175, 241, 254, 287, 359, 367
houngan, 209–210, 276, 530–531
huaca, 50, 210, 368, 388. See also healing and language
Huichol, 26, 61, 117, 135, 210–213, 239, 289–291, 319, 345–349, 434, 451, 488, 525, 541. See also berdache (berdach); gender variant; plant hallucinogens
Hultkrantz, Åke, 27, 185, 505
hummingbirds, 38, 41, 212, 417
hunting magic, 213–214, 223, 295, 309, 322, 394, 399, 405, 428. See also renewal of life
hunting medicine, 53, 214–215, 420
Hupa, 61, 256
Husk Face Society, 426
huuku, 215
hyenas, 124, 510

I
Iban Dyak, 216–218, 277–280, 372
Iboga, 75–76, 218–220. See also sorcery
i ching, 142, 144, 259
idolatry, 368–369
iikhááh, 141, 221
ilimarneq, 189, 221–222, 497
ilisineq, 222
ilisitoq, 222. See also ilisineq
Illinois, 61, 301
illness, 222–223. See also culture; diagnosis; disease; energy; healing; helping spirits; ritual; shaman; soul loss; spirit intrusion
illness in North America, 223–224, 324
imbalance, 21, 41–42, 64, 122, 126–127, 139, 186, 205, 208, 222, 381, 514
Inca. See Inka
incantations, 24, 94, 102, 214, 224, 284, 287, 465
incense, 104, 224, 260, 340, 347, 485, 490, 518, 525
incest, 164, 325, 364, 458, 528
incorporacion, 225, 302
India, 9, 14, 61, 134, 158, 176, 178, 240, 320, 335, 390, 436, 452, 464, 477, 491, 509
Indianismo, 225
Indians. See Native Americans
Indonesia, 62, 115, 131, 184, 359, 365, 390, 436, 460, 464, 491, 506, 509
induction, 66, 225, 269, 407, 512, 528, 533. See also trance and vehicle
Indus Valley, 9, 395
infertility, 189, 196, 497
Inggerman, Sandra, 460
ingukh, 225
K
Káapoor, 354
Kabbalah, 309, 329, 358, 400, 509
Kachinas, 263, 269,
kahuna, 3, 194–196, 250–252, 369, 500, 546
Kahunas, types of, 196
Kakonsa, 237, 252
Kakonsa, 237, 252.
See also gagohsa
Kakonsa, 237, 252.
Kakonsa, 237, 252.
See also gagohsa
Kahlweit, Holger, 156
Kam, 252, 448, 526
Kamay. See camay
Kamehameha the Great, 369
Kami, 252
Kangaroos, 31
Karadji, 107, 252–255
Karpay, 255, 381
Kashmir, 480
Kauyumari, 210–211, 290–291
Kickapoo, 301
Kitituk, 23, 167, 255. See also Eskimo
Kila, 255–256. See also qilaneq
Kinaroq, 5, 256. See also aghula;
Alaskan; angakok; Eskimo
Kionga, 318, 345
Kirchoff, Paul, 303
Kitchi Manitou, 186, 188, 256. See also manitou
Kitetau, 256
Kitche Maniut. See Kitchi Manitou
Kivas, 301, 338, 434
Klamath, 61, 77, 191
Knowledge, 13, 17, 22, 25–26,
32–33, 35, 40, 71, 77, 80–82, 85,
87, 90, 92–95, 98, 105, 107, 111,
119, 122, 125, 141, 150, 154, 161,
166–167, 174, 177–178, 184, 186,
188, 194, 199, 209–210, 226, 232,
234, 236, 242, 245–246, 250–251,
254–255, 256–257, 262, 270, 273,
276, 287, 290–291, 297, 302–303,
305–307, 312, 316, 321, 323, 328,
330, 332, 338, 349–350, 353–356,
358, 360–363, 380–383, 385, 387,
402, 405, 410, 415, 421, 432–433,
439, 442, 448, 451, 453, 463, 482,
487, 499, 501, 507–508, 510, 527,
530, 535, 542–543, 545–546, 548,
550, 552, 561, 563–564. See also non–ordinary reality and power
Koestler, Arthur, 207
Kogi, 178
Koobakiyahale. See qoobakiyalxale
Koran, 358
Korea, 116, 132, 155, 183, 257–261,
264, 311–313, 339, 434, 464, 476, 500
Korean Shamanism Research Institutes, 261
Koryak, 9–11, 184, 261–262, 372,
451, 506
Kosabandjigan, 262. See also djesikon
Kosmos, 41, 44, 81, 88, 94, 96, 100,
115, 141, 148, 155, 159, 169, 181,
186, 195, 207, 227, 231, 245,
262–263, 284, 287, 315–316,
319, 351, 365, 377, 380–381,
391–392, 401–402, 433, 436, 451,
457, 465, 470, 491, 499, 508, 525,
542–543, 548
Koupermann, Daniel, 1
Koyaanasquatsi, 208
Koyaanistani, 208
Krishna, 510
Kundalini, 103, 142, 232, 560. See also ch'i (ji, ki)
!Kung, 75, 132, 245, 263, 326, 431.
See also Ju|hansi
Kupitja, 263
Kupuri, 212, 345–346. See also Huichol
Kwaatsi, 263
L
Labrador, 23, 496–497, 516
Ladder, 72, 186, 205, 264, 312, 434,
436, 476–477, 485, 509, 523, 525
Lady of Tu Shuan Mountain, 16
lahatconos, 264–265, 538
Lamaism, 64–65, 267, 448, 480
lamas, 267, 320, 480–481, 484
Land of the Dead, 14, 36, 38, 74, 137–138, 143, 170, 216, 218, 244, 255, 267, 286, 291, 322, 375–376, 408, 422, 432, 445–446, 453, 466–467, 469, 471, 483, 514
Lao-tzu, 462
Lapland, 105, 151, 365, 444, 473
Lapps. See Saami
Larson, Dave, 198
lehs, 157, 268, 271, 538–539, 552.
   See also yapaitu
lehsconos, 268, 539–540
levitation, 203, 254, 268
lhamana, 61, 268–269
lhamo/lhapa, 269–270
libation, 73, 126–127, 270, 340, 531, 534
life cycle, 81, 88, 155, 270, 297, 323, 463, 536
lifeforce energy, 24, 66, 95, 97, 102, 110, 130, 132, 170, 175, 194, 204, 212, 238, 263, 266, 268, 277, 319, 337, 345, 350, 391, 400, 425, 434, 456–458, 465, 467, 474, 481, 510
liminal states, 270–271
Loki, 510
loltcit, 268, 271
Lord of the Dawn, 20, 298
Lord of the Dead, 74
Lovelock, James, 181
LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide), 310–311, 334
lucid dreaming, 149, 243, 271–272
Lughnasadh, 98–99
Luo River, 16
Lyon, William S., 187

M
maban, 273, 275–276. See also karadji
machi, 229, 273, 285–289, 394–395
Machu Picchu, 231
macropsia, 11, 47
madu, 273, 385. See also extraction
Magar, 391
magical alphabets, 273–274, 329, 400
magical darts, 13, 274, 349, 363, 387, 438, 441, 526, 527
mahu, 61, 274. See kahuna
maize, 19, 211. See also corn
making, 28, 253–254, 274–276, 540
Malaysia, 117, 136, 158, 232, 464,
468, 535
Malidoma Somé, 376, 409
mambo, 209, 276–277, 530–531
mana, 3, 5, 159, 194–196, 232, 251,
256, 277, 350. See also Orenda
manang, 216–218, 277–280, 281,
346
manang bali, 216, 277, 280–281.
See also gender variant
manão, 281
Manchu, 281–283, 447, 512
Manchuria, 176, 281. See also
Manchu
mandala, 109, 199, 212, 283, 414
mandrake, 136, 202, 283–284
manitou, 145, 246, 284, 305–307,
331–333, 427, 533. See also
Ojibwa
Man of High Degree, 107, 252, 277. See also clever man; karadji;
shaman
mantra, 14, 64–66, 205, 258–260,
284, 311, 314, 339, 462, 481–483, 485, 552
man-woman and woman-man
beings, 269, 372
Maori, 277, 499
maparn, 285. See also aboriginal
and Australia
Mapuche, 61, 273, 285–289, 394,
433, 463, 479
marã'akame, 211–212, 289–291,
347–349, 525
Margulis, Lynn, 181
masinisawe, 291–292, 421
mask dances, 292
masks, 3–5, 74, 164–165, 167,
173–174, 181, 191, 203, 237, 252,
256, 263, 292–294, 317, 325,
358, 363, 368, 385, 422, 425–426,
446, 486, 511, 537, 555–556. See also False Face Society
Master of the Beasts, 214, 294, 295, 309
Master of the Fish, 12, 294. See also hunting magic
Master of the Spirits, 204, 294–295
mastery of fire. See fire, mastery of
Maui, Hawaii, 510
Maya, 9–10, 16–21, 61, 118, 141,
207, 295–298, 303, 358, 472,
476, 488, 509, 533
Maya prophecy, 207, 298
Mazatec, 51, 111, 298, 310, 325,
333, 378, 488–491
medicine, 298–299. See also abo-
original; Great Mystery; initia-
tion; Iroquois; Lakota; original
medicine; power; sacred; spirit;
vision quest
Medicine Animal Society, 425
medicine bundle, 224, 299, 300,
306, 368, 411. See also medicine
pouch
medicine dance, 299
medicine man, 24, 119, 218, 223,
242, 266, 284, 299–300, 307,
324, 356
medicine pipe. See sacred pipe
medicine pouch, 130, 300, 457, 461
medicine singing, 300. See also
medicine; medicine societies;
music
medicine societies, 191, 193, 202,
215, 224, 237, 299, 300–301,
305, 318, 323–325, 424, 426,
452–453, 535
medicine songs, 191, 300, 307, 332,
452. See also medicine singing
medicine wheel, 6, 79, 209, 229,
265, 463
meditation, 13, 15, 31, 39–40, 68,
104, 107, 131, 152, 224, 243, 347,
Moon Bearer, 317,
Moon Being, 537–538
Moon Hunter, 406
Moon goddess, 285, 304, 392
Moon-man, 166
Moon Mythology, 405
Moon Path, 405–406
Morning Glory, 51, 53, 212,
310–311, 345, 378, 495. See also altered states of consciousness and plant hallucinogens
Morocco, 1
Mother Earth, 210, 323, 514
Mother of the Beasts, 214, 295, 309
Mother of the Sea Beasts, 234
mounds (earthen), 83–84, 101, 148, 475, 529
Mozambique, 391
mudang, 132, 155, 183, 257–261,
311–313, 339, 476–477
Mullee Mullee, 32
multiple soul belief, 14, 72, 204,
313–314, 445, 456, 481, 512, 552
mushrooms, 9–10, 15, 21, 51, 111,
146, 212, 261–262, 298, 314,
325, 372–373, 385, 488–490. See also amanita muscaria; psilocybe mushrooms; Teonanácatl
music, 12–13, 47, 79, 90, 97, 127,
139, 185, 196, 225, 246, 251, 257,
261, 301, 311, 314–315, 325,
395, 398, 462, 517–520, 530–531
Musical Branch, 81, 90, 97
mystical experiences, 178, 232,
273, 315–316, 385, 394
mysticism, 80, 169
myths and mythology, 3, 12–13, 23,
31, 33, 37–38, 44, 48, 57, 59, 62,
65, 72, 74, 81–82, 107–108, 111,
113, 118, 123, 131, 139, 141,
149–150, 156, 174, 211, 216, 252,
258, 269, 276, 279–280, 282,
284–285, 290, 303–304, 316,
317, 323, 327, 332, 345, 354, 360,
362, 372–373, 390, 401–402,
405–406, 415, 423, 428, 434, 445,
447, 450, 457, 461, 466, 473–474,
482–483, 486, 495, 510, 521, 534,
536, 540–541, 545–546, 548–549,
556, 559–560, 564
N
Nada Brahma, 462
nadle, 61, 141, 317. See also transformed shaman
nagual, 317, 496. See also helping spirits; power animals; shapeshifting
nagualism, 317
Nahuatl, 51, 135, 345, 476
Namibia, 263, 391, 413
naming, 9, 39, 93, 318
Nanabush, 306, 318
nande’ri, 38, 40–41, 43, 318
Nara Bön Chen, 481, 552
narcotics, 9, 51, 55, 108, 134, 178,
289, 351
Natal, 391, 559
Natchez, 119
natema. See ayahuasca
National Institute for Healthcare Research, 198
Native American Church, 63,
318–319, 345, 399. See also vision quest
Native Americans, 1, 9, 57–58, 63,
106, 147, 176, 198–199, 318, 345,
369, 377, 399, 504–505, 508,
521–522
nature spirits, 123, 142, 200, 251,
275–276, 282, 319, 355, 383,
398, 411, 416, 491, 507, 562. See also Africa
Navajo, 61, 135, 140–141, 221, 224,
232, 299, 301, 317, 414, 475. See also Dineh
near-death experiences, 56, 157,
228, 539
neirika, 210, 319–320, 451
neo-shamanism, 114, 320. See also
core shamanism
Nepal, 14, 63, 67, 79, 150–151, 227,
240, 264, 320, 391, 464, 480,
485, 509, 530. See also
Lamaism; ritual; Tamang
nerfalasoq, 320–321. See also div-
ination and Greenland
netdim maidü, 321
Nevada, 338, 362
New South Wales, Australia, 275,
540, 545, 555
New World, 58, 177, 303, 345
New Zealand, 193, 351, 390
Ngaju Dyak, 53–56, 321, 372. See
also journey
Ngungi, the Crippled Smith, 321
Nigeria, 78, 391
Nine Mayan Spirits, 296–297
Nipissing, 26
Njom. See num
non-ordinary reality, 21, 25, 48, 65,
81, 86, 113, 116–118, 125, 131,
144–145, 155, 159, 170, 178, 192,
230, 243, 247, 267, 271, 283,
304–305, 321–322, 323, 336,
355, 370, 373–375, 380, 413, 418,
431–432, 434–436, 442, 450,
457–461, 463–464, 469–472, 482,
487, 519, 525, 536. See also jour-
ney and shamanic altered
states of consciousness
nonosi, 322
Norse, 23–24, 273, 310, 327, 329,
401–402, 404, 422, 450, 531–532,
546
north, 322–323. See also color; cul-
ture; earth; east; energy; jour-
ney; life cycle; non–ordinary
reality; ritual; power; sacred
space; shaman; south; space;
west
North America, 323–325. See also
berdache (berdach); ceremony;
culture; dance; death and
dying; drum; energy intrusion,
False Face Society; gender; gen-
der variant; healing; helping
spirits; illness; illness in North
America; knowledge; language;
mask dances; masks; medicine;
medicine man; medicine soci-
eties; midewiwin; music; origi-
nal medicine; pains; power;
power display; power object;
prayer; rattles; ritual; sacred;
Shaking Tent Ceremony;
shaman; shamanism; singing;
song; sorcery; soul; spirit; spir-
its; taboo; transformed
shaman; vision
North Pole, 434
Northern Maidu, 77, 215, 321
Norway, 105, 405
Nothingness, 169, 186, 559
Nti-si-tho, 325, 489
num, 132, 142, 232, 245, 326, 362,
431
Nunkúi, 443
O
oak, 80, 82–83, 89, 94, 97, 150, 327,
329, 385, 488, 509–510
Oaxaca, Mexico, 310, 333, 488–489
object intrusion, 327. See also
extraction and pains
obsidian, 19–20, 273, 385–386
Odin, 327, 401, 407, 450. See also
ritual
offering, 6, 16, 18–20, 58, 64, 66, 73,
96, 102, 108, 115, 126–127, 129,
136, 161, 173–175, 178, 205–206,
210–211, 213, 216–218, 223–224,
231, 240, 258, 260, 263, 265, 270,
276, 280, 282–283, 291, 293–295,
300–301, 306, 309, 312, 316,
327–328, 335, 347–349,
See also embodiment offerings, hallucinogenic, 328

Ogham, 80, 82, 84, 89, 91–92, 273, 328–331, 400, 564

Ogichidanimidiwin, 331. See also dance and dreaming

Oglala. See Lakota

Ohiwe, 331

Ohno, Susumu, 314


Ojuna, 333, 523. See also Yakut

Ok. See otgun

Okinawa, Japan, 240

Okki. See otgun

Olmec, 16, 303

Ololiuqui, 51, 107, 219, 310, 333–334, 495. See also altered states of consciousness and Morning Glory

Omaha, 61, 301, 304, 474

Omens, 196, 216–217, 223–224, 278, 287, 289, 477

Omi, 101, 334–335, 512, 514–515. See also psychopomp

Omphalos, 80, 335

Oneane, 115, 335. See also sacred

Oneida, 193, 236

Onondaga, 191, 193, 236, 337

Onotcikewinini, 335

Ordinary consciousness, 7, 34, 97, 100, 237, 253, 322, 335–336, 428, 454, 494, 527. See also energy


Orenda, 187, 336

Original medicine, 184, 197, 298, 325, 336–337, 424, 496, 530, 537

Oruncha. See Arunta (Aranta)

Oshadageaa, 337, 425. See also dance and song

Otavalan. See Quechua

Otgun, 337


Otkon. See otgun

Oto, 301

Ottawa, 5, 26, 332

Otters, 88, 307, 425

Otter Society, 424

Outback, Australia, 31–32

Out-of-body experience (OBE), 337

Owls, 85, 206, 385, 447, 469, 497, 518

P

Paaho. See paho

Paavaho. See paho

Pachakuti, 338, 382–384, 387. See also Andes, South America; North America; South America

Pachamama, 21, 154, 302, 380–385, 387–389


Paho, 338. See also ceremony; embodiment; spirits

Pains, 35, 68, 70, 77, 135, 146, 223, 229, 273, 324, 338–339, 362,
ayahuasca; Brugmansia aurea; brunsfelsia; Datura; Deadly Nightshade; epená; Ibobga; Ololiuqui; peyote; plant spirits; San Pedro; Teonanácatl; yopo


plant spirits, 11, 49, 68–69, 135, 163, 209, 219, 223, 311, 334, 351, 354, 355–356, 382, 418, 490, 554. See also medicine; plant hallucinogens

plateau experiences, 356–357. See also ecstasy; mystical experiences; trance

Plotkin, Mark, 12

poetry, 51, 80, 89, 95, 100, 128, 328, 358, 401, 404, 519

pogok, 5, 358. See also Alaskan; embodiment; Eskimo

poisonous substances, 11–12, 42, 103, 137, 162, 202, 208, 223, 269, 290, 351, 385–386, 442, 481, 484, 539

Polynesia, 61, 193, 195, 351, 479, 510, 535

polyphasic cultures, 358. See also monophasic culture

Pomo, 61, 77, 134, 273, 385–386, 431, 547

Ponca, 203, 301, 474

Popal Vuh, 358

porcupines, 292


postures, 90, 173, 302, 360, 371. See also altered states of consciousness and journey

Poswimkya Society, 360, 517, 552. See also Yayatú Society

Potawatomi, 61, 301, 332

potlach ceremonies, 292

poverty, 284, 481, 493, 538

powa, 360–361, 517. See also ceremony and song

powaka, 360, 361, 511. See also ritual; sorcery; sucking shaman

powamù, 361. See also healing and ritual

power, 361–364. See also

Aboriginal; Africa; altered states of consciousness; ancestors; apprentice; ayahusca; cave; cleansing; culture; dance; dead shamans; disease; drum; embodiment; energy; healing; helping spirits; humility; illness; Iroquois; journey; knowledge; Lakota; magical darts; masks; medicine; num; offering; pains; phlegm; plant hallucinogens; power, abuse of; power, variation in amount of; power object; power places; power song; prayer; purification; ritual; sacred; San; shaman; shamanism; shrine; song; soul; South America; space; spirit; spirits; taboo; talisman; time; training; trance; tsentsak; vision quest

power, abuse of, 364–365, 371. See also sorcery

power, variation in amount of, 145, 284, 332, 365–366, 425. See also black and white shamans and Buryat (Buriat)

power animals, 4, 25–26, 72, 74, 88, 113, 123–124, 200, 271, 292, 305,
power displays, 244, 254, 273, 288, 299, 308, 325, 367–368, 428, 468, 524, 533. See also decline in power and midewiwin
power places, 20, 240, 369–370
power retrieval, 63, 111, 113, 365, 370–371, 431
power song, 11, 40, 48, 88, 150, 220, 337, 364, 366, 371, 388, 425, 427, 449, 452, 463, 467, 497, 538, 541. See also power, abuse of prana, 103, 159. See also chi’i (ji, ki)
priestess, 125, 128, 201, 209, 276, 530
primal bisexual divinity, 372. See also mushrooms
primordial sea, 18, 296, 373
Prophecy Rock, 207
psilocybe mushrooms, 20–21, 51, 146, 212, 298, 373, 488. See also ritual psyche, 126, 198, 262, 314, 344, 373, 376, 433, 453, 508
puile, 378
puppetry, 131, 259, 486
pygmies, 75, 409, 424
Pygmy Society, 424

Q
Qanmasoq, 379, 426. See also Greenland and sorcery
qaumanEq, 22, 379
Q’ero, 6, 8, 108, 207, 231, 255, 298, 302, 338–339, 372, 379–384, 387, 389, 463. See also Andes, South America and South America
qilaain, 189, 384. See also Greenland and torngraq
qilajoq, 384. See also Eskimo
qilanoq, 384–385. See also Eskimo
qologogoloq, 5, 385. See also Alaskan and Eskimo
qoobakiyalxale, 385–386
qoogauk, 386. See also sorcery
Quechua, 44, 78, 154, 175, 180, 210, 220, 340, 379, 386–388, 413, 440, 474, 548. See also Andes, South America
quetho, 61, 389. See also gender variant
Quetzalcoatl, 391, 489
Quiche Maya, 10, 358
q’uya, 302, 380, 382–383, 389. See also Andes, South America

R
rabbits, 21, 124, 292, 510
rai, 390. See also Australia and water
rainbow bridge, 65, 151, 240, 402, 434, 485
Rainbow Serpent, 29–30, 32, 34, 107, 253–254, 273, 275–276, 390–391. See also Mesoamerican and ritual
rainbow snakes, 30, 273, 276, 390
rain forests, 1, 11–12, 44, 46–49, 151, 171, 220, 243, 341, 355, 387, 397, 419, 438, 463, 509, 534, 548
rain making, 34, 71, 107, 253
Rama Puran Tsan, 391. See also sacrifice
rape, 458, 462
rattlesnake, 291, 385–386
ravens, 85, 87, 189, 261, 372, 384, 510, 518
Red Bean Dance, 303
Red Hat People, 208
red ochre, 36, 64, 275, 392. See also aboriginal and colors
reincarnation, 39–40, 238, 260, 313, 334–335, 390, 471, 481, 512, 560–561
renewal of life, 394
reptiles, 143, 160, 171, 449
reticular activation system (RAS), 454
See also shamanic symbols
Rezinkoff, Légor, 454
Rhiannon, 86
Rig Veda, 9, 115, 395, 452, 509
ritual, 395–397. See also ceremony; chant; culture; dance; earth; energy; exorcism; extraction; healing; helping spirits; invocation; persecution of shamans; possession; power; ritual structure; sacred; sacred space; shaman; shamanism; song; soul; space; spirit; spirits; time; weather
ritual structure, 396, 397–399, 431 roadman, 399
robes, 98, 116, 312, 520, 564
rock art, 79, 399, 462, 494
Roman Empire, 17, 79, 148, 187
rope trick, 192, 244, 399–400, 557. See also Shaking Tent
Ceremony and yuwipi
runes, 23–24, 146, 270, 273, 327, 329, 400–404, 450. See also Tree of Life
Russia, 9, 405, 434, 448, 517, 548
Saami, 56, 62, 67, 178, 405–409, 444
Sabina, Maria, 111, 489, 491
sacred, 409. See also Africa; Great Mystery; ritual; sacred space; shaman; spirit; spirits
Sacred Calf Pipe, 299, 541
Sacred Land of Peyote, 211, 541
sacred language, 40, 166, 234, 409–410. See also ecstasy and glossolalia
sacred pipe, 226, 368, 410–411, 476. See also sacred
sacred space, 81–82, 96, 98, 100, 103, 151, 154, 210, 258, 276, 291, 322, 340, 395–398, 411, 449–450, 463, 536, 556. See also ritual and shamanic healing
Sacred Spiral, 82, 417
sacred technologies, 113–114, 412, 432, 546. See also dance; drum; ecstasy; sacred
sacrifice, 412–413. See also blessing; blood; culture; Dagara; diet; disease; divination; ecstasy; Eskimo; healing; helping spirits; illness; initiation; journey; Lowerworld; non–ordinary reality; offering; ordinary reality; prayer; power; ritual; shaman; shamanism; soul; spirit; spirits; Upperworld; taboo; trance; Yakut
Salasacan, 413. See also cuy
Salish, 152
salmon, 87–88, 421
same-sex sexuality, 185, 522
Samiland, 405
San, 75, 254, 263, 326, 362, 390, 399, 413–414. See also art; colors; Ju|’hoansi
San (mineral spirit), 123, 154
sand painting, 27, 109, 141, 221, 301, 410, 414. See also colors; Dineh; Iikhááh
sangoma, 141–142, 147, 236, 304, 308, 414–417, 420, 520–521, 523, 559–564. See also Africa and iNyanga
San Pedro, 417–419. See also altered states of consciousness and Andes, South America
Santo Daime, 419, 463
sanusi, 236, 415, 420, 559, 563. See also Africa
sauel, 420, 538
Sauk, 61, 301
sauyit, 4–5, 420–421. See also aghula; Alaskan; angakok;
Eskimo; sacred
Scandinavia, 57, 405
scapulimancy, 292, 421, 445
schizophrenia, 374
scopolamine, 52, 68–70, 135, 137, 202–203, 284
Scotland, 79, 84, 101, 149
scry, 238, 421
Sea Dyak, 184, 216, 506. See also Iban Dyak; manang; manang bali
seals, 3–4, 188, 234, 365, 420–422, 516, 556
Sedna, 165–166, 421–422. See also Amazonia
seer, 94, 145–146, 223, 265, 275, 281, 305, 307, 321, 335, 393, 421, 422, 424, 427, 464, 469, 495, 531, 533, 550
seharsartoq, 422. See also Greenland
seidr, 327, 422–423, 531–532
self-mutilation, 118, 148
Semang, 117, 409, 468
semen and water, 423
Semen of the Sun, 423
Seminole, 61, 119
Seneca, 181–182, 191, 193, 224, 236–237, 337, 424–426. See also power displays and trance
Seneca Eagle Medicine Society, 237
Seneca Medicine Societies, 191, 424
sensory deprivation, 487, 503, 504
serrat, 426. See also Greenland and sorcery
set and setting, 427
Shadow, 32, 149, 427. See also healing
Shaking Tent Ceremony, 145–146, 224, 242, 262, 265, 308–309, 332, 335, 368, 410, 427–428. See also language; Mishikan; Ojibwa; Spirit Lodge
Shaltu, 428. See also embodiment; ritual; spirit
shaman, 428–429. See also altered states of consciousness; alternate states of consciousness; ancestors; animal spirits; dreams; elements; energy; healing; hunting magic; non–ordinary reality; ordinary consciousness; plant spirits; priest; spirit; spirits; trance; weather
shamanic altered states of consciousness, 374, 378, 429–430, 448. See also divination; healing; magical darts
shamanic counseling, 192–193, 199, 430
Shamanic State of Consciousness, 432
shamanic symbols, 432–434. See also Africa; Celtic; language
shamanism, 434–435. See also altered states of consciousness; divination; ecstasy; embodiment; healing; helping spirits; journey; non–ordinary reality; ordinary reality; power; prayer; religion; ritual; sacrifice; shaman; soul; trance; transpersonal
Shaman Pharmaceuticals, 435
shaman's death, 136, 143, 227, 435–436, 520. See also dismemberment and ego death
shaman's ladder, 436. See also ecstasy and sword ladder
shaman's sickness, 436–437. See also shaman
shapeshifting, 26, 44, 87, 89, 100, 130, 138, 165, 214, 235, 249, 251, 367, 418, 437, 449, 487, 505, 507–508, 535. See also animal spirits; journey; power displays
sharks, 497
Shasta, 77
Shee Yee, 205
sheep, 126, 285, 288
shih-niang, 16, 437–438
Shinto, 26, 241, 464
Shipibo-Conibo, 47–48, 349, 362
Shirokogoroff, S. M., 502
Shiva, 136
shopan, 60–61, 438. See also achnucek and gender variant
shrine, 6, 16, 93, 113, 122–123, 125–126, 128–129, 131, 136, 150, 231, 240, 257, 319, 335, 363, 369, 438, 526, 563. See also ancestors
shrunken heads, 439, 442, 450
Shuar, 29, 47, 67, 69, 71, 175, 319, 423, 431, 438–444, 450, 463, 474, 503, 526. See also Brugmansia aurea
sickness. See illness
Sikkim, 320
silence, 28, 31, 133, 419, 448–449, 450, 462, 473, 487, 490, 502, 504, 551, 557. See also altered states of consciousness and song
Sima-Kade, 449, 509, 560. See also Zulu
Sioux. See Lakota
Si.Si.Wiss, 270, 450. See also dance
skull, 34, 94, 97, 104, 226, 247, 253, 275, 301, 450–451, 476
slavery, 2, 78, 195, 481
sleep deprivation, 12, 90, 225, 244, 487, 503, 528, 529, 530
Smith, Sara, 147–148
smudge, 96, 175, 451, 514, 557


Snuqualmi, 466

soft shaman, 104, 184, 451–452, 506, 522. See also gender–variant male

Solanaceae, 68, 137, 202, 283

Soma, 9–10, 178, 197–198, 359, 395, 452, 491. See also altered states of consciousness

song, 452–453. See also altered states of consciousness; apprentice; chant; culture; dances; divination; dreams; drum; energy; healing; helping spirits; Lakota; Land of the Dead; medicine; medicine societies; music; North America; payé; power; power song; prayer; rhythm; ritual; sacred; shaman; sing; singing; sound; South America; spirit; spirits; trance; vision quest; words

songlines, 453–454. See also Australia and storytelling

sonic driving, 373, 454–455. See also chants

Sora, 14, 365, 412, 469


soul, 456. See also ancestors; culture; energy; helping spirits; shaman; spirit; spirits

soul calling, 204, 456–457, 515. See also healing; multiple soul belief; spirit

soul catcher, 340, 457, 460–461. See also ritual; soul loss; Southeast Asia

Soul Dance. See lehstconos and Wintun

soul flight, 66, 104, 155, 158, 164, 315, 374–375, 405, 419, 429–430, 436, 444, 457, 480, 483, 502, 504, 512, 518, 561. See also altered states of consciousness

soul flowers, 186


soul substance, 461–462

soul thief, 459–460, 462

390–391, 395, 400, 425, 428, 430, 452, 454, 462–463, 468, 493, 518–520, 531, 551, 557, 563. See also journey and sonic driving
Source, the. See the Source
south, 36, 77, 79, 82, 89, 91, 123, 155, 200, 258, 265, 270, 296, 311, 322, 463, 536, 559
South Africa, 414, 559, 564
Southeast Asia, 26, 158, 319, 327, 436, 456, 464, 492. See also Daoism (Taoism); Korea; sorcery
space, 464–465. See also altered states of consciousness; energy; non–ordinary reality; sacred space; shaman; spirits; time
Spain and the Spanish, 20, 79, 109, 210, 298, 310, 333, 345, 358, 417, 438, 489, 553
spells, 23, 65, 95, 119, 283, 284, 286, 303, 379, 392, 426, 465
spiders, 124, 143, 191, 434, 510, 546, 564
Spiral of Creation, 81, 433
spirit, 466. See also ancestors; emptiness; energy; healing; illness; interdependence; Kosmos; Land of the Dead; shaman; shamanism; sorcery; soul; spirits; spirits of the dead
Spirit Boat, 185, 466–467. See also soul retrieval
Spirit Canoe, 467. See also ritual spirit flight, 3, 87, 189, 221–222, 429, 432, 457, 468–469, 471, 497, 502. See also journey and soul flight
spirit hands, 106, 171, 467, 471. See also helping spirits
Spirit Impersonation Society, 202
Spirit Lodge, 145, 244, 265, 400, 468–469, 556–557. See also drum; rattle; Shaking Tent Ceremony
spirit marriage, 469–470. See also ecstasy
Spirit of Fire. See fire
Spirit of Madness, 116, 304, 552
spirits, 470–471. See also altered states of consciousness; ancestors; drum; ecstasy; elements; energy, helping spirits; Kosmos; non–ordinary reality; ordinary reality; shaman; spirit; trance; weather
spirit senses, 145, 471. See also soul flight
spirit vision, 235, 248, 440, 441–442, 540
spirit world. See non–ordinary reality
Sri Lanka, 176, 464
state shaman, 15, 17–18, 20, 346, 472–473, 533, 544. See also energy and journey
Stevenson, Matilda, 269
stone circles, 83
Stonehenge, 83, 323
Stone People Lodge, 225, 266, 476
storytelling, 80, 100, 123, 133, 167, 291–292, 314, 409, 449–450, 473, 563. See also ancestors; dance; energy
sucking shaman, 223, 256, 273, 360, 473–474, 536. See also sorcery and water
Sumatra, 232
Sumer, 423
Sumerian language, 64, 187
Sun Dance, 58, 198, 265, 474, 475, 505, 509. See also Lakota
susto, 21, 120, 297, 474
sweat lodge, 63, 106, 182, 198, 203, 214, 225, 266, 305, 371, 378, 410, 475–476. See also Dineh and Maya
Sweden, 9, 105, 401, 405
sword, 63, 85, 89, 103–104, 153, 244, 259, 312–313, 329, 340, 359, 434, 436, 476–477. See also journey
sword ladder, 312, 477. See also ecstasy; shaman’s ladder; Southeast Asia
sycamore fig, 433, 477, 509–510
symbolic language, 145, 199, 237, 433, 477–478, 492, 503, 528. See also ecstasy

T

daartaa, 479
Taino, 109, 553
taique, 289, 479
talasi, 115, 479. See also sacred
talisman, 13, 27–28, 124, 130, 218, 279, 363, 382, 479–480. See also fetish and medicine
Tamang, 54, 63, 65, 67, 186, 227, 240, 269, 464, 480–486, 552–553. See also altered states of consciousness; death and dying; ecstasy; exorcism; lhamo/lhapa; mediumship; multiple soul belief; psychotherapeutic practices
Taoism. See Daoism (Taoism)
tapel, 486. See also embodiment and magical alphabet
Tarahumara, 135, 345, 347
Tatar, 5, 67, 365
Ta Wang Shen, 16, 437
techniques of ecstasy, 155–156, 242, 412, 487, 525. See also Australia; chant; dance
Tembe, 354
tembetá, 487–488
Tenino, 77
Teonanácatl, 219, 325, 345, 373, 488–491. See also altered states of consciousness; alternate states of consciousness; embodiment; persecution of shamans; plant hallucinogens; plant medicines
Teton, 474
Tewa, 61, 301, 389
Texas, 345
Thailand, 158, 509
therianthropes, 79, 399, 493. See also journey
theta waves, 67, 454, 493. See also rhythm; ritual; sonic driving
the Unknown, 100, 103, 122–123, 159, 188, 227, 262, 396, 466, 494, 530, 542
Thor, 402, 408
thread cross, 37, 65, 493–494. See also Bön; energy; fetish
threshold guardian, 494. See also altered states of consciousness and journey
Thunderbeings, 79, 188, 203, 226, 265, 476, 534

thunderbirds, 512
Tibet, 64–65, 67, 104, 150–151, 208, 240, 267, 269, 320, 327, 434, 436, 464, 480, 493
Tibetan monks, 176
Tierra del Fuego, 228
tigers, 136, 158, 257, 350, 484, 487
Tikal, 20
time, 494–495. See also altered states of consciousness; circle; culture; dreamtime; myth; rhythm; shaman; space
Time of Purification. See Hopi Prophecy
Tinne, 93, 330
Tiwa, 301
tlahit, 495. See also shamanic language
Tlililtzin, 51, 495
Tod, 68, 495
tobacco, 13, 29, 42, 46, 48, 50–51, 69, 73, 170, 173, 181, 213, 223, 287, 289, 294, 327, 348, 378, 410–411, 426, 439–441, 451, 495–496, 505, 518, 527, 529, 538, 557. See also Andes, South America; ash; energy
toloache, 51, 134–135, 496. See also ritual and sacred
Tolowa, 61, 77
Toltecs, 345
tonal spirit, 496
Tonga, 187
tongochim, 61, 496. See also transformed shaman
tornarsuk, 188–189, 496
torngak, 496–497. See also embodiment
torngraq, 22, 164–167, 188, 479, 496, 497, 516, 556
torniwoq, 189, 221, 384, 497. See also Greenland
tornrak, 497–498, 516
totem animals, 25, 33, 87–88, 165, 211, 253, 292, 498, 564
totem spirits, 25, 53, 88, 167, 200, 367, 498, 545. See also embodiment
Towa, 301
trago, 69, 78, 340, 388, 498. See also Andes, South America and camay
training, 498–501. See also aboriginal; Africa; ancestors; apprentice; ceremony; chant; chaos; culture; dance; divination; dreams; embodiment; energy; gender; Hawaii; healing; helping spirits; humility; illness; initiation; journey; kahuna; knowledge; Korea; Kosmos; Midewiwin Society; North America; offering; Ojibwa; pattern recognition; power; prayer; ritual; sacred; shaman; shamanic healing; space; spirit; teachers; the call; time; transpersonal; vehicle; Zulu
trance, 501–504. See also
Aboriginal; Africa; altered states of consciousness; alternate states of consciousness; apprentice; Australia; chant; culture; dance; drum; ecstasy; embodiment; healing; helping spirits; illness; initiations; journey; non–ordinary reality; ordinary reality; pains; possession; psychotropic plants; rhythm; ritual; shaman; shamanic healing; shamanism; Shuar; Siberia; silence; singing; sorcery; soul; soul flight; soul loss; South America; spirit; symbolic language; training; Tungus; vehicle; vision
trance (short), 504. See also altered states of consciousness and ecstasy
transcendence, 112, 143, 262, 356, 393, 409, 525
transcultural medicine, 504–505. See also dance; psychotherapeutic practices; tobacco
transfiguration, 505–506. See also trance
transformed shaman, 1, 15–16, 23, 26, 55–56, 58, 60, 77–78, 104, 153, 184, 197, 216, 235, 240–241, 262, 266–267, 277, 280, 304, 321, 324, 372, 415, 422, 437–438, 446, 451, 506–508, 544, 550, 552, 560. See also angakok; animal spirits; apprentice; basir; berdache (berdach); death and dying; dual nature; embodiment; Iban Dyak; manang bali; Mapuche; Ngaju Dyak; paksu mudang; sangoma; Two Spirit transmutation, 116, 437, 508. See also power objects
transpersonal, 110, 143, 156, 198–199, 314, 435, 478, 500, 508
Transvaal, South Africa, 391
tree of the shaman, 509. See also Nepal
trees, 509–510. See also ancestors; Celtic; culture; healing; helping spirits; Lowerworld; medicine; Middleworld; oak; North America; shaman; spirit; sycamore fig; teachers; Tree of Life; Tungus; Upperworld
trickster, 38, 54, 123–124, 238, 510, 564
True Path, 208–209

tentsak, 13, 45–46, 171, 274, 349, 363, 387, 429, 431, 438–443, 455, 510–511, 526. See also magical darts and Shuar

Tswana, 245

Tuatha De Danann, 85, 101

Tukano, 47–48, 161, 413, 423, 528

tukyaini, 361, 511. See also disease; extraction; ritual; sucking shaman

tunax, 4, 511
tunghát, 4, 511
tungralik, 3–5, 256, 358, 385, 420, 511. See also Alaskan and trance Tungus, 101, 116, 158, 177, 183, 194, 230, 257, 281–282, 334, 409, 443, 444, 446–447, 457, 461, 502, 503, 509–510, 511–516. See also Buryat (Buriat); death and dying; embodiment; multiple soul belief; the call

tunraq, 256, 516
tupilak, 23, 160, 164, 167, 222, 508, 516, 517. See also culture and ilisineq

Turner, Edith, 159

Turquoise Boy, 317
turtles, 173, 182, 305, 309, 386, 426, 439, 469, 539
turtle spirits, 309, 410, 428

Tuscarora, 193
tutelary spirits, 25, 200, 367, 516–517
tuuhikya, 360, 511, 517. See also Poswimkya Society; ritual; Yayatü Society

tuuhisa, 360, 517

Tuva, 178–179, 308, 344, 517–520. See also Siberia
twasa, 140, 415–416, 520–521, 523, 560, 564. See also apprentice; chant; dingaka bones; sacrifice

Two Spirit, 521–522, 529. See also domain; gender–variant male; transformed shaman

U

Uaixactün, 20

udesi burkhan, 72, 509, 523. See also Buryat (Buriat)

Udoyan, 333, 523. See also Yakut

Ukutwasa, 236, 415, 417, 420, 520, 523, 560. See also Africa; apprentice; sanusi; the call

Umbanda, 410, 523–524. See also Africa

Ungarinyin, 30, 524–525

unio mystica, 315, 393–394, 525. See also ecstasy and evolution

United Nations, 207

United States, 51, 173, 232, 257, 269, 318, 345, 475

Unknown, the. See the Unknown


urine drinking, 10

urukame, 291, 525–526

Ute, 184, 474, 506

utgon. See ogun

utugun, 252, 526. See also Altai

uwishin, 29, 438–443, 526. See also sorcery

Uxmal, 20
V
Vahiyinin, 261–262
Vedantic, 309, 358
Vedaps, 391
vegetalista, 220, 527. See also
Brugmansia aurea; medicine; plant diets
vegetarianism, 39
vehicle, 90, 94, 113–114, 127, 132, 158, 244–245, 359, 383, 419, 423, 431, 487, 501, 503, 518, 527–528. See also chant; plant hallucinogens; sonic driving
Venezuela, 11, 44, 70, 161–162, 452, 553
viho, 62, 161, 423, 528. See also epená; plant hallucinogens; Semen of the Sun Viho-mahse, 161, 423
Village Old Woman (creator of women), 372
Viracocha (the creator), 78, 387
Virola snuff, 161–162, 423, 528. See also plant hallucinogens
vision, 528–529. See also dream incubation; dreams; induction; language; prayer; purification; sacred; shaman; spirit; symbolic language; time; trance; vision quest
vision pit, 192, 529. See also hanblecheya
vision quest, 3, 24–25, 140, 145, 149, 192, 201, 214, 230, 266, 298, 300, 332, 336, 341, 362–363, 369, 371, 399, 448–449, 453, 475, 491, 529–530, 534, 537. See also chant; Nepal; trance
Vision Serpent, 18
vital soul, 39, 238, 313, 496, 530
vital words, 39
Vitebsky, Piers, 295, 470
vodka, 56, 446, 518
Vodoun, 209–210, 276–277, 530–531. See also energy and trance
volva, 24, 327, 422–423, 531–532. See also gender variant and ritual
Von Franz, Marie, 459
vulture, 62, 249, 308, 477, 496
Vusamazulu Credo Mutwa, 147
W
wábano. See wabeno
wabánowûk. See wabeno
wabeno, 223, 533. See also dance and ritual
wacah chan, 18, 20, 296, 472, 509, 533. See also ancient Maya
Wahepton Dakota, 301
Waiká, 162, 553–554
wakan tanka, 188, 266, 411, 533–534, 537–538. See also medicine man
waking dreams, 17, 25, 101, 105, 147, 149, 242–243, 534
Wales, 79, 84, 149
Walpi, 360
walruses, 2–4, 167, 188, 256, 420–422
Walsh, John, 374
Walsh, Roger, 243, 429
war, 59, 87, 195, 197, 280, 325, 475, 481, 531
warajun, 534, 546. See also
Australia
Wasson, R. Gordon, 395
water, 534–535. See also Africa;
Amazonia; ancestors; Celtic; cleansing; Coca; culture;
Dagara; energy; First People; healing; helping spirits; initiation; journey; knowledge; libation; Lowerworld; myth; plant hallucinogens; purification;
sacred; shaman; shamanic
healing; ritual; soul; spirit
Wati Kutjarra, 31
wayfinding, 535. See also Hawaii;
journey; kahuna
weather, 12, 15, 23, 34–35, 41, 49,
51, 65–66, 71, 88, 98, 102, 157,
164, 166, 176, 196, 200, 220, 234,
253, 256, 262, 282, 294, 297, 313,
396, 411, 414, 416, 422, 428–429,
470, 488, 521, 535, 536, 544,
556, 560
weather shamans, 66, 535–536
Well of Segais, 81, 83, 94
wells, 20, 83, 85, 93, 97, 271, 421,
450, 534–535
west, 16, 22, 79, 82, 89, 123, 125,
155, 166, 200, 258, 265, 270, 283,
296, 322, 338, 463, 531, 536,
557, 559
West Africa, 122, 154, 175, 209, 276,
309, 319, 358, 376, 391, 409, 433,
530, 534
West Indies, 44, 51, 54, 70, 109, 151,
310, 553
wetigokanûk. See windigokan
whales, 3–4, 16, 188, 235, 261, 372,
421–422, 444
white shamans. See black and
white shamans
white tigers, 158
wicasa wakan, 536
wi-kovat, 61, 536. See also gender
variant
wikwajigewini, 536–537. See also
sucking shaman
Wilber, Ken, 159, 262
Willier, Russell, 505
windigokan, 537. See also False
Face Society
winkte, 61, 266, 537–538. See also
gender–variant male and trans-
formed shaman
Winnebago, 61, 301
winter solstice, 101, 317
Wintun, 146, 157, 202, 264, 268,
271, 420, 428, 495, 538–540,
552, 555
Wiradjeri, 540–541. See also the call
Wirikuta, 211–212, 348–349, 541
Wishram, 77
witchcraft, 13, 34, 107, 141–142,
201–202, 222, 252, 283, 324, 416,
521, 536, 541, 560
witch doctor, 13, 206, 236, 424,
541. See also sangoma and Zulu
witches, 95, 97, 117, 137, 141,
201–203, 222–223, 236, 283, 331,
361, 379, 386, 391, 416, 426, 481,
486, 541
Witoto, 13, 162, 496
wochangi, 192, 536, 541
wohpe, 266, 541. See also sacred
pipe
wolves, 256, 266, 406, 408, 420, 457,
461, 473, 484, 518
womb, 33, 54, 79, 94, 154, 177, 211,
285, 403, 465, 542
Women's Society, 424–426
wood, 5, 24, 29, 37, 66, 71, 74, 95,
109, 151, 157, 162, 167, 173, 182,
200, 218, 224, 226, 255, 259, 264,
279, 293–294, 328, 358, 385, 400,
402, 408, 443, 445–446, 462, 474,
476, 484, 486, 489, 516, 520, 551,
556
words, 34, 37, 39, 48, 54–55, 60, 63,
88, 91, 95, 100, 107, 139, 150,
154, 175, 194, 195, 210–211, 220,
224–225, 232, 246, 252, 267, 273,
294, 302, 310, 315, 328, 334, 347,
354, 360, 366, 393–394, 400,
408–410, 448, 452–453, 499, 515,
530, 542. See also altered states
of consciousness and South
America
world axis, 433, 509, 542. See also
Tree of Life
World Council of Indigenous Peoples, 179
World Health Organization, 197, 232
world hypothesis, 543. See also religion
World Mountain, 257, 409, 444, 543, 550
World Tree, 264, 329, 392, 401–402, 407, 433, 450, 491, 509, 543. See also Tree of Life
wounded healer, 228, 543–544. See also journey
wu, 15–16, 103, 133–134, 183, 437, 477, 544–545. See also journey
Wurunjerri, 53, 534, 545–546. See also making
wyrd, 24, 546. See also Hawaii

X
xahluigax xaikilgaiagiba, 547. See also fire
Xibalba, 17–20, 296, 533
Xochipilli, 50–51
!Xu, 246, 249

Y
yachaj, 387–388, 548
yagé, 44, 463, 548. See also South America
yajé. See ayahuasca and yagé
Yakee. See epená
Yakut, 5, 116, 151, 230, 267, 304, 333, 365, 409, 412, 444, 515, 523, 548–552. See also altered states of consciousness; ash; black and white shamans; Buryat (Buriat); death and dying; gender variant
Yamana, 227
yapaitu, 538, 552
Yaqui, 135
Yayatü Society, 360, 517, 552. See also Poswimkya Society and sacred
Yeats, W.B., 84
Yggdrassil, 329, 401–402
yi dam, 481–482, 552–553. See also knowledge and multiple soul belief
yin and yang, 16, 134, 437–438, 546
yoga, 131, 156, 429, 434, 501
Yokut, 61, 77, 135, 324, 496
yomuse, 321, 553
yopo, 29, 553–554. See also altered states of consciousness; Andes, South America; entheogen; plant hallucinogens; plant medicines
Yoruba, 78
Yualai, 275, 555. See also shapeshifting
Yualayi. See Yualai
Yukagir, 376, 451
Yukon, 511, 555
Yuma, 61, 77, 157
Yün-Shih, 104
yupa, 509, 539, 555
Yup’ik, 3, 163, 294, 555–556
Yurak, 446
Yurok, 61, 63
yuwipi, 192, 265–266, 468, 556–558. See also Shaking Tent Ceremony

Z
Zambia, 159
Zapotec, 53, 61, 310, 489
Zhou dynasty, 472
Zulu, 27, 140–141, 147–149, 229, 235, 304, 308, 321, 392, 410, 414, 416, 420, 449, 465, 500, 509–510, 520, 523, 541, 546, 559–565. See also altered states of consciousness; costume; dreamtime; exorcism; Ngungi, the Crippled Smith; plant hallucinogens
Zuñi, 21–22, 57, 61, 115, 134, 224, 268–269
Zuñi man-woman. See lhamana
About the Author

Shaman, author, and teacher Christina Pratt is the director of the Last Mask Center for Shamanic Healing in Portland, Oregon, and New York City. As an experienced healer and teacher, Pratt weaves her shamanic experience, her training, and her studies with shamans in Ecuador, Nepal, Tibet, and Africa into healing rituals for contemporary people in contemporary communities. She is on the faculties of the Omega Institute, the Rowe Center, and the Center for Spirituality and Healing at the University of Minnesota.

She is a frequent speaker for the American Holistic Medical Association and served as the spiritual advisor to its board from 2003 to 2007. Her course, Foundations of Shamanism, at the University of Minnesota is the first of its kind in the United States. Her major work, The Cycle of Transformation, is a four-year training in the use of shamanic skills, rituals, and ceremonies for personal and cultural transformation.